This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

THE PRINCIPLES
OF
WATERWORKS ENGINEERING

Library
of the
University of Wisconsin

THE PRINCIPLES

OF

WATERWORKS ENGINEERING

THE PRINCIPLES

OF

WATERWORKS ENGINEERING

BY

J. H. T. TUDSBERY, D.Sc.
HUNTER MEDALLIST OF GLASGOW UNIVERSITY
MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF CIVIL ENGINEERS

AND

A. W. BRIGHTMORE, D.Sc.
LATE BERKELEY FELLOW OF THE OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER
MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF CIVIL ENGINEERS

THIRD EDITION, REVISED

London
E. & F. N. SPON, LIMITED, 57 HAYMARKET
New York
SPON & CHAMBERLAIN, 123 LIBERTY STREET
1905

[*All rights reserved.*]

6574316q

122011
SEP 17 1908

SW
·T81
-2

Dedicated to the Memory of

THOMAS HAWKSLEY, F.R.S.

PAST-PRESIDENT OF THE INSTITUTION OF CIVIL ENGINEERS

WHOSE PRACTICE

DURING MORE THAN SIXTY YEARS

DEVELOPED

THE PRINCIPLES OF HYDRAULIC SCIENCE

PREFACE.

THE art of the Civil Engineer consists, to use the language of Thomas Tredgold, of the "practical application of the most important principles of natural philosophy."

Whilst examples of sound engineering practice are within reach of all, the laws that govern it are frequently obscure. An orderly statement of the facts ascertained by experience, will, however, throw light upon the principles involved. It has been our aim to investigate and classify the observations and rules employed, and to trace the steps taken by the engineer in proceeding from the inception to the completion of schemes of water-supply.

From the data afforded by experience of executed works, and of the properties of materials, designs appropriate to the requirements of varied circumstances may be elaborated; but the fixed laws of natural philosophy must not be ignored by the designer, in applying the conclusions derived from his observation of facts and phenomena

These considerations have led us to neglect the historical aspect of the subject; because during many ages, limited mechanical and metallurgical knowledge and an imperfect acquaintance with the laws of hydraulics, prevented the ancients from leaving to us many examples of waterworks which can be prudently copied. It is only by scientific investigation of the circumstances of individual cases, that false analogies are avoided between more recent practice and the requirements of works contemplated. "The site of a spring or the presence of a stream," says Professor Prestwich, "determined probably the first settlements of savage man; and his civilised descendants have continued until the last few years equally dependent upon like conditions."

In the following pages some knowledge of physical laws is assumed, and we endeavour by their aid to set forth the principles of the design of waterworks—illustrating these by examples of recent practice. A comprehensive grasp of the subject will be best afforded by the consideration of its separate elements. Each one of the eight chapters in which we seek to develop an outline of this branch of engineering, comprises a statement of matters which, if not necessarily related to one another, are conveniently grouped together—the several articles being rendered as far as possible independent, but referenced one to another where their subjects naturally touch.

The first chapter treats of the "sources of water-supply," and of the preliminary considerations involved in the section of such sources. In the second chapter the "measurement" of water is introduced, forming the foundation of what may be termed the science of waterworks engineering. "Collection," in the third chapter, treats of the methods employed in obtaining access to sources of supply, with an account of the appliances used to abstract water therefrom. The fourth, fifth and sixth chapters comprise respectively the "storage," "purification," and "conveyance" of water—the last subject embracing the design, construction and use of aqueducts of various kinds. The important questions concerning the "distribution" of water, occupy the seventh chapter; and the book is concluded by a brief statement of some important considerations that affect the "maintenance of waterworks."

For many of the mathematical methods and expressions employed, we gratefully acknowledge our debt to previous writers. Many are original and appear here for the first time. In particular, the subject of masonry dams is treated by a new method—the object of which is to determine by easy calculations an economical dam-section that rigidly conforms to the primary conditions of strength and stability laid down at the outset of the investigation. The extent to which mathematical treatment is desirable in a work of this character must be largely a matter of opinion; but there can be little doubt about its utility in often presenting more concise and explicit statements than are afforded by verbal expression. To this extent we have employed it—endeavouring to take advantage of its aid, but not to magnify its importance.

We have not sought to describe operations that are common to every kind of engineering construction; and in occasionally adverting to details that are peculiar to this class of undertakings, we would disclaim any attempt to teach arts that can only be acquired by contact with the work itself.

Our object has been to provide, for the use of those engaged in the construction of waterworks, an orderly and logical statement of the matters that specially occupy the attention of the engineer; presenting the subject in such a form as to be both serviceable to students, and instructive to that large class of persons whose attention to the matter is compelled by the calls of modern sanitary progress. In alluding to executed works, elaborate descriptions have been avoided; their proper place being, in our opinion, in the pages of the scientific and professional journals, where, for the most part, they originally appear.

Every acknowledgment is tendered for the great assistance we have obtained from the numerous publications referred to in the text—particularly those of the Institution of Civil Engineers. The wide range covered by the practice of the hydraulic engineer, and a desire to state within a reasonable compass the principles that guide him, may, we trust, afford an apology for such want of elaboration and detail as the reader may feel in the perusal of these pages.

J. H. T. T.
A. W. B.

LONDON : *June*, 1893.

* * *

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

IN this Third Edition we have endeavoured to incorporate in our work such results of recent scientific investigation and practical experience as the development of water-supply engineering has furnished during the past twelve years.

J. H. T. T.
A. W. B.

LONDON : *January*, 1905.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

THE SOURCES OF WATER-SUPPLY.

PAGE

Properties of water—Absorption of impurities—Chemical and biological examination—Modes of the natural occurrence of water—Its aërial and subterranean courses—Rain, surface-water, streams, springs and wells—Elementary considerations as to quality of water and feasibility of procuring it—Use of the barometer in preliminary surveys—Compensation for interference with streams 1

CHAPTER II.

THE MEASUREMENT OF WATER.

Hygrometry—Rain-gauging—Evaporation, percolation and absorption—Estimation of available rainfall—Annual, monthly and daily variations of rainfall—Flow of water in channels and pipes—Investigation of formulæ—Gauging by notches and by orifices—River-gauging—Instruments and apparatus—General formulæ—Irrigation modules—Water-meters .. 33

CHAPTER III.

THE COLLECTION OF WATER.

Interception of rain—Surface-water, lakes and rivers—Intake-works—Catch-water drains—Filter-galleries—Shallow wells—Springs—Artesian and other wells—Well-sinking and boring—Pumps and other water-raising machines—Air-vessels and stand-pipes—Motive power—Types of steam-engines—Testing steam-engines 110

CHAPTER IV.

THE STORAGE OF WATER.

PAGE

Capacity of reservoirs—Selection of sites—Earthen embankments—Puddle-walls—Outlet-works—Waste-weirs—Stability of masonry dams — Design of profiles — Arched dams—Recent examples—Service-reservoirs—Tanks and cisterns .. 171

CHAPTER V.

THE PURIFICATION OF WATER.

Objects of purification — Settling-ponds — Natural filtration—Filtration through sand—Design and working of filters—Sand-washing — Purification by iron and by aëration — Softening water—Filter-pressing 264

CHAPTER VI.

THE CONVEYANCE OF WATER.

Design of conduits—Delivery of conduits—Design and manufacture of pipes—Pipe-laying and jointing—Special pipes, valves and other appurtenances — Balancing-tanks — Relieving-reservoirs—Railway- and river-crossings 321

CHAPTER VII.

THE DISTRIBUTION OF WATER.

Variation of consumption — Proportioning mains — Zones of pressure—Reducing-valve—Connection with pipes under pressure—Stop-cocks, hydrants and other accessories—House-service — Systems of supply — constant and intermittent ; by measure and by rate ; duplicate system .. 387

CHAPTER VIII.

THE MAINTENANCE OF WATERWORKS.

PAGE

Machinery and metal-work—Reservoirs and tanks—Pipe-scrapping and brushing—Prevention of waste—Consumption of water in Great Britain and in the United States—Waterworks regulations 407

APPENDIX.

A series of Illustrations reproduced from the Original Drawings of recently executed works, with a short Descriptive Notice of each 427

INDEX 439

TABLE OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

PLATE — *Description on page*

I. Dam and Overflow, Abbeystead Reservoir 427

II. Davey Pumping-Engine 428

III. Worthington Pumping-Engine 430

IV. Embankment, Hury Reservoir, and Outlet, Blackton Reservoir 430

V. Valve-Tower, Hury Reservoir 432

VI. Waste-Weir, By-Wash and Fish-Pass, Hury Reservoir 433

VII. Chartrain Dam 433

VIII. Service-Reservoir, Willesden 434

IX. Water-Tower, Burscough 435

X. Filter-Bed, Barnes 436

XI., XII. & XIII., Softening-Plant, St. Helens 437

THE PRINCIPLES
OF
WATERWORKS ENGINEERING

CHAPTER I.

THE SOURCES OF WATER-SUPPLY.

1. IN approaching the subject of waterworks engineering it will be useful first to consider several important properties of water, the conditions that result from these, and the influences they exert upon other kinds of matter.

The most valuable attribute of water, from an engineer's point of view, is the fluidity which enables it to be readily conveyed from place to place by its own gravitating impulse.

2. Among other properties of water may be noticed :— (1) Its high degree of incompressibility; whence proceeds the phenomenon of its density remaining constant under the pressures to which it is subjected in ordinary practice. To this is due both the readiness with which solid matter that will not float upon its surface is precipitated through it when at rest, and the formidable character of its impulsive force when in motion. (2) Its viscosity, which is sufficient to render possible its confinement by structures composed of distinctly permeable materials, such as stone and earth; and by virtue of which the great natural sources of water supply existing beneath the earth's surface are retained and rendered accessible to man. (3)

2 r

Its great capacity for heat and low conducting power—the joint causes of that remarkable equability of temperature evinced by it under alternations of atmospheric heat and cold. (4) Its low expansibility; whence its volume alters but slightly whilst passing through a considerable range of temperature. This property enables it to be confined in closed vessels and other apparatus without sensible variation of pressure at ordinary atmospheric temperatures. (5) Its characteristic power of dissolving all gases and almost all other substances at certain temperatures, and of expelling them from solution at other temperatures.

3. All these properties affect the question of the design and construction of waterworks, whether for purposes of irrigation, power, canal, trade, or domestic supply. But to the last-mentioned action must be ascribed the origin of some of the gravest difficulties encountered in procuring sources capable of yielding supplies of pure water. Although, if scientifically developed, the subject would involve considerations unsuited to the character of this work, we will here summarise the main points relating to the constitution of water, so far as they affect the practice of the engineer.

4. Water, although an indifferent oxide, is remarkable inasmuch as its combining tendencies extend over a wider range than those of any other compound. Its properties as a solvent have been already alluded to. Hence, from the instant of its generation in the form of mist or rain, it is susceptible to pollution; from which it can only be completely freed by an evaporative process more refined than that which distils, in nature, the water of the clouds from the saline mixtures of the ocean. As mist, it dissolves the gases in the atmosphere; and, in the neighbourhood of large towns, these are important elements of impurity. In falling to the earth as rain, it further carries down in suspension the dust and soot that are present in the air. Upon

reaching the earth, it encounters the risks of animal, vegetable and mineral pollution in various degrees, depending upon local circumstances. The kind and amount of such pollution affect both the value of water for household and manufacturing purposes, and its attitude towards the works designed to store or to convey it.

5. In seeking supplies of water, the natural and customary practice is to pursue the search in those directions that present the least likelihood of contamination from either natural causes or industrial operations.

The successful prosecution of such a quest requires the application of scientific knowledge of a wide range, alertness, and experience in the work. It is necessary to embrace in one glance the physical features and geological structure of the district under review, as well as the class of agriculture and its extent, the density of the population and the sanitary conditions that obtain among them. There are, moreover, many polluting agencies whose existence is not immediately obvious, and the influence of which cannot be determined by superficial examination ; consequently, a just opinion of the value of any given water, and especially the propriety of using it for domestic supply, must be formed not only upon evidence afforded by inspection of its source, but also upon that yielded by enquiry into its composition.

Such enquiry may be chemical, or microscopical, or bacteriological, or a combination of any of these methods. The important matter is that the results of the examination shall be interpreted aright. It is a common practice to judge the relative merits of water upon the basis of chemical analyses or bacteriological statistics ; but, when such particulars are presented for the consideration of persons ignorant of the methods by which they have been arrived at, and when no standard relation can be assigned between the various constituents revealed by the chemist and the biologist, prudence will suggest to those unacquainted with the intricacies of the subject the propriety of caution in the formation of opinion upon such obscure evidence.

6. The chemical analysis of water reveals, indeed, the elements that compose it, but fails generally to indicate precisely the state in which those elements are combined together. The presence of certain metals, such as lead and copper, in any amount exceeding 1 part in 1,000,000 parts of water, is sufficient to stamp it as unfit for domestic use, without the need for further enquiry as to what particular compounds of those metals are present. The "hardness" of water is regarded as an impurity only if it exceeds certain limits, and, except in connection with the process of softening (§ 306), the question is hardly raised as to whether "hardness" is due to the presence of the carbonate or the sulphate of lime or some other alkaline or metallic salt.

But when we pass from simple mineral impurities, to a consideration of the organic pollution of water as indicated by the presence of inorganic substances in it, the problem becomes one of extreme complexity—we even venture to say that it is indeterminate. In stating this, we would not for a moment suggest that the chemical examination of water is not of high value. On the contrary, it is a necessary proceeding, furnishing one portion of the evidence that is indispensable to the formation of a sound judgment on the quality of any given source of supply.

7. All waters contain dissolved oxygen and carbonic acid derived from the atmosphere; but these substances, although foreign to pure water, are far from being regarded as "impurities," in the sense to be attached to that term in reference to water supply. Ammonia and the acids of nitrogen, chlorine and sulphur are also, under some circumstances, derived from the atmosphere; but, when any of these are present in appreciable quantity, they distinctly

constitute impurities. The reason for this is rather that they afford evidence of, and tend to promote, organic pollution, than that they can be considered, in the minute quantities in which they occur in nature, as themselves directly injurious to animal life. Other matters generally present in water are the soluble mineral impregnations of the strata over or through which it has flowed after falling upon the earth. Of these, the salts of the alkalis, alkaline earths and iron are not regarded as injurious, in the amounts in which they are ordinarily found, or to which they may be readily reduced by some simple treatment—although their presence may be a source of inconvenience and involve expense to the consumers. When such salts occur in extraordinary quantities, as for example, in the Triassic marls of East Cheshire, where the ground-water is frequently far too much impregnated with sodium chloride for ordinary use, they may lead to the absolute rejection of certain sources of supply. In other familiar instances, excessive mineral impregnation, whilst causing water to be unfit for ordinary domestic use, renders it peculiarly applicable to medicinal purposes. The rest of the soluble metallic salts cause unqualified pollution, but are fortunately seldom present in ordinary water.

The dangerous forms of impurity against which it is ordinarily necessary to guard, are in reality the organised growths that abound in water tainted with decomposing vegetable or animal matter. The *algæ*, which in the light organise their own food from the nitrogenous compounds and the carbonic acid dissolved in water, furnish means of subsistence to the animal life in water as well as to *fungi* and to certain forms of bacteria, which lack the power of food-organisation possessed by the *algæ*. The determination of the nitrogen present in its several forms is then of the first importance Next comes the estimation of that portion of the chlorine present which may be regarded as the result of animal pollution. All natural waters contain chlorine—as a constituent of common salt, it is a daily article of food—but, as it is also a constituent of animal excreta, its presence in abnormal quantity in a given water may well give rise to a suspicion of sewage pollution. By "abnormal quantity" is meant, of course, not necessarily a large quantity, but an amount in excess of that found in water known to be good, and derived from the source or district under consideration. Without such information as this, a statement of the chlorine present is valueless as evidence of the quality of water.

The nitrogenous elements of water are now generally stated as fractional weights of ammonia, albuminoid ammonia, nitrites, and nitrates. Ammonia exists usually as chloride or carbonate, and, in good water, seldom exceeds the minute quantity of 1 part in 20,000,000. "Albuminoid" ammonia indicates the undecomposed nitrogenous matter in solution, which should not exceed 1 part in 10,000 000. The statement of the nitrites and nitrates affords an indication of the extent to which mineralisation of the nitrogen originally present has proceeded under the action of the micro-organisms contained in the water. The ratio borne by the organic carbon to the nitrogen is sometimes given, as suggestive of the probable vegetable or animal origin of the nitrogen —the latter kind being generally deemed the more dangerous to health. It may, however, be observed that, according to such a system, the mixture of two waters containing very unequal ratios of carbon to nitrogen would lead to an apparently unintelligible result.

8. Other qualities of water, which, although not ascertained by chemical analysis, are frequently determined at the same time, are the colour, odour, total amount of solid

matter present, and the "hardness" expressed according to Dr. Thomas Clark's scale.*

9. In taking samples for the examination of water, stoppered glass bottles should be used; and both bottles and stoppers should be first well rinsed with the water in question. The temperature of the water and of the atmosphere should be observed and noted. After being filled, the bottles should be at once sealed and numbered on the seal—a note being made to identify the number, stating the date, time and place, and the name of the collector of the samples. The selection of the times and places at which samples of water should be collected, exercises, especially in the case of rivers and streams, a most important influence upon the conclusions to be derived from their subsequent examination. The object aimed at is to arrive at the characteristic quality of the water at the source of supply. Agricultural and other industrial operations, the growth and decay of plants, the surface denudation wrought by floods, and the dilution resulting from continuous rains, are a few of the ever-varying elements that affect the quality of water. In order, therefore, that analysis or other examination may be of practical value, series of samples must be collected over a considerable period, and the information derived from these must be interpreted with due regard to the several conditions under which they were taken. General conclusions drawn from the results of single analyses made at a particular time, and based upon an unwarrantable assumption of the constancy of composition of the water at all times, are almost valueless, and may be directly misleading.

10. Thus far, we have dealt mainly with the chemical

---

* The degrees of Clark's scale correspond with the number of grains of calcium carbonate, or other equivalent soap-destroying salts, in one gallon of water.

examination of water, which shows: (1) the minerals present—of whose hurtfulness or otherwise ample knowledge exists; and (2) the presence of those organically-derived elements which are known to be, under favourable circumstances, essential to the development and subsistence of organised growths in the water. The question that naturally follows is: Does the water in question contain growths susceptible to such development, and if so, are they of a character injurious to health? The former part of the question is readily answered by the microscopist; who is able, moreover, to give a satisfactory account of the properties of the vegetable and animal matter in the water disclosed by his enquiry. In general, it may be stated that the less these are, the better.

11. With regard to the bacteriological examination of water, it must be admitted that it can hardly yet be relied upon to furnish exact and entirely satisfactory results. Certain important facts are, however, well established. All natural waters, unless sterilised by some appropriate process, may be said to contain micro-organisms that subsist upon dissolved or suspended substances; and the quality of a water exercises a potent influence upon the growth and predominance of particular species among those that inhabit it. The discovery of pathogenic forms, such as those of the *spirillum* of Asiatic cholera and the typhoid *bacillus*, among water-microbes, has, whilst confirming belief in the propagation of zymotic diseases by their agency, led to investigations into the conditions of the vitality of many well-known pathogenic organisms, in waters of different composition under various conditions. The main object of bacteriological examination, as at present practised, is to ascertain the number and the varieties of well-known forms of microbes contained in the water; and is effected by the process of gelatine-culture devised

by Dr. Koch, of Berlin. But the number of colonies of bacteria present in a given volume of water cannot be regarded as a satisfactory guide to its wholesomeness; and the presence of a large number of species can merely suggest the probability of some previous contamination.

The real test of the value of the water, in this connection, must be sought in the specific determination of the species present in it, and the tendency of their environment to promote increase or decrease of their numbers The complexity of the problem is such that the results of any such examination could only be usefully interpreted by a person skilled in biological science; and, among the many elements that must be considered, the following may be cited to illustrate this point.* Water affects the living protoplasm mechanically, physically and chemically; and all the substances dissolved and suspended in it exert pronounced actions on the organism. The temperature of the water is of the utmost importance as regards the life of any given species; and light is a factor that must be considered in many cases. In addition to this, it is highly probable that every eddy in the waters of lake or stream, every pause in a back-water, and every fall over a weir or cascade, affect the matter, if only in altering the gaseous contents of the water, or the distances between the individual micro-organisms.

12. From these considerations, it is plain that the arguments in favour of relying only upon long-continued series of analyses, to test chemically the character of any given source of supply, apply with increased force when the biological character of the water is in question. And, indeed, having regard to the fact that the most dangerous kind of organic impurity may occur fortuitously in waters

---

* First Report of the Water Research Committee of the Royal Society, by Drs. Frankland and Marshall Ward. Proc. Roy. Soc., vol. li. p. 215

of the highest class, it may be safely concluded that the function of the biological examination of water does not by any means end with the preliminary investigations that are undertaken in the selection of sources of supply.

13. No attempt is made to consider the question of a general standard of purity, or to do more than indicate the lines upon which water-examination is, or should be, conducted. Amidst the difficulties that beset analytical enquiry into the purity of water-supplies, it is satisfactory to find that, in practice, chemical and microscopical investigations seldom afford grounds for condemning water derived from sources that have stood satisfactorily the test of a critical inspection. To aid and prompt the engineer in his enquiry, however, these sciences occupy a trusted position; and must be appealed to in every case where the sanitary properties of water are under review. Further, in those cases in which the application of processes of purification is required, as will appear in a later section of this work, the design and efficient working of the methods employed depend largely upon an accurate knowledge of the amount and kind of the impurities under treatment. In order, therefore, to form an opinion as to the necessity for subjecting water to a process of purification, as well as to determine its nature and to estimate the cost of its application, it is essential that the engineer be furnished with proper information upon the constitution of the water that he proposes to supply, whether it be for domestic or industrial use.

14. The several sources of supply known to hydraulic engineering science are to be regarded as merely stages of the various courses pursued by water in its passage from the rain-clouds to the ocean. Whether precipitated through the atmosphere as rain, or flowing over the earth's surface as stream or river, or percolating the soil and rocks

beneath, the motion of water is to be explained according to the same uniform physical laws.

15. At the risk of being tedious, this proposition must be rigidly demonstrated ; and the unseen motion of water in its continual circulation must be shown to be only a variation of its visible mode of flow in streams upon the earth's surface. The use of the "divining rod" is still resorted to, and many persons unconsciously attribute to subterranean waters a certain independence of ordinary physical law. Few poetic images surpass in beauty Shelley's description of the descent of those rivers of antiquity from the mountain to the sea. Obedient to nature's law—

"At sun-rise they leap from their cradles steep
  In the cave of the shelving hill ;
At noon-tide they flow through the woods below
  And the meadows of asphodel ;
And at night they sleep in the rocking deep
  Beneath the Ortygian shore"

But the unnatural process to which is ascribed in the poem the ascent of the water to the mountain-tops, requires mythological lore for its acceptance. The lurking tendency to a belief in irrational modes of the occurrence and motion of water underground, which is responsible at times for the waste of large sums of money, is not easily dispelled.

16. It is a common practice in tropical and semi-tropical regions to catch rain as it falls on the roofs or floors of vast tanks ; and in many places it is customary to lead rain-water from the roofs of buildings and to store it in cisterns. Thus obtained, water is charged with atmospheric impurities only. In the neighbourhood of large towns and in manufacturing districts, such sources of supply for domestic use are open to the gravest objection.

17. After falling upon the surface of land in the form of rain, water, subject to some losses that will be alluded

to hereafter, still continues, under the action of gravity, to seek lower levels, pursuing those routes in which it experiences the least resistance to its downward motion. Generally speaking, this direction is vertical through soil and sub-soil, until its progress is checked by encountering the great body of water that saturates the subterranean regions at depths depending upon local circumstances. Here the motion is not arrested, but its direction becomes inclined at a certain angle, which is determined by the resistance opposed to the flow by the strata at the place in question. The inclination of this subterranean water-slope changes from point to point according to the geological formations traversed. In permeable rocks, such as chalk * and gravels, the slope is naturally flat; in sandstone it is less so; whilst in compact grits the angle of inclination is large—in just such degree as the impervious character of the rocks requires greater hydrostatic force to overcome their resistance to the passage of the water. The absolute level at any point of the slope also varies according to the volume of water which, contributed by the rainfall, seeks a passage to the ocean.

Thus there extends in all directions a "surface of saturation," or, as it is sometimes termed, "plane of saturation," occurring always where the descending waters assume a definite surface-slope, in accordance with ordinary hydrodynamical laws. On the whole, this surface of saturation is inclined towards the sea, although circumstances frequently produce local inclination in other directions, so marked as to mask the general character of the slope.

The surface of saturation ordinarily coincides with the "free-level" of the subterranean waters at every point in the district, although in synclinal basins overlaid by

---

* The permeability of chalk is principally due to the fissures that traverse it. (§ 131.)

extremely impervious formations this is not necessarily the case. In a district the geological structure of which is of a compact and impervious nature, the surface of saturation is often situated at no great depth underground, and may at times, when the rainfall is heavy, become raised until it coincides with the land-surface—such a condition resulting evidently from the permeability of the land being barely adequate to meet the demands of such increased quantity of water for a passage through it. The land is then said to be " water-logged." There are in general two conditions of which the immediate result is the establishment of flow upon the surface.

18. Case I.—When the surface-slope of a considerable tract of land is less than the hydraulic gradient * required to force the entire volume of water through the earth as rapidly as it falls upon it, the surface of saturation of the district rises above the surface of the land, until a hydraulic gradient is formed adapted to the circumstances of the case, and part of the flow takes place over the ground. The "hydraulic surface," as the free surface thus formed may be conveniently designated, does not differ much from the ground-surface, because the water flowing above ground is comparatively free from frictional resistance, and a slight fall is enough to produce considerable velocity, and to effect discharge off the surface as fast as the rain falls upon it.

In the special cases of rain falling upon frozen ground, or falling very heavily, the resistance of the surface to the passage of water through it may be so high as to prevent any considerable portion of it from penetrating

---

* The hydraulic gradient, inclination or declivity is a conception explained exactly in treatises on mechanics. It is a line tangential to the "free-level" surface of water in motion, and measures by its curvature at any place the variation of the resistance to flow there experienced by the water.

the earth; and abnormal flow may be established upon the surface, although the true surface of saturation is at the time situated at some depth beneath. Those who have experience of severe tropical rains, or of floods caused by the sudden melting of large accumulations of snow, must have been astonished to observe the current and the depth of water which may prevail temporarily over wide areas of land into which ordinary rainfall disappears at once.

A similar effect is produced when permeable material has accumulated in hollows on more or less impervious rock with a sloping surface. Rainfall on the rocky surface is absorbed by the permeable accumulation and reappears at its lower edge on the surface of the rock; this a casual observer might take to be the level of the surface of saturation, whereas the real saturation level may be much lower.

When the surface of saturation is high, the smallest depression in the land may be sufficient to cause it to issue therefrom, since the water-slope in any direction is determined by the facilities afforded to the passage of water in that direction. Any hollow below the surface of saturation presents to the water in the adjacent ground a course of diminished resistance which is naturally taken advantage of. In proportion to reduced resistance the surface of saturation becomes flattened, until, in the hollow, it issues above the ground as a true hydraulic surface.

The rills on every hillside, no less than rivers and lakes, owe their origin and maintenance to such causes; and it is due jointly to the high position of the surface of saturation and to their undulating character, that districts of hard and impervious geological structure lend themselves so readily to yield "surface-water"—that is to say, water which, after falling upon the earth, is almost at once directed, by its own gravitating impulse, to flow in channels on the surface of the land. Such waters, if derived from hard rocks in a sparsely-populated and agriculturally barren district, are generally the least open to objection of those yielded by any sources of domestic supply, but are indifferently adapted for irrigation purposes. In quality, they enjoy comparative immunity from animal and vegetable pollution ; the quantity of water available can be determined with a high degree of accuracy, and the water-rights, or even absolute proprietorship, of the catchment-area or watershed * may generally be secured at a moderate cost. The two last-mentioned attributes are of great importance in schemes of water-supply for power purposes.

Forests have an important effect in acting as regulators which retard the flow of the rain into the streams, thus tending to prevent excessive rise of the latter after storms.

From the circumstances considered, it is evident that the surface-water flowing off any land by no means comprises all the water that gravitates away from the area in question. No formation is absolutely impervious, and all rocks permit a certain quantity of water to pass through their interstices towards the sea at rates depending upon their permeability. The quantity thus transmitted invisibly beneath the earth's surface is termed, with respect to the water of any catchment-area, the "loss by percolation" (§ 60), and is the origin of that collected in wells.

In tracing the further course of water from its first contact with the earth, it might seem appropriate here to allude to the two natural processes of "evaporation" and "absorption" by which water is lost—i.e. rendered unavailable for supply-purposes. These losses are, however, duly dealt with under "measurement of water"; and it will be sufficient at this point to direct attention

---

* The term "watershed" is sometimes applied to the "water-parting" or boundary of a catchment area.

to the fact that evaporation is a process that affects, of course in varying degrees, surface-water, subsoil-waters, and rivers; and that "absorption" or the combination of water with either the materials of the earth or with the others elements of vegetable and animal tissue, affects in the former case chiefly sub-soil, and in the latter, surface waters —resulting, to a certain extent, in their gradual withdrawal from circulation.

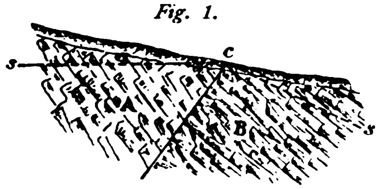
Loss by percolation may be permanent or merely temporary. In the former case, the configuration of the land, conditions of rainfall, and resisting power of the subsoil to flow through it, have a joint result in maintaining the surface of saturation below the ground. In the latter case, some portion of the flow issues from the land at lower levels, and joins the current of the true surface-water. Hence results the second condition under which flow is established upon the earth's surface—already indicated in the description of the formation of the rills on a catchment-area.

19. Case II.—When, at any place, the surface-slope of the land is of higher inclination than the hydraulic gradient required by the flow of the percolating sub-soil waters through the rocks, the surface of saturation naturally issues above the ground in the manner described in § 18. Illustrations of this action frequently occur in the streaming vertical faces of sandstone quarries, and in the marshy areas often found on steep hill-sides. Some of the water that enters every ditch is contributed in like manner from the adjacent sub-soil.

20. There is another characteristic mode of the formation of springs, which is a composite result of the actions considered in Cases I. and II. If, on a sloping land-surface of permeable character, we pass by faulting or otherwise, on to the outcrop of a comparatively impervious

rock barrier, *Fig. 1*, the surface of saturation *ss* in the permeable formation A, will be raised to furnish the steep hydraulic gradient required in the more compact rock B, beyond; and may be so far elevated as to issue from the ground at the line *c* of the barrier—part of the sub-soil flow emerging there as a spring, overflowing the lip of the permeable basin formed by the barrier. The application of the principle that the surface of saturation must be everywhere determined by the frictional resistance of the rocks and the quantity of water that seeks a passage through them, is sufficient to explain fully all questions connected with the action of springs that arise in practice.

Fig. 1.



Intermittent springs, "bournes" and "gypsey-races,' result from temporary abnormal rise of the surface of saturation, consequent upon heavy rainfall, and its issue above the ground. The disappearance of streams, whether gradually, owing to the slope of the beds being flatter than the hydraulic surface, causing the re-formation of the surface of saturation underground, *Fig. 2*, or by "sinks" and "swallow-holes," *Fig. 3*, the occurrence of which causes depression of the hydraulic gradient so suddenly as to form steps in it, may be accounted for on the same principle; and could be accurately predicted if we possessed a proper measure of the retarding influences

Fig. 2.

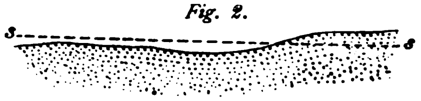
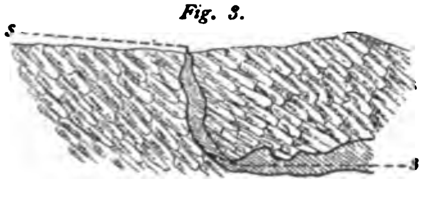


Fig. 3.



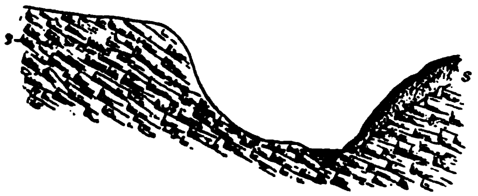
exercised by the strata under consideration, and of the quantity of water to be dealt with.

21. Although the subject of underground waters is, from absence of the means for exact measurement, necessarily indeterminate in a mathematical sense, much of the obscurity in which, at the outset, the important practical problems connected with springs as sources of water-supply appears to be involved, may be removed by the application of simple physical laws—interpreted, of course, with due regard to the geological structure and the meteorological conditions of the district under review. The yield of springs naturally varies with the inclination of the hydraulic gradient or the level of the surface of saturation to which their occurrence is due, and is entirely dependent upon the rainfall of their contributing areas. It is a quantity capable of estimation with some precision, if all the data are properly ascertained. Nothing can be more unsafe than to rely upon statements unsupported by recorded observations, or upon local tradition, when the capabilities of a spring are in question. Even springs that are truly perennial, are invariably intermittent as regards the quantity of water discharged by them at different seasons; and caution must always be observed to avoid confusing permanence of action with constancy of supply.

Spring-waters are always impregnated with the mineral solutions of the rocks from which they issue; and, if these impregnations are not excessive, the water is generally, owing to the absence of organic contamination, most suitable for domestic use. A catchment-area, the geological structure of which lends itself to the production of springs, is valuable both on account of the purity of its dry-weather flow, and of the natural storage which exists within its rocks—maintaining a gradually diminishing, but nevertheless continuous, yield of water during rainless periods, until the surface of saturation falls to the level of the lowest spring. The water is generally hard, and frequently contains a somewhat excessive quantity of iron —2 parts in 1,000,000 of this metal should be regarded as a limiting amount; but these are impurities amenable to simple treatment (§ 268), and can only be said to constitute pollution when present in unusually large quantities.

22. The next stage in which water is found, as a source of supply, is flowing in rivers—channels that maintain a perennial though ever-varying discharge. The formation of a river is due to precisely the same cause as that of the smallest rill. It owes its maintenance to the rainfall of its district preserving the level of the surface of saturation above the natural hollow that forms its bed. The occurrence of river-valleys, small originally, but ever widening and deepening by the erosion due to the scour and fretting of their currents, offers to the water percolating through adjacent land, a course of less resistance than that of the interior of the rocks; the subterranean waters gravitate towards the bottom of the valley; the surface of saturation is depressed in the vicinity, rapidly at first but flattening as the river is approached, *Fig. 4*, and emerges

Fig. 4.



from the ground coincident with the hydraulic surface of the river. The water flowing in rivers is contributed in three ways; directly, by adventitious surface-flow, and by rain; indirectly, by rivulets and ditches, which tributaries derive their own flow as miniature rivers; and, normally, by the percolating land-water that enters their beds under the hydraulic head of the neighbouring subterranean waters. The last-mentioned form of contribution is sometimes peculiarly marked by the evident increase in the size of rivers, without the apparent cause that is afforded by the junction of tributaries. Thus, in defining the watershed or catchment-area of a river, it is necessary to consider not only the superficial extent of land that discharges surface-water into it, but, further, the area from which underground water is contributed to it—two elements that are seldom co-incident.

The quality of river-water is seldom unexceptionable, and is frequently bad. Flowing through land the fertility of which is identified with their existence, receiving pollution at the hands of all for whom they form a natural resort,* and carrying in suspension the detritus of their several districts, rivers are generally charged with impurities of vegetable, animal, and mineral origin, to such an extent as to render them frequently a most desirable source of water for irrigation purposes, but not for domestic supply. Still, by certain processes, even the most unpromising river-water is often rendered serviceable in a degree that its natural condition shows little prospect of.

23. The self-purification of streams during their flow has engaged much attention; and, although it must be conceded that such action does take place, it is infinitely less effective than the natural processes of filtration and distillation. In dealing with statistics bearing upon this subject, apparent purification due to mere dilution must be

---

* Prof. Joseph Prestwich, Presidential Address to the Geological Society, 1872. Quarterly Journal Geol. Soc., vol. xxviii.

carefully distinguished from real abstraction or alteration of deleterious elements. One of the principal conclusions arrived at by the Royal Commission of 1868, appointed to consider the best means of preventing the pollution of rivers, was: "There is no river in the United Kingdom long enough to effect the destruction by oxidation of sewage put into it at its source." The exhaustive nature of the enquiry that formed the basis of that conclusion entitles it to careful consideration; and, although during the last twenty years much additional knowledge of the operations that take place in rivers has been gained, it does not lead us to believe that aëration and the agency of plant and animal life produce a much more marked effect than that of the limited extent formerly assigned to them, except in so far that pathogenic bacteria are destroyed by commoner forms, and by the action of light and an uncongenial environment. The result of the aëration produced by even the Falls of Niagara is so insignificant as to be insensible so far as regards any purifying effect upon the water.*

24. Somewhat closely allied with river-water, but superior to it in many respects, is that derived from shallow wells. Where it happens that the surface of saturation is not very far below ground, as is always the case with flat and low-lying land near the sea or rivers, and sometimes on extensive plains far distant from the sea, the waters may be intercepted in their onward course by shallow wells. The yield of such wells is governed by the rate of percolation through the land; and water may be drawn from them quite uncontaminated by the impurities of the neighbouring river- or sea-water, provided that the draught from the well does not exceed the natural rate of percolation through the ground in the normal direction of flow. The "filter-galleries" frequently used

---

* Journal American Chem. Soc., Nov. 1890.

in the United States and elsewhere, only act partially as intercepting wells—their supply being drawn by heavy pumping mainly from the adjacent rivers. In the neighbourhood of tidal basins, the water-level of such wells is observed to oscillate periodically with the tide, even though they are situated above the sea-level. This effect is due to periodical abnormal elevation of the surface of saturation, and flattening of its slope by the checking or impounding of the subterranean flow during the rise of the tide. During its ebb, the slope becomes steeper, and the rate of percolation is increased and the surface of saturation lowered. The land-water is thus discharged by pulsations corresponding with the tidal period. Any attempt, however, to pump water from such sources more rapidly than it is contributed to them by natural percolation through the earth in the normal direction of flow, has the inevitable effect (intentionally produced in the case of "filter-galleries") of reversing the flow from the natural outfall, which then contributes water directly to those sources —in a more or less perfectly strained condition, according to the compactness of the strata in which they are situated.

The water yielded by shallow wells is generally clear, and in wet seasons is fairly good. The percolation of the water through the capillary pores of the earth deprives it to a great extent of the living matter with which surface-waters are peculiarly abundant. The absence of light aided by other agencies, such as temperature and the nature of the mineral solutions present in the underground water, promote the sterilising process; which, however, is not so complete as that effected in spring-water and in that derived from deep wells, to be subsequently noticed. The principal danger to be apprehended in the class of water now under consideration, is that arising from fouling by surface-drainage and animal excreta, which, particularly in dry seasons, sink into the ground and directly join the flow of the underground water. Hence the necessity for lining all such wells down to and somewhat below the lowest level of the surface of saturation in their locality.

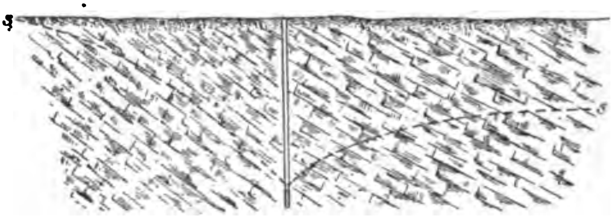
25. Deep wells may be described as those which, passing far below the surface of saturation, draw their supply from strata that are presumably entirely unaffected by surface impurities. Where such wells pass through permeable strata from the surface downwards, they are steined or lined to exclude surface-water from their immediate vicinity. They are frequently employed to reach permeable water-bearing strata underlying, and possibly also underlaid by, dense and impervious formations; and where those strata form the base of a synclinal basin, the waters with which they are charged rise under the hydrostatic pressure exerted in the more elevated parts of the basin, and may completely fill the well or bore-hole, and overflow at its surface. When this takes place, the wells—then termed Artesian—afford the most satisfactory result of the well-sinker's art. It has been estimated by Professor De Rance that there are 26,633 square miles of porous rocks in England and Wales, and in addition, 19,308 square miles of impervious clay overlying permeable rocks. These figures indicate the importance that must necessarily attach to the subject of supply from the underground waters of this country, which, unlike surface-waters, do not involve great storage reservoirs and the consequent withdrawal of considerable areas of land from agricultural use.

26. The choice of the proper situations for such borings demands an exact knowledge of the geological features of the entire district, and a full comprehension of the mineralogical and stratigraphical conditions that affect the question of the abnormal subterranean flow set up

by opening the wells. Misconception of the phenomena concerned sometimes leads to the commission of costly errors in this respect. A notable example was some years ago furnished by the large bore-hole at Bootle, near Liverpool, which at great expense was sunk to a depth of 1300 feet in response to a certain popular demand, with the main result of proving the absence of any abnormal occurrence of subterranean water in the Triassic strata of that district—a fact that was at the time urged upon the attention of the townspeople by their professional advisers, and should have required no such demonstration.

27. When a deep well does not pass through any impervious band, but draws its supply from the superficial rocks of the earth's crust, pumping produces a local depression of the surface of saturation, which extends in every direction round the well, forming an inverted "cone of depression," or "cone of abstraction," *Fig. 5*—convenient but very inaccurate terms for the figure assumed by the surface of saturation around the well. After a deep well has been sunk, the formation of the "cone of depression" proceeds *pari passu* with the rate of pumping practised. By degrees the apex of the cone approaches the bottom of the well; and, in order to maintain the yield, its depth must be increased. A limit, however, is pre-

Fig. 5.



sently reached, for the yield of the well, becoming gradually more dependent upon the contribution of rainfall derived from the base of the "cone of depression," begins to feel the effect of contamination from the surface-waters that now fall as it were directly to the apex of the cone, and are drawn into the well by the slightest excess of pumping-effect over the supplying-capacity of the normal subterranean flow now barely touched by it.

Such is the history of nearly all wells situated in the neighbourhood of large towns, which have generally to be at last disused, owing to contamination of their waters by surface-impurities; although their life may be greatly prolonged by refraining from excessive pumping at any time—by which means the supply derived from them may be, over a long period, in the aggregate largely increased. A noteworthy example was afforded some time back by the Dudlow Lane well, belonging to the Liverpool Corporation. This well, sunk to a depth of 257 feet in red sandstone, and, including tunnels or galleries, having an area of 2730 square feet on the bottom, was completed in 1871. In 1873, however, the percolation of sewage from cesspools and other sources on the surface already affected the well so seriously that the rate of pumping had to be considerably reduced; and, notwithstanding its depth, it has been impossible to draw from it anything like the quantity of water that it yielded at the outset.

The quality of the water obtained from deep wells is on the whole similar to that yielded by springs in corresponding formations; but, for the reasons already given, is more liable to pollution than the latter. It is also generally harder than spring water.

28. Before leaving this part of the subject the property of "hardness" in water may be briefly discussed, as it is not only of sanitary but of economic importance, and is

possessed in some degree by all waters. The hardest are those derived from calcareous and cretaceous rocks, but the Triassic strata also furnish very hard water. To a certain extent the presence of salts of lime and magnesia in water is beneficial to health, and highly desirable. Very soft waters containing much free carbonic acid actively attack the lead of pipes and cisterns; and although the insoluble carbonate of lead, once formed on the surface of the metal, greatly delays the further corrosive action of the water; still, much is necessarily detached and is delivered to the consumers. The Loch Katrine water—notably pure, and of less than 2 deg. hardness—acts energetically upon the lead of pipes and cisterns, and has been responsible for certain injurious results.* The great variation in hardness of waters derived from different sources may be indicated by the following Table :—

TABLE GIVING APPROXIMATE HARDNESS OF VARIOUS WATER-SUPPLIES.

—	SOURCE.	Hardness on Clark's scale.
London :		
Kent Water Co.	Wells (Chalk)	25°
West Middlesex Co.	R. Thames	15°
Liverpool (Vyrnwy)	Catchment (Silurian)	4°
Do. (Rivington)	Do. (Carboniferous)	3°
Manchester (Longendale)	Do. (Carboniferous)	3°
Glasgow	Lake	1°
Edinburgh	Catchment (Silurian)	7°
Sunderland	Wells (dolomite)	30°

Whilst very soft waters are in some respects objectionable, the same may be said of those that are extremely hard ; and modern practice is tending to reduce, where possible, supplies for domestic and manufacturing purposes to about 5° (Clark's scale). In this connection it is highly important to observe both the " permanent " and the "temporary" hardness of water. Ordinarily, their sum only is stated, unless definitely required from the analyst ; and it may be observed that carbonates and sulphates of potash and soda, and many other alkaline salts, produce a softening effect upon water. We shall return later to the subject of artificially softening water.

---

* Report of evidence given by Dr. William Wallace and Dr. Robert Bell, of Glasgow, in the Parliamentary enquiry into the St. Mary's Loch Water Scheme for Edinburgh, 1871.

29. In considering the merits of any given source of water-supply for dietetic purposes, the three principal elements of the question are the quality and the quantity of the water available, and the cost of obtaining it. An exact determination of these elements is, in every case, a matter that involves both labour and skill ; and when, as usually happens, the engineer is called upon to decide the relative merits of several suitable schemes, his judgment and experience are greatly exercised to narrow the issue, in the first place, to the factor of cost. In the investigation of water-supply for power or irrigation purposes, the quality is of less vital importance—the principal elements being those of quantity, available fall, and cost.

30. As appears from the considerations already stated, the quality of the water yielded by every source of supply, depends entirely upon the nature and extent of the polluting influences to which it has been subjected, from the time of its condensation from aërial vapour to that of its arrival at the place where it is intercepted in its course back to the ocean. A close examination of the district which forms the catchment-area of the source in question, the sanitary conditions that obtain there, the class of agriculture and other industry practised in it, its meteorological data, and the complete analysis of the constitution and

inhabitants of the water itself, form the basis of fact upon which must be decided the fitness of the supply for dietetic purposes. The question of the quantity available from any source is equally complex. It involves determination of the rainfall in all its aspects, and the geological structure of the district; together with all the local circumstances that affect "loss" by evaporation, percolation and absorption (§ 55).

For power-purposes, the available quantity and fall are concerned jointly, since those are the factors for hydraulic energy. To ascertain with any reasonable degree of approximation the power capacity of a source of supply, involves an investigation into the loss of head incurred by the conveyance of the water, which is by no means a simple matter, and will be better understood if developed in the course adopted in the following chapters.

The subject of cost is one hardly within the scope of this treatise. It is so far dependent upon local circumstances, and upon the particular class or style of the work carried out, that no useful purpose can be served by an essay upon the subject; for, after all, it is one only to be satisfactorily dealt with in the light of practical knowledge of hydraulic engineering construction.

31. Broadly speaking, waterworks may be classed as either "gravitational" or "pumping." To the former class belong all those aqueducts in which flow takes place under the action of gravity alone; also Artesian and other spring-supplies under pressure. To the latter belong all other supplies derived from rivers, lakes and wells situated so low with reference to the place of distribution of the water, that mechanical agencies must be employed to deliver the water to the consumers at a proper pressure. The relative levels of the source of supply and the place of distribution will generally be sufficient to decide into which class the

works will come; although cases sometimes occur in which they may be partly gravitational, but where, owing to some intervening high ground, pumping may have to be resorted to unless the particular circumstances warrant the construction of a tunnel. Local circumstances will, in every case, determine the particular kind of pumping machinery most suitable for the work, whether actuated by steam wind, or water-power.

Should it appear that the source is so far favourably situated with respect to the place of distribution, that the force of gravity may be used to convey the water, it is necessary to ascertain definitely the feasibility of the scheme. For this purpose a survey is required, to determine, first, the facilities that exist for storing water, and second, the most favourable route for the conduit or aqueduct. Preliminary reconnaissance of the district may be made with the aid of general linear and geological surveys, accompanied by such levelling as can be done with the aid of the aneroid barometer. But it cannot be too strongly urged that general views founded upon such surveys must be in every particular subsequently checked, and modified where necessary, by exact chaining and levelling, before detailed designs are prepared.

32. In all cases, the use of the aneroid barometer must be accompanied by observations of the thermometer. If this precaution be not taken, the survey may, and in the case of tracing an aqueduct-contour, probably will, be valueless; as the best instruments, although corrected for their own variation of temperature, do not effect the requisite correction for that of the atmosphere. Aneroid barometers are generally graduated on the assumption that the temperature of the atmosphere is constant during the observations—a condition that scarcely ever obtains in practice. It is therefore essential that the use of this

instrument be accompanied by various observations and corrections, the details of which may be ascertained from treatises on this special branch of surveying.

33. With regard to the selection of waterworks sites and routes, it would be impossible to formulate rules without premising a knowledge of the constructive and other principles to which the remainder of this work is devoted; in addition to an acquaintance with the costs and detailed methods of carrying on such operations, which is to be gained through experience alone.

Having sketched the leading considerations involved in the selection of a source of water-supply, and its fitness so far as quality is concerned, we pass naturally to the further question—What quantity of water may the source be relied upon to yield? The estimation of this quantity is arrived at by a process that, of itself, requires the aid of an almost distinct science, forming one of the most important branches of hydraulics; and, as the methods involved in it are applicable to several necessary proceedings in waterworks engineering, the subject will be treated separately in Chapter II.

34. In concluding the present section, allusion may be made to the question of compensation, payable in water, for interference with the natural order of things in a gathering-ground that is appropriated to purposes of water-supply. It is needless to discuss here the well-worn subject of damage resulting from the abstraction of water from streams, or of benefits accruing to riparian proprietors from the establishment of impounding-reservoirs, the mitigation of floods and the equalisation of the flow in the watercourses of any given district. Into the legal aspects of the question, it is not our place to intrude. But, as a matter of customary practice, it may be observed that the amount of compensation-water allotted to a

stream of which the entire catchment-area is requisitioned to supply the impounding-reservoir, has been frequently fixed at one-third of the available yield of the gathering-ground in question. The compensation-water delivered by the Liverpool Waterworks to the River Vyrnwy, amounting to 4930 million gallons per annum, is only one-fourth of the available yield of the catchment-area ; the industrial interests affected by diminution of the normal flow of that river are comparatively unimportant—the preservation of the salmon-fishery being the principal object for which compensation-water was required. This contrasts strongly with the onerous conditions imposed upon Liverpool in 1847, when one-half the valuable yield of the Rivington catchment-area was required to be delivered as compensation ; subsequently, however, in 1868, this was reduced by purchase to the present quantity of about one-third of the available yield.

The early experience of Manchester was somewhat similar to this. By an Act of Parliament obtained in 1848, the Corporation was obliged to deliver two-fifths of the available yield of their Longendale watershed as compensation to the River Etherow ; but, in 1854, an Act was obtained enabling this quantity to be reduced by purchase to about one-third of the yield—and this in an important manufacturing district. In 1879, the Manchester Corporation obtained Parliamentary powers to construct the Thirlmere Waterworks, the compensation-water required in respect of the gathering-round thus appropriated being hardly more than 2000 million gallons per annum—about one-tenth of the available annual yield of the gathering-ground. In the case of the Birmingham Elan Supply, the compensation-water is three-elevenths of the yield.

The principle of compensating streams affected by the withdrawal of water for any purpose, is undoubtedly proper, and hardly to be fully met, except in special cases, by pecuniary payments. The portion of the flow of an ordinary stream available for useful purposes, without artificial storage, was, however, formerly much over-estimated; and modern practice in this country, authorised by recent legislation, distinctly recognises that fact.

CHAPTER II.

THE MEASUREMENT OF WATER.

35. HYDRAULIC engineering practice necessitates the gauging of water both in the several modes of its occurrence in nature, and in the course of its flow through artificial conduits of various kinds, under the following conditions:—

(1) As it exists in the atmosphere in the form of vapour, and as it falls from the clouds in rain. (2) In streams; in rivers, formed by the confluence of streams, or by water draining from the land into their beds; and in artificial channels and pipes. (3) By weirs, notches, and orifices, for purposes of irrigation, compensation and general supply; and by meters, for industrial or domestic supply. We proceed to consider, in detail, some of the most approved methods adopted to meet these requirements.

36. It need scarcely be pointed out here that, in addition to the visible supply of water to every catchment-area in the form of rain, and its escape therefrom by flow over and through the earth, there are continually in progress vast operations of supply and abstraction of water, due to natural condensation and evaporation over the entire surface.

Hygrometric observations are essential to indicate the supply to watersheds in the form of dew, and the loss therefrom by evaporation; for the most potent factor affecting these phenomena is the extent to which the atmosphere is charged with moisture at any given time.

37. Every circumstance that reduces the temperature of a body of air containing moisture, effects, at a certain temperature, a deposition of dew from it; and this temperature is called the "dew point."

Attention must, however, be drawn to the fact that much of the dew and frost deposited upon plants consists of moisture exhaled from the plants themselves, and emanating from the moist earth.* The quantity of aqueous vapour present in the atmosphere depends, at any given temperature, upon the amount of evaporation and deposition that has previously taken place; and for every temperature there is a definite maximum quantity of moisture which the atmosphere is capable of containing as vapour. Air in which such quantity is present is termed "saturated."

Evaporation, if the air be not saturated, is more active at high than at low temperatures, and decreases as the quantity of aqueous vapour in suspension increases towards the saturation limit. It is also greater in a dry wind, as fresh bodies of air are thereby continually supplied to absorb more moisture. Evaporation ceases when the air is saturated with moisture.

38. Atmospheric air and aqueous vapour forming a mechanical mixture, the pressure or tension of each constituent is the same as if the other were absent; † and the resultant pressure is their sum. Therefore, the tension of the aqueous vapour in any sample of air, is a measure of the quantity present. This is called the "absolute humidity."

The "relative humidity," or simply the humidity, is the ratio of the quantity of aqueous vapour present in any portion of the atmosphere to the quantity required to saturate the air at the temperature then obtaining.

---

* Quarterly Journal Met. Soc., vol. xvii., 1891, pp. 80 *et seq.*

† The presence of aqueous vapour diminishes, however, the *density* of air.

39. Various instruments are used for measuring humidity ; the best known forms being the Regnault, the Daniell, and the "wet bulb" hygrometer. The first mentioned is in many respects the best. The Regnault hygrometer consists of a frame carrying two thin polished silver thimbles, about ¾ inch in diameter and 1¾ inch high, into which fit the lower ends of small glass tubes, the upper ends being provided with corks. Thermometers inserted through the corks pass almost to the bottom of both thimbles. A small pipe passes through the cork to the bottom of one of the tubes, which is half-filled with ether; and by means of an aspirator attached to a second pipe passing through the cork, a current of air is drawn through the ether. By the evaporation of the ether thus produced, the temperature of the tube in question is gradually reduced. The temperature at which dew is deposited on the external silver thimble is noted, and the action of the aspirator is stopped when this occurs; the temperature at which the dew disappears is also observed, the mean of the two being taken as the dew-point. The thermometer in the other tube indicates the temperature of the atmosphere. The polished silver thimbles prevent radiation of heat from the body of the observer to the thermometers, and facilitate the observation of the deposit of dew. The tension f, corresponding with the temperature of the dew-points, is found from a table of tensions of aqueous vapour, as is also the tension F corresponding with the temperature of the atmosphere:

Then $\frac{f}{F}$ is the humidity of the atmosphere at the place and time of the observations.

The tension of aqueous vapour was experimentally determined with great accuracy by Regnault, from whose tables the following values are abstracted.*

Tensions of Aqueous Vapour between – 10° C. and 34° C. expressed in Millimetres of Mercury.

Temperature.	Tension.	Temperature.	Tension.	Temperature.	Tension.
° C.	mm.	° C.	mm.	° C.	mm.
– 10	2·078	5	6·534	20	17·391
– 9	2·261	6	6·998	21	18·495
– 8	2·456	7	7·492	22	19·659
– 7	2·666	8	8·017	23	20·888
– 6	2·890	9	8·574	24	22·184
– 5	3·131	10	9·165	25	23·550
– 4	3·387	11	9·792	26	24·988
– 3	3·662	12	10·457	27	26·505
– 2	3·955	13	11·162	28	28·101
– 1	4·267	14	11·906	29	29·782
0	4·600	15	12·699	30	31·548
1	4·940	16	13·535	31	33·405
2	5·302	17	14·421	32	35·359
3	5·687	18	15·357	33	37·410
4	6·097	19	16·346	34	39·565

Descriptions of the construction and use of other kinds of hygrometers may be found in text-books of physics.

40. The variation of the humidity is somewhat masked by the diurnal cycle of change which it undergoes. Thus, on land removed from the sea and not influenced by wind, the absolute humidity is greatest in the afternoon, when the temperature of the ground is a maximum; and least when the temperature is a minimum, shortly before sunrise. But, on the shores of an ocean, the sea-breezes by

---

* Regnault, 'Relation des Expériences des Machines à Feu,' tome i. pp. 627 *et seq.*—Paris, 1847.

day affect the conditions; and a secondary minimum absolute humidity obtains during the hottest part of the day, due to the sea-breeze induced by the warm air rising from the ground.

The diurnal variations of humidity are not to be confounded with the daily oscillations of the barometer, which are due principally to the upward and downward currents of air heated near the earth's surface by the sun's rays, and cooled by radiation. These primary motions are temporarily resisted by the inertia and viscosity of the atmosphere which intensify the variation due to the former cause.

41. From the records of the humidity inferences may be drawn as to the amount of dew deposited, and absorbed for the requirements of vegetable growth. An idea may also be formed of the amount of evaporation, which is especially important in hot countries, where it is considerable unless the humidity is high. All kinds of ground, in particular chalk, fine loam, or sand, possess the property of absorbing by capillary action moisture condensed from the atmosphere, and the humidity of the latter is the determining factor by which such a process must be estimated.

The accession to the rainfall of water in the form of dew is ordinarily neglected; and the absolute yield of water from a catchment-area is stated as the difference between the quantity of rain falling upon it and the amount of water lost by evaporation, absorbed by vegetable growth, and percolating into the deep-seated rocks of the earth's crust.

The rainfall is estimated from direct measurements. The losses due to the three causes mentioned can only be estimated indirectly by comparison with similar localities under similar conditions; and, in instituting such comparisons in respect of loss by evaporation and vegetable absorption, the questions of humidity and temperature should receive due attention.

42. Whether supplies of water are to be drawn from catchment-areas, rivers, springs or wells, the estimation of the rainfall upon the area from which the water it is desired to intercept and take is derived, forms the basis of investigation into the capabilities of those sources.

43. The rainfall of a district varies with its situation, physical configuration and altitude, and the direction of the prevailing winds. Where the prevailing winds are warm, and heavily charged with moisture by crossing a large extent of ocean, the rainfall of the first high ground encountered by them will be heavy. The moist air, rising to the altitude of the hills, expands in volume and is reduced in temperature, in accordance with the adiabatic law for the expansion of gases and vapours. The cooled air cannot hold in suspension so large a quantity of vapour as before and the latter is deposited in the form of mist, rain, hail or snow. The rainfall of a district is likely to be small if the prevailing winds traverse a wide expanse of land before reaching it, or if they come from a place of low temperature to a warmer district of no greater elevation. Under such circumstances the air is generally in a suitable state for absorbing additional moisture.

The west coast of Scotland, the north-west coast of England and the greater part of Wales afford illustration of the first condition. The westerly winds, laden with vapour derived from the Atlantic Ocean, encounter broadside the high land near the coast ; and precipitation of the moisture carried by them takes place mainly in that locality. The average annual rainfall in these districts is frequently found to exceed 80 inches ; the maximum being at Seathwaite, in Cumberland, where the rainfall averages about 150 inches per annum.

The average annual rainfall on the west coast of India, where similar conditions prevail, has been known to attain 250 inches, and on the Khasia Hills it is almost double that amount. The flat districts east of the elevated tract of country running from north to south of England, afford examples of the second condition. The westerly breezes, having deposited their burden of moisture on the high land referred to, and becoming warmer as they descend on its eastern side, are no longer capable of depositing moisture in any large quantity; and the average rainfall over a considerable area on that side of the country hardly exceeds 20 inches annually.

The yearly rainfall of every district is subject to considerable variation, the rainfall in a wet year being often more than double that in a dry year. The fluctuation of the daily rainfall is still more marked.

A fall of nearly 7 inches of rain in 24 hours has been recorded at Seathwaite. At some places on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, in India, and in other parts of the world, a rainfall exceeding 30 inches in a day has been experienced; and in the 24 hours ending 9 A.M., 3rd February, 1893, rain fell to the extent of 35·71 inches at the observatory, Crohamhurst, on the D'Aguilar Range, South Eastern Queensland.* At Nedunkeni, in the northern province of Ceylon, on December 15–16, 1897, in 24 hours, the rainfall equalled 31·76 inches, the average annual rainfall there being 64·7 inches.

The torrential discharges which accompany the typhoons of the eastern seas are for a brief period of time probably still more excessive than those just mentioned.

44. Whilst any portion of the earth's surface is gaining heat the rainfall of that district is generally not great; for the atmosphere as a whole, if not disturbed by persistent

---

* *Nature*, vol. xlviii. p. 3.

wind, is rising in temperature and is therefore absorbing moisture. But after that period is passed and the average temperature of the atmosphere is reduced, it cannot hold as much moisture as before. A fall of rain then occurs if aqueous vapour is present in sufficient quantity. The prevailing winds, however, are usually the chief regulators of the time and amount of the rainfall.

45. It sometimes happens in this country that, over limited areas, falls of rain of, say, ½ inch may occur at the rate of 6 to 7 inches per hour; whilst a fall of, perhaps, 2 inches might occur at the less rate of about 2 inches per hour. A fall of one inch in ½ hour is by no means a rare occurrence in Great Britain. The following statement shows the extremes of rainfall attained in the British Isles.*

0·55 inch in 5 minutes.	1·50 inch in 45 minutes.
1·10 „ „ 15 „	1·80 „ „ 60 „
1·25 „ „ 30 „	2·20 „ „ 120 „

These heavy falls of rain are of great interest and importance, as they are the determining causes of the excessive floods that occur on catchment-areas; and, as might be supposed, the relative magnitude of such floods is greater in the smaller areas.

During the construction of the Woodhead reservoir of the Manchester waterworks, a flood occurred on the 7th October, 1849, which caused, temporarily, discharge at the rate of 500 cubic feet per second per 1000 acres, off a catchment-area of 7500 acres, equivalent to rainfall at the rate of 12 inches per 24 hours over that area.† At a later period of the construction of the same works, when the Torside and Rhodes Wood reservoirs were ready for impounding water, rainfall occurred on the 4th February, 1852, which caused a maximum rate of discharge of 250 cubic feet per second per 1000 acres from the catchment-area of 15,400 acres.* At the Vyrnwy works of the Liverpool Corporation, a flood occurred on the 29th January, 1883, which caused a flow, for a short time, at the rate of 177 cubic feet per second per 1000 acres off a catchment-area of 18,000 acres, equivalent to rainfall at the rate of 4·2 inches per 24 hours over the entire area. These floods are among the largest recorded in their respective watersheds.

---

* Symons, 'British Rainfall, 1884,' p. 128.

† Bateman, 'History of the Manchester Waterworks, p. 154—Manchester and London, 1884.

46. There are two reasons for the decrease of the rate of flood-discharge as the catchment-area increases: (1) Extremely heavy falls only last for a short time, and rain falling in the remote portions of a large watershed takes appreciably longer to flow to the place of discharge than does the rain precipitated at more central parts; so the duration of the flood is prolonged, whilst its intensity is diminished. (2) Heavy falls of rain, occurring only locally over limited areas, naturally affect but slightly the discharge from extensive watersheds.

It is useful to remember that 1 inch of rainfall per 24 hours over 1000 acres is approximately equivalent to 42 cubic feet per second. Also that a fall at the rate of 1 inch per hour corresponds with a discharge of 1 cubic foot per second off an area of 1 statute acre. Great discrimination must be exercised in arguing the probable maximum flood of a catchment-area from statistics relating to its mean† rainfall.

47. After the construction of a reservoir, the maximum rate of flood-discharge from the catchment-area supplying it is generally reduced; for, whilst the period of maximum flood is short, even if the reservoir be full its surface has to

---

* Bateman, *op. cit.*, pp. 160 *et seq.*

† The word "mean" in this connection has the significance of annual average over a long period.

be further raised to the height of the free level of the overflow when the flood attains its maximum intensity. The greatest daily rainfall recorded in the British Isles during 30 years occurred at Seathwaite on the 8th of May, 1884, when it amounted to 6·78 inches.* The maximum daily fall is found to occur in wet districts, and rarely exceeds 5 per cent. of the mean rainfall; whilst the daily fall which bears the highest ratio to the mean rainfall occurs in drier districts, and amounts to as much as 15 per cent. of the mean.

It has been conjectured from data afforded by observations in all parts of this country, that in districts where the mean rainfall is small, the greater portion of it generally falls during the summer months, whilst in districts of greater rainfall the period of maximum intensity occurs later in the year. The period of minimum fall occurs also later in the year in wet than in dry districts, but by a shorter time.

48. The rainfall of any given district is estimated from the results of measurements by rain-gauges, described hereafter. These instruments should be placed on flat open ground, with their rims horizontal and elevated about 1 foot above the surface of the ground, so as to prevent rain from splashing into them. They must be situated in positions unsheltered by trees, buildings or banks, and must not be placed near to the crests of steep hill-sides or other abrupt declivities.

The number of rain-gauges required for the estimation of the rainfall of a given catchment-area, depends upon the variation of the rainfall at different parts of the district. For instance, if the rainfall varied only with the altitude of different parts of the district, the number required in the portion situated between any two contours would be proportional to the area embraced by them. But if, as frequently happens, the rainfall also varies at different points of a district which are at the same level, these conditions must be met by duly disposing the rain-gauges in accordance with such variation—an operation which can at best be only approximately performed, and demands much experience and skill in such work to ensure any reliable estimate being based upon the records obtained.

---

* Symons, 'British Rainfall, 1884,' p. 145.

To obtain the true average rainfall of a district, 30 years' observations should be considered, if available; but in many cases the engineer has to be content with a much shorter series, and must judge from longer records in other positions, as similarly situated as possible to that in question, how much the average result obtained from the available readings is likely to differ from the true average.

49. Rain-gauges should be simple in construction and operation, because they are often necessarily situated in remote places, where trained observers are not available; and it is desirable that they should be uniform in pattern.

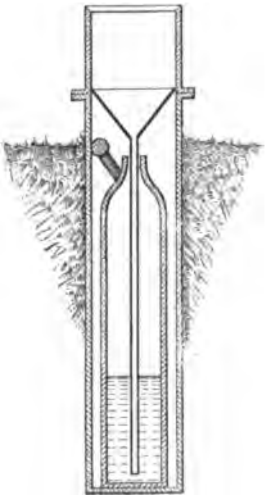
The most suitable instrument for ordinary work consists of a cylindrical copper vessel, about 30 inches long and 6 inches or 8 inches in diameter—the "Snowdon" pattern recommended by the Royal Meteorological Society has a 6-inch cylinder.[*] Upon this stands a funnel, the rim of which rises vertically about 6 inches, and terminates in a sharp bevelled edge, *Fig. 6.* The funnel terminates in a long straight tube extending nearly to the bottom of a collecting vessel which stands on the base of the cylinder. A small air-space is left between the lip of the collecting vessel and the body of the funnel above it, otherwise water might stand in the funnel and be subject to evaporation.

Much attention must be paid to the constructional details of even this simple apparatus, in order to ensure accurate results ; and to no part of it does this apply with greater force than to the funnel and the rim. It is recognised that the rim of a rain-gauge serves three objects ; by its rigidity to maintain the funnel in shape; to define the area within which the rain-drops are collected ; and to cut any rain-drop so that the proper portion of it shall pass into the funnel, and the remainder fall outside.* The best material of which to form the funnel and rim is probably copper—glass, japanned tin and earthenware tend to retard the passage of drops of water into the collecting-vessel, and so permit evaporation to act unduly upon them. The variation of the area enclosed by the rim, due to changes of temperature, is so inconsiderable in this country that it is usually neglected. The best form of edge is that shown in the diagram, bevilled on the inner side ; an outer bevilled edge presents greater liability to error due to the action of wind upon drops falling on the bevelled portion.

---

[*] Marriott, 'Hints to Meteorological Observers,' published by authority of the Council Royal Met. Soc.—London, 1892.

Fig. 6.



The diameter of the funnel, if more than 3 inches, does not affect the register, but it should be steep internally, to cause the water to quickly trickle down into the vessel below. The rain-water collected in the gauge is periodically poured out into a measuring vessel, graduated so as to show in inches and hundredths of an inch, the amount which has fallen upon the area of the funnel since the time it was last emptied.

---

* Quarterly Journal Met. Soc., vol. xvii. p. 136.

50. Simpler forms of rain-gauges are successfully employed where they are under frequent and skilled observation ; but experience teaches the hydraulic engineer to use extreme caution in relying upon the results of amateur rainfall observations, when the latter are uncorroborated by other evidence. The fact that, in a well-constructed rain-gauge, the monthly register exhibits no deficiency compared with the aggregate of daily readings, is sufficient to show that its record is, for practical purposes, independent of the effects of evaporation.

51. The Stutter differentiating rain-gauge has a receiving-funnel which delivers into a smaller funnel furnished with a bent tube, the latter being carried round a vertical axis by clockwork, so as to remain for exactly one hour over each one of 24 fixed equidistant vessels, arranged in a circle. This instrument, therefore, measures the rainfall during each hour of the day.

Automatic recording rain-gauges, although not widely used, are conveniently employed in some circumstances. The Beckley " pluviograph " consists of a receiving-funnel of the ordinary kind, carried by and communicating with a floating vessel, to which a pencil is attached, and which sinks according to the quantity of rain that it receives. The pencil traces a curve on a sheet of paper stretched round a drum rotated by clockwork. When full, the vessel is emptied by a siphon, the pencil rises again to the zero level, and the register is recommenced. Other ingenious forms of recording rain-gauges might be noticed, but the limited application of such apparatus is a sufficient reason for not pursuing the subject further in this place.

52. The rainfall as measured by rain-gauges is apparently greater at the surface of the ground than at higher levels. The diminished record depends largely upon the exposure of the rain-gauge. When the instru-

ments are unsheltered from the wind, they receive less rain than they would if well protected, because the air-currents blowing against the funnels are deflected upwards, and divert some of the raindrops which would naturally fall into the gauge, causing them to fall outside it.

A rain-gauge situated 10 feet above the ground at the Boston reservoir, Rotherham, registered, as the result of 8 years' observations, 9 per cent. less rainfall than that measured at the ground-level, whilst at 25 feet above the ground the record was 12 per cent. less.* It appears that the decrease of rain intercepted after a height of about 15 feet is attained, becomes comparatively trifling; the reason being that in the latter circumstances there is less interference by the earth's surface with the motion of the wind. The apparent decrease in the rainfall up to about 25 feet above the ground depends upon the exposure of the locality, and is more considerable the greater the force of the wind; also, the snow not collected in elevated rain-gauges reduces their record. Again, the heavier the showers of rain the less is the variation of the record at different levels, because the wind exercises less influence over the motion of a large drop than over that of a small one. In the absence of wind, there appears to be no difference between the rain-gauge records at various elevations above the surface of the ground. No attempt will be made to discuss the variation of rainfall, real and apparent, that obtains at different levels in hilly country. With the information at our command it is impossible to differentiate the element of elevation from the numerous other factors to the joint action of which the results observed in such localities are due.

53. The distribution of rain-gauges throughout most civilised countries is now so extensive that the rainfall of

---

* Symons, 'British Rainfall, 1876,' p. 35.

almost any required district may be arrived at directly with considerable accuracy. If the records available do not refer precisely to the locality under consideration, the rainfall of the latter may be arrived at in the following manner. Rain-gauges may be established in the district in question in accordance with the principles already laid down, observations being simultaneously made with instruments previously existing in the neighbourhood. The ratio of the rainfall of the district, thus determined for as long a time as practicable, to the rainfall for the same period registered by the previously-existing gauges, may be found; and its application to the rainfall observed by the aid of the latter in former years, then furnishes approximately the information required for this district during those years.

54. For purposes of exact calculation it is necessary

MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM MONTHLY RAINFALL, 1841–1891 ; AND MEAN MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE FIFTY YEARS, 1841–1890.

Month.	1841–1891.				Mean 1841–1890 (50 years).
	Maximum.	Year.	Minimum.	Year.	
	inches.		inches.		inches.
January . .	4·35	1877	0·26	1880	1·99
February . .	4·03	1866	0·05	1891	1·48
March . . .	4·05	1851	0·17	1852	1·46
April . . .	4·31	1878	0·09	1855	1·66
May . . .	4·37	1865	0·30	1844	2·00
June . . .	5·80	1860	0·30	1849	2·02
July . . .	6·75	1888	0·27	1864	2·47
August . . .	5·38	1878	0·45	1849	2·35
September . .	4·12	1871	0·16	1865	2·25
October . .	7·65	1880	0·76	1879	2·81
November . .	6·00	1852	0·42	1867	2·27
December . .	5·76	1876	0·31	1873	1·77

to consider the rainfall during shorter periods than one year, and it is generally desirable to introduce the average monthly rainfall into computations relating to the storage and supply of water. When rainfall records are systematically kept, the register always shows these monthly quantities.

The preceding Table, kindly furnished by the Astronomer-Royal, gives the maximum, mean and minimum monthly rainfall averages at the Royal Observatory, Greenwich, for fifty years.

From this it appears that the average monthly percentage of the mean rainfall at Greenwich is:—

Jan.	*Feb.*	*Mar.*	*Apr.*	*May.*	*June.*	*July.*	*Aug.*	*Sept.*	*Oct.*	*Nov.*	*Dec.*
8,	6,	6,	7,	8,	8,	10,	10,	9,	12,	9,	7;

on the Pentland Hills, in Scotland, the average of a shorter, though still considerable, period is :—

11, 8, 6, 5, 6, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 12, 10;

on the high ground at the southern extremity of the Pennine chain of hills, in England, the average has been ascertained to be :—

9, 8, 6, 6, 5, 8, 11, 10, 10, 10, 9, 8;

and on the Snowdon range, in Wales, it has been found to approach:—

7, 9, 6, 6, 7, 6, 8, 9, 8, 10, 12, 12.

These figures, although relating to districts of limited size, widely separated, and subject to very different amounts of rainfall, exemplify generally the average distribution of rain throughout the year in this country ; and, whilst they cannot pretend to express with absolute accuracy anything beyond the particulars recorded by them, they may in the absence of more exact information be useful to indicate generally the proportionate quantities of rainfall which may be expected at the several seasons of the year.

55. To arrive at the actual quantity of water on a catchment-area, which can be rendered available for purposes of supply, in addition to the rainfall three important considerations are involved:—(1) the quantity of rainfall lost through evaporation and absorption by vegetation; (2) the amount of percolation through the strata out of the catchment-area; and (3) the maximum period during which the available supply falls short of the demand.

56. The portion of the rainfall which finds its way into the streams or springs draining a catchment-area that is but slightly permeable, depends largely upon the activity and extent of evaporation and the absorption of water by plant life. The subject of evaporation has already been alluded to; its effect is naturally more marked in flat than in hilly districts from which water rapidly flows away, and is in a peculiar degree dependent upon the distribution of the rainfall throughout the year. In valleys with steep hills on each side, subject to a heavy rainfall, the loss from evaporation in this country during the winter is insignificant. In such localities, within our experience, the evaporation and absorption throughout the year have together not exceeded 20 inches, and have been as low as 12 inches; the loss being experienced principally in the summer months, when it has occasionally amounted to more than 75 per cent. of the rainfall. In dry districts, it frequently happens that during the summer months nearly the whole of the rainfall thus disappears.

Generally, upon permeable soils or upon steep and impervious land, the loss by evaporation is small. If, however, in permeable soils, the surface of saturation is, owing to the physical features of the locality, situated near to the surface of the ground, evaporation takes place actively under favourable atmospheric conditions.

57. Evaporation from the surface of land cannot be directly measured, but is readily obtained as the difference between the rainfall and the percolation and absorption. Careful experiments prosecuted for long periods have been made to ascertain the amount of water which percolates through different thicknesses of soil and other materials, and the average evaporation from a water-surface. The following are the most important of them :—

The result of 30 years' percolation experiments made at Nash Mills, from 1853 to 1883, with a mean rainfall of 27·8 inches, showed that 6·5 inches of rain percolated through 3 feet of the soil of the district, and 10·6 inches percolated through 3 feet of broken chalk. In each case the materials were contained in a water-tight cast-iron box of 3 feet cube, covered with grass sod. Of the 10·6 inches which flowed through the chalk, 2·1 inches percolated during the summer months, with a rainfall of 14·1 inches ; and 8·5 inches percolated in the winter with a rainfall of 13·7 inches. But, during a dry period of 3 years (1862–64), with a mean rainfall of 22 inches, only 3·5 inches percolated through the soil and 5·1 inches through the chalk.*

Observations during 14 years, upon percolation through soil and sand, and the evaporation from a water-surface, made at Lee Bridge in the years 1860–73, have been fully described in the 'Minutes of Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers.' The averages over the entire period are :—

Rainfall.	Percolation.		Evaporation.		
	Soil.	Sand.	Soil.	Sand.	Water.
inches. 25·7	inches. 7·6	inches. 21·4	inches. 18·1	inches. 4·3	inches. 20·6

---

* 'Hydro-Mechanics': a series of lectures delivered at the Institution of Civil Engineers, 1884–85, p. 17.

The evaporation from the surface of water exceeded the rainfall in 3 years out of the 14. The small evaporation from sand presents a marked contrast to that from the less permeable soil.*

The results of observations made at Fernielaw, Colinton, from the year 1871 to 1880, by the late Mr. James Leslie, gave, with a mean rainfall of 38·1 inches, an average evaporation of 15·4 inches from a water-surface; and at the Glencorse filters of the Edinburgh Corporation, from the year 1857 to 1880, with a mean rainfall of 38·8 inches, the average evaporation from a water-surface was 11·4 inches.† Investigations by Sir John Lawes and Dr. Gilbert ‡ have shown how the resistance opposed by increased thickness of strata retains the rain within the influence of evaporation for a longer period, and causes the effect of the latter to be more sensible. Further, they have corroborated the general rule that the ratio of percolation to rainfall during the winter months is much higher than in summer, and is greater in years of heavy rainfall than in dry years.

These experiments possess much interest in their bearing upon some of the general laws applicable to the subject; but their scale is too limited to fix quantitatively, for ordinary engineering purposes, the laws they indicate.

58. The most satisfactory way to arrive at the amount of loss by evaporation, absorption and percolation, in a catchment-area whence the rainfall flows away mainly as a stream, is by continuous gaugings of the stream for as long a period as possible—at the same time observing the rainfall by rain-gauges. In this manner, the actual quantity of

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xlv. pp. 19 *et seq.*

† *Op. cit.*, vol. lxxi. p. 74.

‡ *Op. cit.*, vol. cv. pp. 35 *et seq.*

available water during the time that the gaugings have been taken, is directly ascertained. The difference between this and the observed rainfall gives the amount of loss from the several causes mentioned, and may be applied, with due regard to the distribution of the rainfall throughout the year and other local circumstances, to other years and to similar localities.

The classic gaugings of the River Lee for the years 1851, 1852, 1856, and 1858 gave the following results :—*

Year.	Rainfall.	Flow off the District.
	inches.	inches.
1851	22·62	6·00
1852 †	39·71	9·13
1856	23·91	5·57
1858 †	20·86	4·39

More recent investigations extended to the northern and western districts of Great Britain, which must be regarded as containing the principal sources of water-supply by catchment in this country, have established the fact that, on the less permeable formations, the average annual loss of rainfall by evaporation, absorption and percolation varies between 10 inches and 20 inches, according to the geological and physical character of the district, and its mean rainfall.

59. The distribution of this loss throughout the year, just as in the case of the rainfall, must be next considered. It can only be ascertained exactly for any given district by prolonged experiments embracing a wide range of meteorological conditions. An approximation may be

---

* Beardmore, 'Manual of Hydrology,' p. 151—London, 1862; Rivers Pollution Commission of 1865, 2nd Report, Minutes of Evidence, p. 35.

† 1852 was a specially wet year over the greater part of the country, and 1858 was an exceptionally dry year.

arrived at, as for rainfall, by the application of a ratio derived from observations in similar districts subject to the same meteorological phenomena. The value of such an investigation depends, however, largely upon the accuracy of judgment employed in framing the analogy upon which the entire fabric of the argument rests.

On the impervious and barren Silurian formations of the West of England, the average yield of a catchment-area, expressed as percentage of the mean rainfall, may be found, approximately, to be—

During three months:

Jan., Feb., Mar.	*Apr., May, June.*	*July, Aug., Sept.*	*Oct., Nov., Dec.*
25 per cent.	10 per cent.	15 per cent.	30 per cent.

To illustrate the great difference in this respect which obtains in permeable districts of low mean rainfall, with these figures may be contrasted the yield of the Thames valley as indicated by the discharge of the river at Teddington,* which may be taken, for purposes of comparison, as—

During three months:

Jan., Feb., Mar.	*Apr., May, June.*	*July, Aug., Sept.*	*Oct., Nov., Dec.*
13 per cent.	6 per cent.	3 per cent.	9 per cent.

60. The percolation experiments alluded to in § 57 convey some idea of the rate at which underground water is derived from the surface in permeable districts. In localities, however, which are suitable for the collection of surface-water, that which percolates the soil is largely restored to the stream that drains the catchment-area; and whilst the formation of an impounding-reservoir undoubtedly raises the surface of saturation in its vicinity, the loss of water by percolation into neighbouring valleys,

---

* 'Report on the Flow of the Thames,' by A. R. Binnie, 1892.

or into the land below the site of the dam, is, in places well adapted for such works, extremely small.

Thus far we have dwelt with average hydrological conditions, in considering the several important factors that enter into the estimation of the yield of water from catchment-areas. We have now to approach the question, how far the great variations of those conditions, which occur in an apparently irrational manner, affect the calculation.

61. The maximum period during which the demand for water exceeds the natural yield, determines the amount of storage required. If this condition never occurs, storage is unnecessary. In supplies from catchment-areas, it is sometimes desirable that all the water that can be economically stored, should be impounded. Owing, however, to the great variation in the rainfall from year to year, it is seldom attempted to construct a reservoir large enough to equalise the supply over a longer period than 3 years ; and usually the driest three consecutive years are considered in this connection.

The following rules, for the British Isles, based upon the observations of a long series of years, may be accepted unreservedly.*

(1) The wettest year has a rainfall nearly half as great again as the mean ; (2) The driest year has one-third less rainfall than the mean ; (3) The driest two consecutive years average each one-fourth less rainfall than the mean ; (4) The driest three consecutive years average each one-fifth less rainfall than the mean.

These rules do not apply to all parts of the world, e.g. the average rainfall in the great plains in the interior of Australia, according to the returns of the geological department of Queensland, is about 18 inches per annum, the maximum being about 37 inches and the minimum 6 inches per annum.

---

* Symons, 'British Rainfall, 1883,' p. 32.

The extremes of wetness and dryness are less pronounced in districts of great rainfall than in drier districts, consequently more storage is required in the latter than in the former localities.

62. After ascertaining the rainfall for the driest three years, it is necessary to consider the distribution of the rainfall during those years. For purposes of preliminary investigation, the average monthly ratios or percentages of rainfall (§ 54) for the district under consideration, may be employed to determine as a rough guide the distribution of the rainfall during the dry period. To the figures thus arrived at, must be applied the proper values of the ratios of yield to rainfall.

As indicated in § 61, the portion of the total yield which can, without undue expense, be rendered available for supply is frequently estimated upon the "driest three years" basis. The amount of storage required to effect this, forms a problem that is treated separately in Chapter IV.

We have it on the high authority of the late Mr. Thomas Hawksley, that, in this country, to be perfectly safe, the storage required may vary from 150 days' supply in wet districts up to double that quantity in dry districts.* Between these limits, local circumstances determine the requisite storage. The method of calculation is further treated in § 190.

63. It will now be apparent that the important questions both of the ultimate "yield," or limiting capacity in respect of furnishing a supply of water, of every catchment-area, and of the works necessary to render supplies drawn from such sources uniform in quantity and free from the extreme fluctuations of the natural supply of water to the earth, hinge upon the accurate estimation of

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xxxi. p. 56.

the available rainfall of the district. This quantity is arrived at in either of two ways:—First, by the processes sketched in the preceding sections, the probable minimum rainfall and the loss therefrom owing to unavoidable natural causes, may be ascertained for a proper period, as well as its distribution during that period. This plan is generally adopted for preliminary investigation. Second, the actual quantity of water flowing away from the proposed source of supply may be directly measured at the place where it is to be intercepted, during as long a period as possible; such actual measurements affording, in relation to rainfall statistics, data upon which the probable yield of the source may be computed with great accuracy by simple proportion.

64. We proceed to consider the subject of gauging the flow of water.

The theory of hydrodynamics is considered in one of two ways: either (1) the relation between the velocity, pressure and density is found at any particular point within the volume of the fluid, which is called the "Eulerian" method; or (2) the relation between the velocity, pressure and density of a particular particle throughout its motion is investigated; this is the "Lagrangian" method. Both of these tacitly assume that particles of fluid follow each other in stream-lines. The discrepancy between the results thus calculated and certain experimental data, and, on the other hand, the agreement between theoretical and experimental results in other cases, point to the conclusion that the motion of water is not always completely specified by assumptions of laminar or multifilar flow. Experiments have shown that when it is so, the motion of water differs from that implied in the ordinary theory. It may be classed broadly as "steady" and "unsteady," and a good idea of the difference between these two kinds of motion is afforded by a simple experiment, of which the following is a short description. If water be allowed to flow through a glass tube, at first very slowly, and then with gradually increasing velocity, and if colour be injected at the inlet end of the tube, it is seen that, when the velocity of the water is slow, the colour is drawn out in separate and steady stream-lines. The state of things continues until a certain velocity is reached, when the stream-lines break into well-defined eddies. This critical velocity varies with the ratio of the viscosity of the water to its density, and inversely as the diameter of the tube.

65. Among circumstances conducive to steady motion, and consequently to a condition to which the ordinary theory applies, are viscosity, a free surface, converging solid boundaries, and curvature with the velocity greatest at the outside. When any of these conditions are in the ascendant, the motion takes place according to theoretical law; and this fact, together with experiments with coloured bands, has enabled the foregoing classification to be made. In such cases, integration of the equations of motion leads to a comparatively simple relation of velocity, pressure and density, known as Bernoulli's theorem. This theorem is really a statement of the fact that the energy of all particles of water, due to their velocity, together with the energy due to the pressure and height above a datum plane, is constant along any stream-line.

If v be the velocity of a particle of water in feet per second, p its pressure in pounds per square foot, h its height in feet above the datum plane, H a constant for each stream-line, and w the weight of a cubic foot of water in pounds, the relation is expressed by

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} + \frac{p}{w} + h = H.$$

This equation, together with the principle of the conservation of momentum, leads to the commoner results of theoretical hydraulics. The energy of water may be utilised in any of the several ways implied by the three terms of Bernoulli's theorem. In impulse turbines, the energy of water is utilised in its first, or velocity form; in water-pressure engines, the energy is utilised in its second, or pressure form; and in overshot water-wheels it is employed in its third, or head form, by its fall under gravity. In reaction turbines and in undershot water-wheels the energy of water is utilised in two forms: in the former in its pressure and velocity forms, and in the latter in its velocity and head forms. The equation shows why, in a contracting tube, the pressure decreases as the tube contracts; for, supposing the tube to be horizontal, the energy due to the velocity, together with the energy due to the pressure, is constant; hence, as the energy due to the velocity increases inversely as the fourth power of the diminishing diameter, the pressure proportionately decreases. This circumstance is the origin of the jet pump; for it is possible, by sufficiently contracting the tube, to obtain a high vacuum.

The circumstances conducive to unsteady motion have been stated as: variation of velocity across a stream when it flows through still water, solid bounding-walls, divergent solid boundaries, and curvature with the velocity greatest at the inside. For these cases, it is found by experiment that the motion is not that implied by theory; and experiments with coloured bands have indicated that it is of an eddying nature. An interesting example of the boundary of a fluid causing eddying motion is afforded by the presence of oil on water during a breeze. The thin film of oil spread over the surface of the water introduces one condition of a solid boundary, viz. that of resistance to extension; and this, although slight, is sufficient to alter the form of instability in the water from waves to eddies below the surface. This also explains why it is possible for the surface of a pond to freeze during the prevalence of a breeze. For, if a very thin skin of ice happens to form during a momentary lull, it introduces the necessary surface condition which causes ripples to cease and eddies to be formed underneath the ice.

66. The flow of water, in almost all kinds of channels, falls under the head of unsteady motion. The fundamental equation of delivery, which expresses Q the rate at which water is conveyed along a channel, in terms of v the mean velocity of the stream and A its sectional area, is

$$Q = v A.$$

The velocity of the water flowing in a natural stream, a conduit or a pipe, is such that the resultant of its gravitational impulse in the direction of its motion is equal to the resistance of its bed and of the eddies within its body. It has been found by experiment that the resistance to the flow of water is proportional to the square of its mean velocity, to the area of the surface of contact, and to its density.* The component of the attraction of gravity parallel to the surface of the stream, equals the weight of the water into the sine of the inclination of the surface to the horizontal plane.

That is the fluid friction equals :—

$$f v^2 p \Delta l w = A \Delta l w \sin i.$$

Where v is the mean velocity in feet per second ;

p is the wetted perimeter of the channel-section in feet ;

Δl is the length of a small portion of the channel

---

* The presence of large quantities of silt in the water, by increasing the specific gravity of the mixture, decreases the velocity of streams.

w is the weight of a cubic foot of water ;

A is the sectional area of the stream in square feet ;

i is the angle of inclination of the surface of the stream, which equals $\sin i$ as the angle is always small ;

and f and c are coefficients.

If for $\frac{A}{p}$ we write m, a quantity that is termed the "hydraulic mean depth," the equation may be written more concisely

$$v = c\sqrt{m\,i}.$$

Thus, the velocity is expressed as the product of a coefficient into the square root of the product of the hydraulic mean depth and the inclination, a formula originally proposed by Chezy, Directeur de l'École des Ponts et Chaussées, in 1775. c is not a constant coefficient, because the mean velocity in a section of the stream (to the square of which the resistance is regarded as proportional) is not the velocity with which the water rubs against the surface in contact with which it flows ; and much of the resistance experienced is due to the eddies in the mass of the water. The formula is therefore rectified to accord with this unsteady motion by varying the coefficient, whose value has been experimentally ascertained by Messrs. Darcy, Bazin and other investigators, for various values of hydraulic mean depth, roughness of the perimeter, and inclination of the surface of the stream.

The expression must be applied with caution, for it frequently happens that, owing to a series of falls in the bed of a stream, its inclination is much greater than that to which its velocity is due; in which case the equation is not applicable. The surface-inclination of small channels of uniform regimen may easily be observed by spirit-levelling; but in deep and sluggish rivers and canals, the inclination is slight, and requires measurements of great refinement for its accurate determination.

67. The important series of experiments on the flow of water in open conduits begun by Darcy in 1856, and after his death completed by Bazin in 1865, were made in artificial channels of varied shapes and sizes, lined with various materials, and in natural canals.* The conduits were rectangular, trapezoidal, triangular, and semicircular in section. The rectangular sections varied in width from 4 inches to 6 feet 6 inches. The bottom widths of the trapezoidal conduits were a little more than 3 feet, and the sides of these and of the triangular sections were inclined at an angle of 45° to the vertical. The diameter of the semicircular conduits was a little over 4 feet. The canals varied in bottom-width from about 4 feet to 7 feet. Experiments were made with varying depths of water and surface-inclination, care being taken that the regimen of the flow should be first completely established. The discharge was gauged by causing the water to flow through orifices, the coefficients for which had previously been accurately determined. The velocity of flow varied in different experiments from 8 inches per second to 20 feet per second.

The result of these experiments was to ascertain a series of true coefficients for application in the "Chezy" formula. The coefficients were found to vary with the hydraulic mean depth of the stream, and with the roughness of the material of the surface in contact; and to be independent of the surface inclination.

---

* Darcy and Bazin, 'Recherches Hydrauliques'—Paris, 1865.

The variation is expressed thus:[*]

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\alpha\left(1 + \frac{\beta}{m}\right)}}$$

The following values of α and of β apply to four classes of channels experimented upon, of different degrees of roughness:

	Values of	
	α	β
(1) Smooth channels—cement or planed timber	0·0000457	0·10
(2) Smooth channels—ashlar, brickwork or planks ..	0·0000579	0·23
(3) Rough channels—rubble masonry or stone pitching	0·0000732	0·82
(4) Rough channels—earth	0·0000854	4·10

To assist the rapid application of the formula within the limits of the experiments—calling c_1, c_2, c_3, c_4, the respective values of c for the several kinds of channel described, the following table gives their amounts for different hydraulic mean depths (m).

Hydraulic Mean Depth (m).	Values of c.			
	c_1	c_2	c_3	c_4
0·25	125	95	57	26
0·50	135	110	72	36
0·75	139	116	81	42
1·00	141	119	87	48
1·50	143	122	94	56
2·00	144	124	98	62
3·00	145	126	104	70
4·00	146	128	106	76
5·00	146	128	108	80
6·00	147	129	110	84
7·00	147	129	110	86
8·00	147	130	111	88
9·00	147	130	112	90
10·00	147	130	112	91
15·00	147	130	114	96
20·00	147	131	114	98
∞	148	131	117	108

Applied to artificial channels, and to canals of moderate size, the formula gives satisfactory results; but it is not generally applicable to large channels, or to rivers, or to torrential streams.

---

[*] *Op. cit.*, pp. 130 *et seq.*

Bazin's formula for c has been reduced to a form involving only one coefficient γ depending on the roughness of the channel, it is:—

$$c = \frac{157 \cdot 6}{1 + \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{m}}}.$$

For smooth channels—cement,	$\gamma = 0 \cdot 109$
„ rough channels—rubble masonry,	„ $1 \cdot 54$
„ rough channels—earth,	„ $3 \cdot 17$

68. In the formula for "c" (§ 67) Messrs. Darcy and Bazin made the coefficient depend upon the dimensions of the channel and its roughness only. The utilisation of more extended data has shown that c also varies with the surface-inclination of the stream. Modified so as to apply to a range of phenomena from those of great rivers, as ascertained by Messrs. Humphreys and Abbott in the Mississippi, to those presented by the torrents of Switzerland, experimented upon by Messrs. Ganguillet and Kutter, in the work of the last mentioned authors * the expression for c takes the form

$$c = \frac{z}{1 + \frac{x}{\sqrt{m}}};$$

when $$z = 41 \cdot 6 + \frac{1 \cdot 811}{n} + \frac{0 \cdot 00281}{i}$$

and $$x = n\left(41 \cdot 6 + \frac{0 \cdot 00281}{i}\right).$$

---

* Ganguillet and Kutter, 'Versuch zur Aufstellung einer neuen allgemeinen Formel für die gleichförmige Bewegung des Wassers in Canälen und Flüssen' —Berne, 1877. Also translation by R. Hering and J. C. Trautwine—New York and London, 1889

The expression may therefore be written

$$c = \frac{\sqrt{m}}{n} \cdot \frac{x + 1{\cdot}811}{x + \sqrt{m}}.$$

The values of n for various kinds of channels are:

For surfaces of	planed planks,	$n =$	0·009
„ „	plaster in neat cement,	„	0·010
„ „	plaster, ⅔ sand, ⅓ cement,	„	0·011
„ „	unplaned planks,	„	0·012
„ „	ashlar and brickwork,	„	0·013
„ „	rubble masonry,	„	0·017
For canals in firm gravel,		„	0·020
For rivers and canals in earth	in good order,	„	0·025
„ „ „	in moderate order,	„	0·030
„ „ „	in bad order,	„	0·035

Additional values of n have been interpolated by Mr. Lowis D'A. Jackson,* and others.

69. It may be desirable to observe that it has sometimes been proposed to use the "Chezy" formula with a constant value of c to determine the velocity of streams, but that course can be obviously of only limited application. All the foregoing investigations relate to the determination of the mean or average velocity in a definite cross-section of the stream of water under consideration. This velocity multiplied by the plane area of the cross-section gives the rate of flow on delivery of the stream, which is the quantity actually sought.

70. The motion of water in pipes is generally of a more stable character than that in channels, and the experiments that have been made upon this kind of flow, are sufficient to enable the delivery of pipes to be calculated with a high degree of accuracy, in all cases that occur in ordinary

---

* Jackson, 'Hydraulic Manual,' p. 41—London, 1883.

practice. The flow of water in pipes exemplifies both steady and unsteady motion. It was found by Poiseuille that for capillary tubes, the resistance is proportional to the velocity ; and Darcy ascertained that in pipes of larger diameter, the resistance is proportional to the square of the velocity. To bring these apparently inconsistent laws into agreement, Dr. Osborne Reynolds made a series of experiments,[*] proving that slow motion of water in all tubes or pipes, at a sufficient distance from the outlet, is steady ; but, after attaining a certain critical velocity which varies inversely with the size of the pipes, the motion becomes sinuous. Also that, whilst the motion is steady, the resistance is proportional to the velocity ; but that, as soon as a sinuous condition occurs, the resistance varies approximately as the square of the velocity. The fact that the resistance in a capillary tube varies as the velocity, whilst that in a tube of greater diameter varies with the square of the velocity, led to the supposition that some property of water, exerting an important influence on its motion, had not been recognised in the ordinary equation. That the resistance should depend on the absolute size of the tube is impossible, according to the laws of motion. This important factor was found to be the ratio of the viscosity to the density of the water—which ratio has the dimension of the product of a velocity into a space.

Dr. Reynolds was led, from a consideration of his experiments made in 1883, those of Poiseuille made in 1845, and those of Darcy made in 1857, to put the expression for the resistance of the flow of water in pipes into the following form, which expresses in the metrical system the resistance for all diameters of pipes and temperatures:

$$A \frac{d^3}{P^2} i = \left(B \frac{d\,v}{P} \right)^n . \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

---

[*] Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., Part 3, 1883.

Where i is the virtual inclination (§ 71);

d is the diameter of the pipe;

v is the velocity of the water;

$P = (1 + 0{\cdot}0337\ T + 0{\cdot}000221\ T^2)^{-1}$ is the ratio of viscosity of the water to its density (T being temperature in degrees Centigrade);

$A = 67{,}700{,}000$; $B = 396$;

and n is an index, which is unity when the velocity is below the critical velocity; and for higher velocities, varies according to the roughness of the internal surface of the pipe.

For clean lead pipes,	above the critical velocity,		$n =$	$1{\cdot}79$
„ varnished pipes	„	„	„	$1{\cdot}82$
„ clean cast-iron pipes	„	„	„	$1{\cdot}88$
„ rusted iron pipes	„	„	„	$2{\cdot}00$

Taking the second and the English foot as units, the formula becomes:

$$v = \frac{3{\cdot}28^{\frac{2n-3}{n}} A^{\frac{1}{n}}}{B} \times \frac{d^{\frac{3-n}{n}}\, i^{\frac{1}{n}}}{P^{\frac{2-n}{n}}}$$

$$= \frac{C}{P^{\frac{2-n}{n}}}\, d^{\frac{3-n}{n}}\, i^{\frac{1}{n}}, \text{ } C \text{ being a constant.}$$

When $n = 1{\cdot}82$, the formula becomes

$$v = \frac{77{\cdot}6}{P^{0{\cdot}1}}\, d^{0{\cdot}65}\, i^{0{\cdot}55}. \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

When $n = 1{\cdot}88$, the formula becomes

$$v = \frac{60}{P^{0{\cdot}064}}\, d^{0{\cdot}6}\, i^{0{\cdot}53}. \qquad \text{(iii.)}$$

When $n = 2{\cdot}00$, the formula becomes

$$v = 38\sqrt{di}. \qquad \text{(iv.)}$$

These equations apply to pipes of all diameters, excepting capillary tubes, for the rates of flow that occur in practice. Taking the temperature as 10° C., $P^{0 \cdot 064} = \frac{1}{1 \cdot 02}$; i.e. the flow through a new cast-iron pipe is 2 per cent. greater at 10° C. than at 0° C. In the formula for rusted pipes the term P is absent; the flow in such pipes is, therefore, independent of the temperature. Equation (iii.) represents the case of newly laid mains, and equation (iv.) applies to mains fouled by use, and incrusted with nodules of rust.

As the result of experiments on the flow through pipes 48 inches diameter, Mr. Desmond Fitzgerald deduces [*] the formulæ :—

$v = 85\, d^{0 \cdot 5}\, i^{0 \cdot 53}$ for cleaned pipes ;

and $v = 54 \sqrt{d\, i}$ for tubercled pipes.

For facility of working, neglecting effects of temperature, the formulæ may be written thus, taking logarithms,

(iii.) $\log v = 1 \cdot 77815 + 0 \cdot 6 \log d + 0 \cdot 53 \log i.$

(iv.) $\log v = 1 \cdot 57978 + 0 \cdot 5 \log d + 0 \cdot 5 \log i.$

Since P, the ratio of the viscosity of water to its density at any given temperature, is of the dimension of a space multiplied by a velocity, it will be seen that, as the index n changes from 1 to higher values, the dimensions of the term on the right of equation (i.) remain unchanged.

71. A somewhat similar formula was proposed in 1873,[†] by Dr. C. J. H. Lampe, based upon experiments conducted at Dantsic on a water-main about 16 inches in diameter, and of a length of nearly 9 miles. Dr. Reynolds was led to put the equation into the form (i.) by plotting, from the experiments, the logarithms of the slopes of the pressures

---

[*] Trans. Am. Soc. C.E., Feb. 5, 1896.

[†] *Der Civilingenieur*, vol. xix. pp. 69 *et seq.*

as abscissæ and the logarithms of the velocities as ordinates. The factors by which i and v are multiplied, are the distances through which the resulting straight lines had to be moved horizontally and vertically to bring them into coincidence, and the index n is the inclination of the straight lines to the axis of x.

In the case of pipes, i, the virtual inclination, may be thus explained: If two reservoirs of water at the same level are connected by a pipe, the water in the latter is at rest and the pressure is everywhere equal to that due to the depth of the pipe below the surface of the water in the reservoirs. If, however, the water in one of the reservoirs is lowered, water will begin to flow through the pipe at a velocity dependent upon the inclination of an imaginary line joining the top-water of the reservoirs at the respective ends of pipe, which line is called the virtual gradient. The pressure at any point in the pipe is that due to a head of water equal to the height of the virtual gradient above that point. Thus, if the pipe were tapped anywhere and a tube were carried up from it, the water would rise in the tube till it reached the line of the virtual gradient—the head due to the difference between the level of this point and the higher top-water having been utilised in overcoming the resistance of the pipe. If the pipe touched this line at any part, the pressure in the pipe there would be equal to the atmospheric pressure; and if the pipe rose above the line, the pressure would be less than that of the atmosphere. As, however, it is the practice to place air-cocks at each summit on the line of a water-main, the latter contingency would never occur; but the flow would be interrupted there, its flow being that due to the gradient between the upper reservoir and that point. Although the effect of temperature, by influencing the viscosity of water, is sufficient, *ceteris paribus*, to double the flow at very low velocities between 5° C. and 35° C.; at higher velocities its influence is slight, and Darcy does not appear to have noticed it at all.

72. From experiments on the flow of water in pipes varying between $\frac{1}{2}$ inch and 1 foot 8 inches in diameter, Darcy deduced an empirical equation for the velocity of flow in pipes, reduced to the same form as that applicable to streams.[*] In this, the coefficient is of less fluctuating character; and although varying for different sizes of pipes, it is, as regards those previously considered for streams, comparatively constant. Hence a mean coefficient may be used for a large range of diameters, without exceeding the limits of accuracy as observed in the experimental data. In the formula $v = c\sqrt{mi}$ for a pipe, $m = \frac{d}{4}$, and c varies only with the diameter and the roughness of the internal surface. The coefficient is expressed in the following forms, using English measures:

$$c = \frac{113}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{12d}}}\text{, for clean iron pipes,} \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

and

$$c = \frac{80}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{12d}}}\text{, for rusted pipes.} \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

If d be taken a mean between 1 foot and 4 feet, the average coefficient so found will yield results within the limits of sensible accuracy. The formula then becomes

For clean iron pipes, $v = 55\sqrt{di}$, or $Q = 43\,d^{\frac{5}{2}}\,i^{\frac{1}{2}}$. (iii.)

" rusted " $v = 39\sqrt{di}$, or $Q = 30\,d^{\frac{5}{2}}\,i^{\frac{1}{2}}$. (iv.)

For riveted steel pipes the coefficient in (iii.) has been found to apply, whereas for wooden stave pipes the coefficient in the formula for v appears to be over 60.*

---

[*] Darcy, 'Mouvement de l'eau dans les Tuyaux,' p. 110—Paris, 1857.

For clean pipes the formulæ § 70 are to be preferred.

Experiments made by Mr. J. Leslie † on a cast-iron main 15 inches in diameter, at Edinburgh, which had been laid for 30 years and was much rusted, gave a coefficient of 43 for Darcy's formula (iv.) above. With a 16-inch pipe, which had been laid 9 years, and was less fouled, the experiments gave, in three different lengths at different hydraulic gradients coefficients 50, 48 and 50 respectively in the same formula (iv.).

It may be useful to observe that the loss of head h due to frictional resistance to the flow of a quantity of water Q, through a length l of pipe of diameter d, deduced from the equations (iii.) and (iv.) is

$$h = \frac{l\,Q^2}{1850\,d^5}, \text{ from clean iron pipes,}$$

and

$$h = \frac{l\,Q^2}{900\,d^5}, \text{ for rusted iron pipes.}$$

73. By the formulæ discussed in §§ 66–68, the flow in artificial channels of definite geometrical form and composed of particular materials, may be measured with a high degree of accuracy; but the considerations adduced show that for natural channels in earth and in rock, a good deal of uncertainty attaches to the calculations of flow from the data afforded by their dimensions, the surface-inclination and the roughness. This is principally owing to the difficulty of making proper choice of a coefficient suitable to the dimensions, inclination and roughness of the channel in question. Hence, in the case of streams and rivers, where highly accurate results are required, recourse must be had to other methods of gauging.

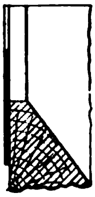
---

* Trans. Am. Soc. C.E., April 1896, p. 201.

† Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xiv. pp. 273 *et seq.*

74. The dry-weather flow of a stream draining an area of, say 20,000 acres, is much less than its rate of flood-discharge. In barren mountainous countries, the former may be as low as $\frac{1}{10}$ cubic foot per second per 1000 acres; while the latter may occasionlly amount to 1000 or even 2000 times the dry-weather flow. The methods of gauging employed in such a case must therefore be adapted to deal with the different states of the flow.

Fig. 7.



The dry-weather flow of small streams, and those of larger size when there is no traffic and a suitable fall exists in their beds, may be accurately measured by causing the water to pass over a notch-gauge. This apparatus, a cross-section of which is given in *Fig.* 7, consists essentially of a wide slot or depression in the upper edge of a vertical plate or board, placed across the stream, normally to its axis. The maximum quantity that can be measured by a notch, depends upon its length and the fall that can be obtained for the water from its up-stream to its down-stream side. On the up-stream side, to prevent the water from approaching the notch with sensible velocity, it is desirable that the channel should be wider and deeper than the notch; so that the body of water above it may be practically quiescent. If the area of the water, as it passes through the notch, be more than one-fifth part of the area of the channel of approach, the velocity of approach must be taken into account in calculating the discharge over the notch. To avoid sensible velocity of approach, the depth of water below the sill of the notch on the up-stream side should be at least three times the depth of water flowing over the notch; and the sides of the approach-channel should be distant a like amount from the ends of the notch. By a notch 20 feet long, when a fall of 1 foot in the bed of the stream can be secured, a flow of 20,000,000 gallons per day may be conveniently measured. Larger quantities than this may be gauged by notches; though for such considerable flows it is generally desirable to resort to current-metre observations, or to the method of gauging by float measurements.

To construct a notch-gauge, a water-tight weir is first made across the stream, and in this is set a frame of wood or metal, on the up-stream side of which are attached thin metal plates, forming the edges of the gauge. The latter need not be bevilled on the down-stream side, if they present a square ¼-inch edge in the vertical plane. In the common rectangular notch-gauge, three plates are used —one of them forming the sill and the others the vertical ends of the notch. The sill is fixed level, and its length must be accurately known. The notch may be provided with movable sides, in order that its width may be reduced when the flow is small; as it is undesirable that the height of water over it should be less than about 4 inches. The level of the water on the down-stream side must be sufficiently below the sill—not less than one-half the maximum depth of water flowing over it—to allow free access of atmospheric air under the discharging stream.

75. Since the resultant flow in each vertical strip of the notch is

$$dl \int_0^H \sqrt{2gh}\, dh,$$

where l is the length of the notch in feet,

h the height in feet from any horizontal filament to the free level of the water above the sill,

and H the height in feet of the free level of the discharging water above the sill,

i.e. integrated, $$\frac{2dl}{3} \sqrt{2g} H^{\frac{3}{2}};$$

the discharge Q, in cubic feet per second over the notch, if there was no interference by the ends (termed end-contraction), and the edge of the sill with the free flow of the water under the action of gravity, would be given by

$$Q = \frac{2}{3} l \sqrt{2g}\, H^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

Owing, however, to the interference referred to, a coefficient c has to be introduced into the expression. This coefficient is not constant, but varies with different values of l and H. The formula then becomes

$$Q = \frac{2}{3} c\, l \sqrt{2g}\, H^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

When only a small quantity of water is passing, the stream has a tendency to flow down the face of the plate without allowing free circulation of air on the lower side, and the formula ceases to apply.

To obtain the value of c has been the object of numerous experimenters, among whom may be mentioned Blackwell,[*] Francis,[†] Fteley and Stearns,[‡] Hamilton Smith,[§] Du Buat,[‖] Bidone,[¶] Poncelet and Lesbros,[**] Castel,[††] Boileau,[‡‡] Eytelwein[§§] and Weisbach.[‖‖]

Most of the experiments agree in two particulars:

---

[*] Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. x. p. 331.

[†] Francis, 'Lowell Hydraulic Experiments'—New York, 1883.

[‡] Transactions American Soc. C.E., 1883, pp. 52 *et seq.*

[§] Hamilton Smith, 'Hydraulics'—London and New York, 1886.

[‖] Du Buat, 'Principes d'Hydraulique et de Pyrodynamique'—Paris, 1816.

[¶] Bidone, 'Expériences sur la dépense des réservoirs'—Turin, 1824.

[**] Poncelet and Lesbros, 'Expériences Hydrauliques'—Paris, 1832; Lesbros, 'Hydraulique Expérimentale'—Paris, 1849.

[††] Mémoires de l'Académie des Sciences de Toulouse, tome iv. p. 238, 1837; and D'Aubuisson de Voisins, 'Traité d'Hydraulique'—Paris and Strasburg, 1840.

[‡‡] Boileau, 'Traité de la Mesure des eaux courantes'—Paris, 1854.

[§§] Abhandlungen der Berliner Akademie, 1814-15 and 1818-19.

[‖‖] Weisbach, 'Versuche über den Ausfluss des Wassers'—Leipsic, 1824.

(1) as the head h becomes less than about 3 inches, the coefficient c experiences a rapid increase; and (2) with values of h between 3 inches and about 2 feet, the coefficient is fairly constant. Between these limits, and with a notch longer than 2 feet, in order that the end-contractions may not interfere with each other, Mr. J. B. Francis* proposed a formula which agrees closely with a careful series of experiments carried out by him, and is extensively used in hydraulic practice. This formula, for discharge from a still pond, is

$$Q = 3{\cdot}33\,(l - 0{\cdot}1\,n\,H)\,H^{\frac{3}{2}};$$

where n is the number of end-contractions; i.e. in an ordinary rectangular notch, $n = 2$. Here c is taken equal to 0·622, and the effective length of the notch is reduced by 0·2 H so as to allow for the reduction in the discharge due to the influence of the end-contractions. The experiments, from the result of which this formula is derived, were made on a 10-foot rectangular notch, with head varying between 1·6 foot and 0·6 foot, in which range the coefficient varied less than 1 per cent. In practical application, the measurement of the height of the free level of the water above the sill of the notch must be made at a point far enough away from it to be unaffected by surface-curvature.

76. The following experiments made by us in 1885, by causing the same quantity of water to pass first over a rectangular notch 8 feet long and afterwards over one 17·02 feet long, show the divergence of Francis' formula from the truth as the head falls below 3 inches.

It will be seen that, whilst the highest three readings agree within 1½ per cent., the two lowest differ by more than 5 and 9 per cent. respectively.

---

* Francis, 'Lowell Hydraulic Experiments,' p. 119—New York, 1883.

NOTCH 8 FEET LONG.		NOTCH 17·02 FEET LONG.	
Head over sill.	Discharge according to Francis' formula.	Head over sill.	Discharge according to Francis' formula.
Inches.	Cubic feet per second.	Inches.	Cubic feet per second.
1·36	1·01	0·77	0·92
3·45	4·09	2·00	3·86
5·12	7·38	3·03	7·27
6·46	10·36	3·82	10·20
6·99	11·68	4·15	11·62

The range of temperature occurring in ordinary practice does not appreciably affect the results of notch-gauging.

Formulæ more accurate than that of Francis, for small depths of water over the notch, have been proposed by a number of experimenters, the valuable work of Messrs. A. Fteley and F. P. Stearns demanding special notice.

For rough comparative calculations, the formula for a rectangular over-fall notch may be put into the form

$$Q = \frac{10}{3} l H \sqrt{H},$$

the value of Q being in cubic feet per second and l and H being in feet; or

$$Q' = \frac{l h \sqrt{h}}{2},$$

where the value of Q' is in gallons per second, h is in inches and l is in feet.

It is worth remembering that the number of cubic feet per minute multiplied by 9000 gives an equivalent in gallons per 24 hours.

77. It has always been the endeavour of experimenters to realise the condition of water being discharged over notches from a state of perfect stillness; and it is desirable that this should be approximated to in all notch-gauging in actual practice, although circumstances sometimes prevent it. When the area of the stream is so small in relation to

that of the notch that the velocity of the approaching water becomes sensible, it may be allowed for in the following manner. Call the velocity of approach u, and let h_0 be the head due to that velocity. Then

$$h_0 = \frac{u^2}{2g}.$$

If the velocity of approach were uniform over the area of the notch, the head at each horizontal lamina of water discharged by it would be increased by that amount. Consequently, the discharge would be equivalent to that from a still pond with the head of $H + h_0$ above the sill, less the discharge due to the head h_0; i.e. modifying Francis' formula,

$$Q = 3{\cdot}33\,(l - 0{\cdot}2\,H)\,[(H + h_0)^{\frac{3}{2}} - h_0^{\frac{3}{2}}].$$

The uniformity of the velocity of approach, over the area of the notch, naturally depends upon the shape of the approach channel. Thus, from a series of experiments made in 1877, Messrs. Fteley and Stearns concluded that h_0 equalled $b\,\frac{u^2}{2g}$, where b varied between 1·33 and 1·87.* For most forms of channel of approach, the latter value would, however, be too high.

Where it happens that the fall in a stream is too slight for an ordinary over-fall notch to be conveniently used, it is sometimes useful to be able to obtain a measurement of the discharge of the stream by means of a "drowned" notch—that is, a notch that so far constricts the stream as to produce a sensible difference of water-level between its upper and lower sides, but in which the water on the downstream side is above the level of the sill.

In this case, the discharge Q is approximately

$$\frac{13}{4}\,l\left(h + \frac{3}{2}\,h'\right)\sqrt{h};$$

---

* Transactions American Soc. C.E., 1883, p. 12.

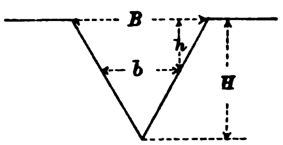
where h is the difference between the water-levels above and below the notch, and h' is the height of the water-surface on the down-stream side above the sill.

It is frequently desirable to measure roughly the discharge of a stream over a broad-crested weir. From experiments on weirs with crests varying between 2 inches and 10 inches in breadth, it appears that the discharge for heights less than 1·6 times the breadth of the sill is less than for a sharp-edged sill; when that height is reached, it commences to be greater than for the sharp-edged weir.*

For a weir 10 feet long and about 3 feet broad across the sill, the formula, for heads varying between 7 inches and 20 inches, given by Mr. J. B. Francis,† is

$$Q = 3{\cdot}01\, l\, H^{1{\cdot}53}.$$

Fig. 8.



78. For gauging streams of small and varying discharge, a triangular or V-notch is most suitable.

The discharge for any lamina $b\,d\,h$, *Fig. 8*, is

$$b\,d\,h\sqrt{2gh};$$

b being the breadth at any depth h, B the top breadth, and H the total depth of flow, the dimensions being in feet.

Therefore, the discharge of the notch is

$$\int_0^H b\sqrt{2gh}\,dh$$

$$= \frac{B}{H}\int_0^H \left(H - h\right)\sqrt{2gh}\,.\,dh$$

$$= \frac{4}{15} B \sqrt{2gH^3}.$$

---

* Transactions American Soc. C.E., 1883, pp. 86 *et seq.* For flow over broad-crested weirs, see H. Bazin, Annales des Ponts et Chaussées, 1888, 1890, 1891, 1894, 1896 and 1898.

† 'Lowell Hydraulic Experiments,' p. 136.

Allowing for end-contractions, the formula becomes

$$Q = c\,\frac{4}{15}\,B\,\sqrt{2\,g\,H^3}.$$

In a right-angled notch, $B = 2\,H$, and

$$Q = c\,\frac{8}{15}\,\sqrt{2\,g}\,H^{\frac{5}{2}}; \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

and in a notch in which $B = 4\,H$,

$$Q = c\,\frac{16}{15}\,\sqrt{2\,g}\,H^{\frac{5}{2}}. \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

As the flow is always similar at whatever height the water is discharged through the notch, the coefficient c is much more constant than is the case with the rectangular form. For a right-angled notch with sharp edges, c, as determined by the late Dr. James Thomson, is $0 \cdot 59$; and for a notch in which $B = 4\,H$, c is $0 \cdot 62$.*

Hence equation (i.) may be written $Q = 2 \cdot 54\,H^{\frac{5}{2}}$;
and (ii.) „ „ $Q = 5 \cdot 30\,H^{\frac{5}{2}}$.

79. When it is desired to have a continuous record of the discharge of a notch, a float-gauge is erected—generally in an easily accessible situation on the bank of the approach-channel. An inverted siphon-pipe communicates from the still-water pond to the vertical cylinder in which the float works. A wire from the float is attached to a pen or pencil, which records on a drum, rotated uniformly by clockwork, the varying height of the water-surface in the still pond, above the sill of the notch.

In case it is inconvenient to construct a weir so that it may have free end-contractions, it may be made the full width of a rectangular channel, having its crest well above the bed of the channel and sharp-edged, with the vertical face upstream. Free access of air must be allowed on the downstream side of the weir plate under the discharging water as in the previous case. Bazin has put the formula for discharge over such a weir in the following shape, using the same notation as before, and H_0 being the height of the crest of the weir above the bed of the channel :—

---

* British Assoc. Report, 1861—Reports on the State of Science, p. 151.

$$Q = \frac{2}{3} c \left[1 + x \left(\frac{H}{H + H_0} \right)^2 \right] l H \sqrt{2 g H} ;$$

c and x are coefficients and are nearly constant.

80. When the flow to be measured is not great, and plenty of fall is available, gauging by orifices is often both convenient and accurate. A rectangular orifice is the form generally used in gauging ; except for very small quantities of water, when circular orifices are sometimes employed. The discharge, in cubic feet per second from a rectangular orifice in a thin plate, is expressed by the formula

$$Q = c l \frac{2}{3} \sqrt{2 g} (h_2^{\frac{3}{2}} - h_1^{\frac{3}{2}}),$$

where l is the length of the slot or orifice in feet ;

h_2 is the height in feet of the surface of water above its lower edge ;

h_1 is the height in feet of the surface of water above its upper edge ;

and c is a coefficient.

For simplicity, it is often expressed in the form

$$Q = c l d \sqrt{2 g h},$$

where d is the depth of the orifice in feet, l its length, and h is the height in feet of the surface of the water in the still pond, above the centre of the orifice.

The following table gives the values of c for different dimensions of length and depth, abstracted from the results of numerous experimenters, including Michelotti,* Bossut,† Poncelet and Lesbros, and Hamilton Smith.

---

* Michelotti, 'Sperimenti Idraulici'—Turin, 1767.

† Bossut, 'Traité théorique et expérimental d'Hydrodynamique'—Paris, 1796.

TABLE OF COEFFICIENTS OF DISCHARGE FOR ORIFICES IN THE FORMULA $Q = c l d \sqrt{2gh}$.

Head over centre of orifice.	l=2 ft. d=1 ft.	l=2 ft. d=6 in.	l=1 ft. d=1 ft.	l=1 ft. d=6 in.	l=1 ft. d=3 in.	l=9 in. d=9 in.	l=6 in. d=6 in.	l=3 in. d=3 in.
feet.	c.	c.	c.	c.	c.	c.	c.	c.
0·5	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·61	0·63	0·60	0·60	0·60
1	0·60	0·62	0·60	0·62	0·63	0·60	0·60	0·60
2	0·60	0·62	0·60	0·62	0·63	0·60	0·60	0·60
3	0·60	0·62	0·60	0·62	0·63	0·60	0·60	0·60
4	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·61	0·62	0·60	0·60	0·60
5	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·61	0·62	0·60	0·60	0·60
6	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·61	0·62	0·60	0·60	0·60
7	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·61	0·61	0·60	0·60	0·60
8	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·60	0·60
9	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60
10	0·60	0·61	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60
20	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60	0·60

As an application of these formulæ, it is sometimes requisite to calculate the time occupied by a tank or reservoir in emptying through an outlet at the bottom.

Suppose the tank to be of any given form of cross-section, and call its area at any level, A. Let d be the initial height of the water-surface above the outlet, h its height after emptying for any time t, a the area of the outlet, and c the coefficient of discharge.

The discharge through the outlet in any small period of time dt is $c a \sqrt{2gh} \,.\, dt$.

The volume of the tank emptied in the same time is $A\,dh$.

Therefore $$c a \sqrt{2gh}\, dt = A\, dh\,; \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

or $$dt = \frac{A}{ca} \cdot \frac{dh}{\sqrt{2gh}}.$$

For a vertical cylindrical tank, the time of emptying is, by integration, found to be

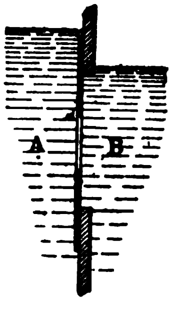
$$\frac{2A}{ca}\sqrt{\frac{h}{2g}}.$$

For any other form of tank, A is expressed as a function of h, and the equation is integrated as above.

An interesting application of equation (i.) is to find the shape of the vase of the ancient clepsydra, or water-clock. In this case $\frac{dh}{dt}$ is constant; therefore A the area at any height h above the outlet $\propto \sqrt{h}$.

81. For a completely submerged orifice 2 feet long, 6 inches deep, and ¼ inch broad, with a difference of water-level between the two sides from ¼ foot to ¾ foot, we found in a careful series of experiments, made in 1887, that the coefficient c in the formula $Q = cld\sqrt{2gh}$ is $0{\cdot}67$; h being the difference in level of the water-surfaces on the upper A and lower B sides of the orifice, expressed in feet (*Fig. 9*).

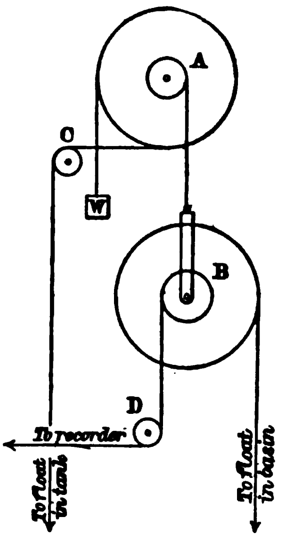
Fig. 9.



The submerged orifice is important and frequently very convenient, because any variation in the level of the water on the supply side, A, *Fig. 9*, need not affect the discharge, if such variation is also caused to occur on the efflux side B.

The following method of automatically recording the "head," or difference of water-level on the supply and efflux sides of such an orifice, was devised in connection with the experiments last referred to. The apparatus consists of two floats, immersed in the water at the upper and lower sides respectively of the orifice. The relative motion of the float is reduced to one-third for a differential recording-gauge which is of the revolving disk form. The recording-pencil is actuated solely by the relative water-levels on the two sides of the orifice, without reference to the actual water-levels. The arrangement of pulleys to effect this is shown in *Fig. 10*. The diameters of the double pulley A, which turns on a fixed axle, are 4 to 1; those of the double pulley B, which turns on an axle suspended from A, are 3 to 1. C and D are fixed guiding-pulleys. W is a weight hung on the end of the continuous cord which passes from the upper float round C and A.*

Fig. 10.



82. With small circular orifices, having a free discharge, Mr. J. G. Mair-Rumley has ascertained that with sharp and square edges, and for diameters varying between 1 inch and 3 inches, the coefficient of discharge equals 0·61 within 1 per cent. for heads from 9 inches to 24 inches, at temperatures between 51° F. and 55° F. To show the effect of the temperature upon the discharge, the experiments summarised in the following table were also made by him: †

SHARP-EDGED ORIFICE, 2½ INCHES IN DIAMETER.

Head.	Temperature.	Coefficient.
21 inches.	57° F.	0·604
,,	92° F.	0·604
,,	110° F.	0·604
,,	153·5° F.	0·607
,,	179° F.	0·607

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. c. p. 281.

† *Op. cit.*, vol. lxxxiv. p. 427.

These results show that a range of temperature of 122° F. only increases the discharge by $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

Again, from a series of experiments by Prof. W. C. Unwin on thin-edged orifices between the temperatures 61° F. and 205° F., the conclusion is drawn that this range of temperature has extremely little influence on the discharge.*

83. An accurate method of observing the height of the surface of water for all gauging purposes is afforded by the "hook-gauge." This apparatus consists of a rod, screwed at one end, and at the other pointed and turned up to form a hook. The hook is attached to a frame, and is capable of being moved longitudinally by means of a nut. A scale is fixed on the frame, and over it is a vernier connected with the screw, enabling the level of the water to be read off to $\frac{1}{1000}$ foot. The frame is fixed vertically, the hook being allowed to dip beneath the surface of the water. When it is desired to ascertain the level of the surface of the latter, the point of the hook is raised by means of the nut until it touches the water-surface from below, an operation which can be effected and observed with great nicety. The level of the sill of the gauge can be read on the scale by a straight-edge levelled upon the sill and the point of the hook.

The gauge is situated some distance away from the notch, so as to measure the level of the surface of the still pond behind it, and must be sheltered from the wind and its effects.

84. One of the most ancient applications of the science of measuring water in motion relates to gauging for irrigation purposes. The system employed for this object by the Moors before their expulsion from Spain, and still used there, affords interesting evidence of views held eight

---

* *Philosophical Magazine*, Fifth Series, vol. vi. p. 281.

centuries ago upon the subject of the division of a stream of water into fractional parts. By the plan referred to, the water is conducted along a level masonry channel, at a low velocity, and is caused to flow over a sill or step. At a distance of about 3 feet beyond this point it falls over another sill. In the intermediate space is fixed a small pier, which divides the breadth of the channel into two portions, the ratio of which is nearly proportional to the two subdivisions into which the water is to be separated, *Fig. 11.* The up-stream point of the pier consists of a cutwater movable horizontally, the point of which, when in a line with the pier, almost touches the first sill. By moving the cutwater, the stream of water flowing over the sill may be divided approximately in the same ratio as the cutwater divides the breadth of the channel.

Fig. 11.

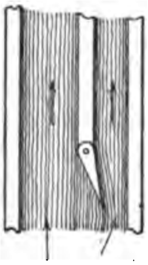
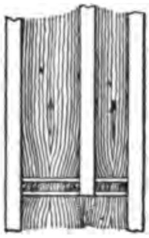


Fig. 12.



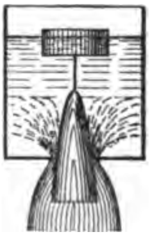
By another plan instead of a movable cutwater, each portion of the channel is arranged so as to be closed if desired by a number of vertical bars of wood, which fit in grooves formed in the sides and bottom of the channel and are held at the top by bars placed across it, *Fig. 12.* The division of the water between the two portions of the channel is effected in the desired ratio, by taking out of each of them a number of bars corresponding with the quantity of water to be passed down that portion.

The principal characteristics of a good "module," as a gauging apparatus for irrigation purposes is termed, are simplicity of the several parts, freedom from friction or causes of derangement, constant discharge under varying heads, exact measurement, and facility of inspection by all interested parties.

85. The "Milanese" module is one of the best known. Its leading principle is the discharge of water through an orifice under constant pressure. In this connection the established unit, termed the "oncia magistrale," is the quantity of water which flows freely into the atmosphere under the action of gravity through a rectangular orifice 4·11 inches long by 7·86 inches high, under a head of 3·95 inches measured above the upper edge of the orifice. The discharge is about 0·87 cubic foot per second. The water is admitted from the main canal, that supplies it into a chamber, which, according to law, should be 20 feet long, and is introduced to steady the flow of the water. The floor is sloped towards the orifice, which is formed in a slab of stone, the actual edge being frequently made of metal. It is the duty of a public official to prevent the water from rising above the regulation height over the orifice. Any multiple of the "oncia" is assumed to be obtained by proportionately increasing the length of the orifice, and this naturally leads to inaccuracy in favour of large consumers of water.

86. In the ingenious module devised by Juan de Ribera, water is admitted through a screen into a chamber on one side of the supply-canal. In the floor of the chamber is fixed a wrought-iron plate, pierced by a circular hole, in which a plug is suspended from a float, *Fig. 13*. As the water in the chamber rises or falls, the annular space through which the water passes round the plug is, owing to the shape of the latter, decreased or increased. The plug must be accurately formed in order to secure constant discharge with a varying head of water.

Fig. 13.



If R is the radius of the circular hole, r the radius of the plug at any point, when h is the height of water above the plate and Q is the discharge.

$$Q = c\pi(R^2 - r^2)\sqrt{2gh},$$

c being an experimentally determined coefficient;

therefore $$r = \sqrt{R^2 - \frac{Q}{c\pi\sqrt{2gh}}}.$$

If $c = 0{\cdot}61$, $$r = \sqrt{R^2 - \frac{Q}{15{\cdot}4\sqrt{h}}}.$$

The most serious drawbacks to the employment of this form of module lie in the loss of head entailed by it, and in the disturbance due to the deposition of mud on the floor of the chamber. By a modification of the arrangement, the plug is fixed so as to work horizontally, and the loss of head is thereby considerably reduced.

On many irrigation works the water is measured at its various discharging points by causing it to flow over notch-gauges—a method that causes but slight loss of head and ensures most accurate measurement. The water is admitted by sluices into chambers, out of which it passes through slits or grids, in order to steady its motion, into a second chamber, at the end of which the gauges are fixed.

87. When the flood-waters of streams are stored in reservoirs for purposes of supply, the fixed quantity of compensation-water sent down the stream (§ 34) is generally measured through orifices. A usual practice is to admit the water through sluices into a chamber, whence it is discharged through orifices at the opposite end. In order that those interested, who may not be skilled in hydraulics, may at any time convince themselves that the quantity agreed upon is passing through the compensation

orifices, a gauging-chamber of rectangular form is often provided below the level of the orifices. Into this chamber there is an opening situated immediately below the orifices, of such breadth that the jet of water issuing therefrom, under the head which gives the required discharge, leaps clear across it. To find this breadth, b, assume that the water issuing from the bottom of the orifices, describes the parabola due to its mean velocity.

This velocity is.

$$c\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2g}\,\frac{h_2^{\frac{3}{2}} - h_1^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h_2 - h_1};$$

h_2 being the height from the water-surface to the lower edge of the orifice;

h_1 being the height from the water-surface to the upper edge of the orifice;

and c being an experimentally determined coefficient.

If d is the depth of the opening below the lower edge of the orifice, and t is the time occupied by the water in falling through that depth,

$$d = \frac{1}{2} g t^2,$$

therefore

$$b = c\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2g}\,\frac{h_2^{\frac{3}{2}} - h_1^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h_2 - h_1} \,.\, t$$

$$= \frac{4}{3} c \frac{h_2^{\frac{3}{2}} - h_1^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h_2 - h_1} \cdot \sqrt{d}.$$

By means of a shutter, the jet of water issuing from the orifice may be diverted instantaneously into the chamber when it is desired to measure the quantity passing through the orifice; and after allowing the water to flow into the chamber for a given time, it may be instantaneously restored to its former course. Thus the quantity discharged by the orifice in a given time can be directly measured with great accuracy.

88. It is a common practice to estimate the rate of pumping water by multiplying the capacity of the pump-barrel by the number of strokes per unit of time, and then to make a deduction of 2 to 5 per cent., assessed according to individual judgment, from the quantity. This method can only be regarded as affording a rough approximation to the truth. With a long suction-pipe and a short delivery, it may happen that a greater quantity of water passes through the pump at each stroke than is due to its capacity—owing to the momentum of the water in the suction-pipe causing both valves to be open together momentarily. With a long delivery it usually happens that some water passes back through the valves before they close; and consequently the delivery at each stroke is less than the capacity of the pump-barrel, by an amount that varies in different cases, and is termed the slip.

89. We proceed to consider certain methods of gauging flows of large amount, when permanent apparatus of the kind hitherto described is inapplicable. The principle involved is that of ascertaining the average velocity of the stream from a measurement of the velocity at suitably chosen points, and establishing a relation between this velocity and the variable level of the surface of the stream.

The most accurate measurement according to this process is obtained by observation of the velocity of the flow by current-meters. A narrow stream may be spanned by a bridge from which current-meter observations are conveniently made. In this case, the meter is fixed upon a staff that is moved vertically and horizontally along the bridge, and so attached to the latter as to maintain the current-meter parallel to the axis of the stream at every point of observation. In a broader stream, or when traffic must be provided for, high poles may be fixed on either bank, and a strong wire attached to the top of each tightly stretched across the river. A small carriage travels on this wire, and can be moved to any position upon it, by means of a continuous cord attached to the carriage and passing over pulleys on the poles. By winding this cord on drums of known diameters, the distance of the carriage from each bank of the river can easily be arrived at. A second cord passes over a pulley on one of the poles and over another one of the travelling carriage, and to it is attached the frame which carries the current-meter, so designed as to maintain the axis of the meter, parallel to the line of the current. By means of a guiding-wire controlling the frame and steadied by a heavy anchor, the current-meter can be maintained in any desired vertical. If there are circumstances to prevent the adoption of either of these expedients, the frame to which the current-meter is attached may be fixed in front of a boat, or between two boats; and its position, for any observation, may be fixed by observations with a theodolite on the bank, or measured by chains or wires. The section of the stream at the point in question, which should be in a straight reach, must be accurately ascertained by sounding or by levelling. In the first case mentioned this is readily done from the bridge; in the second case, by a sounding-wire passing over one of the pulleys of the travelling carriage; and in the third case, by sounding from a boat—the position of the latter at each sounding being accurately ascertained by ranging the boat in the line of section from the bank and fixing its position by angular observations.

90. A current-meter consists essentially of a revolving fan shaped like a ship's propeller, about six inches in diameter, furnished with means of counting the number of its revolutions when free to revolve in the current. Current-meters may be divided into two classes: (1) those which contain mechanism for counting the revolutions of

the fan and have to be taken out of the water for each reading; and (2) those which indicate at the surface, by electrical contact, each revolution or a given number of revolutions. In the latter kind, the time between certain of the signals is observed, and the rate of revolution of the fan of the meter is thus arrived at.

Of class 1, the Revy, Woltmann and Moore meters are examples. In these the fan is provided with a mechanical counter which indicates the number of revolutions made by it, and with means of throwing the counter into and out of gear. A rudder is attached to the tail of the meter in order to keep the fan facing the current. Owing to the Revy and Woltmann meters being placed in position on rods, a considerable time is lost in lowering and raising them for reading, in order to take observations at different depths. This delay allows time for the level of the water to change; consequently, the observations are not always taken under the same conditions. Owing to the method of suspension by a cord or chain, adopted in the Moore meter, it is much quicker in action. The chain is attached to a stirrup which carries bearings for a spindle whose line intersects the centre of gravity of the instrument, and is at right angles to it.

91. The Harlacher and Deacon current-meters are examples of class 2. From a water-tight case a spindle, carrying the fan at its extremity, projects through a well-made bush. A worm on the spindle, inside the case, turns a small spur-wheel; and at every revolution contact is made between the latter and an insulated conducting strip to which an electrical wire is attached. Another wire is attached to the case of the instrument, and both are in circuit with a primary battery and an electrical indicator at the observing-station. The indicator signals each time that contact is made. This may be caused to occur at

any number of revolutions of the fan, by suitable arrangement of the pitch of the worm and the number of teeth in the spur-wheel. By observing the time that elapses between successive signals, the rate of revolution of the fan is ascertained. The case is filled with paraffin or other mineral oil, to ensure constant friction and to improve the electrical insulation. Before use, the meter is accurately rated by moving it through still water at known velocities, the rate of its motion relatively to the water being ascertained for a number of different speeds; from which data a curve is plotted, giving the velocity of the current for all rates of revolution of the fan within the range of the observations. Many of the formulæ proposed for the calculation of these data give results near the truth; but the most satisfactory method of rating current-meters for practical work, is that described.

All the parts of current-meters should be made of non-corrosive metal, so that the friction may not vary, by the rusting of the parts.

92. In the current-meter invented by Prof. A. R. Harlacher,* instead of signalling by an electro-magnet, an electrically controlled counter may be put in circuit with the wires from the meter. This meter is constructed so that the mean velocity in a vertical section of the stream may be obtained at one observation. With this object, the small water-tight horizontal cylinder, from which the shaft of the fan projects, is screwed to a sleeve that slides on a hollow cast-iron rod, being counter-balanced by a rudder to preserve the direction of the meter. To reduce friction in sliding, friction wheels are fixed within the sleeve bearing against the rod. The latter has a solid point at the bottom and is slotted up one side; it is firmly planted

---

* Harlacher, 'Die Messungen in der Elbe und Donau und die Hydrometrischen Apparate und Methoden des Verfassers'—Leipsic, 1881.

in the bed of the river, in the vertical section of which the mean velocity is required. An arm from the meter passes through the slot to the inside of the rod, and to a point on this arm a woven copper wire is attached, by which the meter may be raised or lowered. The drum on which the wire is wound is attached to the vertical rod. The axis of the drum is geared to a train of clockwork, the movement of which is controlled by a fan. The meter is allowed to fall from a short distance above the surface of the water, and the counter is read and the time noted at the instant it touches the surface. The meter descends uniformly down the rod, and the time at which it reaches the bottom of the stream is also noted and the counter is again read. From the data thus obtained, the mean velocity in that vertical section is ascertained by repeated trials. For practical use, the battery, the electrical indicator and the rod carrying the meter are placed on a float, which in large rivers is anchored, and in small rivers is fastened by guy-ropes and poles. By slackening the rope on one side and tightening on the other, the float is brought into a new position. The rod is then ranged in a line by a person on the bank, and observations in successive verticals may be thus taken.

93. In a modification of the Harlacher current-meter, a worm on the screw-spindle gears into a small toothed wheel, which makes one revolution for every hundred revolutions of the screw. At every revolution of this wheel, electrical contact is made, by which a signal is given to an observer by the exposure of a coloured disk.

The Deacon current-meter is practically of this form. The electro-magnet rings a bell at the observing-station, and may be geared so as to ring at every revolution or at every twenty revolutions, as desired. This meter is not designed to give the mean velocity in a vertical at one operation.

94. The proximity of the verticals in the cross-section of a stream at which observations should be taken, depends on the limit of accuracy desired. For a stream, say 200 feet wide, observations might well be taken every 10 feet apart, horizontally, and at every 1 or 2 feet vertically from the surface, according to the depth—unless the mean velocity in each vertical is measured at one operation. The fan of the meter must always be submerged when taking an observation. In large rivers, like the Mississippi, the eddies are proportionally greater than those in smaller rivers, consequently it is necessary to let the current-meter fan run for a longer time to get a true mean velocity at any point. During the progress of current-meter observations, the level of the surface of the water is frequently read on graduated staffs placed at both banks of the stream.

The mean velocity in each vertical line is arrived at, either directly or by plotting the vertical curves at each position and finding their area, if separate observations are taken at different depths. The mean velocity in the whole cross-section is found by plotting the mean vertical velocity at each point of observation, finding the area of the curve thus formed and dividing it by the breadth of the stream. This mean velocity is referred to the water-level corresponding with the time of the observations. The areas of the curves may be accurately found by the planimeter, or may be calculated by the aid of Simpson's rule.

A series of observations being made at a certain section of the stream, corresponding with surface-levels from the lowest dry-weather flow to the highest flood, a curve may be plotted giving the rate of discharge at the various levels assumed by the surface of the river. By means of the record afforded by an automatic float-gauge, registering continuously the varying level of the river, a complete statement of the flow may be derived from the curve of discharge thus constructed.

The variation of velocity measured at points in any vertical, may be more than 25 per cent. from the average velocity in the course of a few seconds. Hence the necessity for allowing current meters to run for some considerable time during the course of every observation, so as to obtain the average motion.

95. It frequently happens that, owing to the presence of silt or floating weeds, or to other considerations, current-meters cannot be advantageously employed for gauging the flow of streams. The most serviceable method in such cases is to observe the run of submerged or nearly submerged floats over a measured course of the stream unaffected by wind. Such floats may be disks, as "surface-floats"; or rods weighted so as to float vertically in the water; or a combination of the surface-float with a sub-surface ball attached to the former by a cord or light chain. The results given by the use of a double float are vitiated chiefly by three causes: (1) The surface-water generally moves either at a greater or less rate than the sub-surface weight; consequently the course of the latter is situated at a less depth than the length of the connecting cord would indicate. (2) The same reason causes the sub-surface float to travel at either a greater or less rate than the water surrounding it. (3) The velocity of the lower float is affected by the action of the current on the connecting cord. It results that the efficiency of sub-surface floats decreases with the depth, and the mean velocity past a vertical, as indicated by it, is greater or less than its true value, according as the surface velocity is greater or less than the mean.

Instead of the surface-float, a second ball, weighted to float just below the surface, may be employed. The velocity v, measured by this twin float, is the mean of the surface-velocity v_s and the velocity v_d at the depth of the sub-surface float. As the two former can be observed, the latter is obtained from the equation

$$v = 2v - v_s.$$

For surface-floats, disks of wood loaded to float almost submerged, provided with a stem to mark their position, may be employed. But of all kinds in use, the "rod-float" is the most effective and reliable. The form of this float, extensively used by us, consists of a light wooden rod, weighted at one end by a small lead ring (cut off a piece of gas-pipe) and provided at the top with a cork float, through which it is thrust a few inches. These floats are simple and inexpensive, and if care be taken that they reach nearly to the bottom of the stream, and acquire a steady velocity before their actual "course" is observed, a close approximation to the mean vertical velocity may be obtained by their use. Colonel A. Cunningham has estimated that a rod-float 0·94 of the depth of the stream gives the true mean velocity past a given vertical; and, making allowances for the inaccuracies of double floats, his experiments on the Ganges canal confirm this view.* The rod-float presents a ready means of arriving at the average rate of flow of a stream, by numerous observations at points close together in the cross-section.

96. When a stream is not too deep, and its velocity is not very small, Darcy's modification of the Pitot tube is sometimes employed for its measurement. The original tube of Pitot consisted simply of a vertical glass tube with a right-angled bend at the bottom presenting the mouth of the tube normally to the direction of flow. By making the mouth small, the velocity of flow is not inter-

---

* 'Roorkee Hydraulic Experiments,' p. 246—Roorkee, 1881.

fered with; and the height h, to which the water rises in the tube, is that due to the impact of the water moving with the velocity v of the stream.

That is, $$h = \frac{v^2}{2g}.$$

The chief difficulty affecting the use of Pitot's tube in its simplest form, arises from the inconvenience of reading it near to the surface of the water. This objection is removed in the Darcy instrument, which consists essentially of two Pitot tubes, fixed in planes at right-angles to one another, united at the top. and connected with a small flexible pipe, provided with a cock. The apparatus is clamped to a vertical rod, and is placed in the stream so that the mouth of one of the tubes faces the current, and that of the other is at right angles to it. The difference in height of the water in the two tubes is therefore a measure of the velocity of the stream at that point. To facilitate the reading of this difference, a little air is exhausted from the tubes through the flexible pipe, and the cock is closed. This causes the level of the water in both tubes to rise proportionally to the reduced pressure, but the difference of level remains constant. Owing to the fluctuation in the velocity at all parts of streams, several measurements must always be made with the instrument at each point of observation—the average of these being taken as the true mean velocity. This instrument, however, is not applicable to very small velocities of flow, nor can it be used in deep channels.

97. The hydrodynamometer introduced by M. Perrodil indicates the velocity of a current by measuring the torsion of a wire, produced by the impact of the stream against a submerged vane.* The instrument, like the Darcy tube, does not require a time observation, and it need only be read

---

* Annales des Ponts et Chaussées, 1877, p. 467, and 1883, p. 11.

once at each point—the average torsion of the wire being of course taken ; but its use is fraught with some practical disadvantages which preclude its general employment.

98. Observations have shown that, in any vertical line in a stream, the maximum velocity may be situated at the surface, or, as is generally the case, somewhat below that level, down to $\frac{3}{10}$ths of the depth ; but the mean velocity is with little variation situated at $\frac{3}{5}$ths of the depth.*

The curve of velocity in a vertical may be approximately represented by a parabola, of which the axis is situated horizontally at the position of maximum velocity. The curve, however, falls actually inside the parabolic curve near the surface and near the bed of the stream. The effect of wind blowing down stream is to raise the position of maximum velocity, and *vice versâ*.

In any cross-section, the mean velocity in a vertical plane generally attains a maximum value near to the middle ; but its exact position is governed by the shape of the stream and the contour of its bed at and near to that section. The variation in the magnitude of the surface-velocity in a cross-section follows, to some extent, that of the mean velocity. The fact of the surface-velocity in a stream being generally less than the maximum velocity, has been explained by the late Dr. James Thomson to be due partly to the friction of the atmosphere, but especially to the eddying motion of the water—that from the bottom being constantly moved towards the surface, where its upward motion is necessarily stopped.† It consequently tends to remain there longer than at other points in the vertical.

99. In finding roughly the discharge of streams, the three following propositions, established from a large number of experiments on various rivers and streams, may be usefully noticed.

---

* Wagner, 'Hydrologische Untersuchungen,' p. 37—Brunswick, 1881.

† Proc. Roy. Soc., vol. xxviii. p. 114.

(1) To determine the mean velocity in a cross-section, from observation of the maximum surface-velocity—Prof. von Wagner has proposed, as the results of experiments on twenty-four large and small streams, the formula[*]

$$v = 0{\cdot}705\, v_c + 0{\cdot}003\, v_c^2;$$

where v_c is the maximum surface-velocity in feet per second, and v mean velocity of the entire cross-section.

(2) To find the mean velocity from observation of mean velocities in equidistant verticals—since the mean velocity in every vertical line is found approximately at ⅗ths of the depth, the velocity at this depth may be measured by one of the methods described, at a number of equidistant points across the stream; and the mean velocity of the entire cross-section may be deduced from them.

(3) To determine the mean velocity from an observation of two velocities in each one of a number of equidistant verticals,—

Colonel A. Cunningham found, from the experiments previously alluded to, the mean velocity in a vertical line to be given by the formula[†]

$$u = \frac{1}{2}(v_{0\cdot211H} + v_{0\cdot789\cdot H});$$

where u is the mean velocity in a vertical, and $v_{0\cdot211H}$ and $v_{0\cdot789H}$ are the velocities at $0{\cdot}211$ and $0{\cdot}789$ of the depth below the surface. By means of double floats at these two points, attached to a surface-float, the mean of these two velocities may be found by a single observation.

100. The flow of water through pipes, whether they be mains for town supply, or distributing- or service-pipes supplying districts or individual consumers, is gauged by

---

[*] *Deutsche Bauzeitung*, No. 82, 1882, p. 480.

[†] Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxi. p. 18.

being caused to pass through some form of water-meter. These instruments may be classed as "positive" and "inferential" meters.

The former measure by displacement, the water being caused to flow into and out of chambers of known capacity; and the number of times that each chamber is filled is mechanically counted and recorded by automatic gear. In the latter class, the water impinges against vanes or disks, and the velocity of its motion is indirectly measured either by its effect in turning a small turbine or water-wheel, the revolutions of which are mechanically counted, or by its momentum being used to compress a spring, or to move a balanced disk into such a varying position that the pressure against it is constant whatever be the velocity of the impinging water. In the last mentioned case, the position of the disk at any moment approximately indicates the velocity of the water.

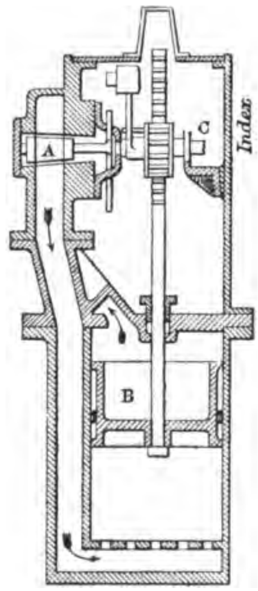
101. The essential characteristics of a perfect water-meter are: (1) accurate registration of the quantity of water passing through it, whether large or amall; (2) ability to perform its work without causing a material loss of head in the supply-pipe; (3) cheapness and simplicity; (4) ease of attachment and repair; (5) freedom from excessive wear of the working parts.

The entire apparatus must be made of such materials that corrosion will not interfere with its working. It must not give rise to concussion in the supply pipe, must never stop the supply, and should occupy but little space. It is difficult to obtain a meter that complies with all these conditions but it generally happens that some of them are, in particular cases, of less importance than the others; and a meter may generally be chosen suitable to the circumstances under which it is to be employed. Positive meters may be reciprocating in action or they may be rotary.

102. Among the first mentioned type, the Duncan, Kennedy, Frost, Schönheyder and Frager meters are often employed for high-pressure supplies; and the Parkinson and Tylor meters for low-pressure supplies. The Kent meter is a good example of the second type.

The Duncan meter is practically a double-cylinder water-pressure engine having D slide-valves faced with lignum vitæ. The pistons are provided with cup-leathers. This apparatus may be used as a motor, in which case, of course, part of the available head of water is used in the work.

Fig. 14.



¾-INCH KENNEDY METER.

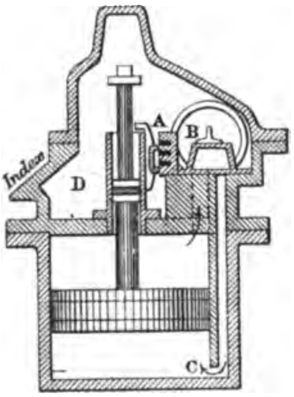
A, four-way cock;
B, piston;
C, counting gear.
Scale $\frac{1}{10}$.

103. The Kennedy meter, *Fig. 14*, consists of a cylinder provided with large ports at the top and bottom. Within it works a long vulcanite piston, which fits the cylinder at its upper and lower extremities. In the middle space, a ring of indiarubber rolls up and down upon the piston as it moves, making a water-tight and nearly frictionless joint with the cylinder. The piston-rod passes through a stuffing-box in the cylinder cover, and is attached to a rack which works a pinion on a horizontal shaft. In line with the shaft is situated a four-way plug-cock, connecting the inlet and outlet alternately with the two ports of the cylinder, and it is fitted with a two-armed lever. A tumbling-weight which works loosely on the shaft is lifted by small arms on the pinion, so as to overbalance and fall on the arms of the lever alternately

as the piston reaches the upper and lower ends of its stroke, thus reversing the connection of the inlet and outlet with the two ports. The tumbling-weight, after striking the lever, falls on a buffer which gradually arrests its motion.

The machine requires occasional attention to prevent the moving parts from sticking, and to keep the plug-cock in action; and, in common with other reciprocating direct-acting single-cylinder meters, a slight shock in the pipes is caused by it at each reversal of the plug-cock. One great advantage possessed by this meter, is that the recording gear worked from the shaft measures the length of the stroke of the piston, and thus also the actual volume of water displaced by it. By means of suitable gearing the apparatus records continuously, notwithstanding its reciprocating motion. The indiarubber ring is found to last longer if the cylinder is lined with brass.

Fig. 15.



1-INCH FROST METER.
A, auxiliary slide valve;
B, main slide valve;
C, main cylinder;
D, counting-gear.
Scale $\frac{1}{10}$.

104. In the Frost meter, *Fig. 15*, a piston, provided with leathers, works in a brass-lined cylinder, the upper and lower ends of which communicate with ports, on each side of a main outlet-port. A horizontal D slide-valve, connecting in turn each port with the outlet, is actuated by two small pistons working in cylinders situated one on each side of the valve. An auxiliary vertical slide-valve, actuated by tappets on the main piston-rod, admits water alternately behind one and the other of the small pistons that drive the main horizontal valve, pushing it

over at each end of the stroke of the main piston ready for the next stroke. The counting gear is worked from the reciprocating piston by the usual train of mechanism.

105. The Schönheyder meter consists of a circular cast-iron case furnished with inlet- and outlet-pipes, and contains three horizontal cylinders set at angles of 120° with one another. The three pistons working in these cylinders form one piece with a central valve which works on a horizontal valve-face containing the inlet- and outlet-ports. In the centre of this valve is a circular recess which fits over a central vertical roller of a diameter smaller than its own, and the spindle of which is attached to the case. Each point of the pistons has thus a circular motion, to permit which the cylinders have a transverse sliding-motion controlled by rollers. The ebonite valve-face contains three openings communicating directly with the interior of the meter-case, arranged symmetrically about a central outlet-port which communicates with the outlet-pipe. In the valve are three openings, also symmetrically arranged, through which the water passes from the ports in the valve-face to the cylinders and is subsequently exhausted to the outlet-port. The pistons are furnished with cup-leathers. The counting-gear is worked off the circular motion of the pistons.

106. The Frager meter has two vertical cylinders placed side by side. In these cylinders work chambered pistons with loose rods passing through them. The loose piston-rods, to the tops of which D slide-valves are attached, only move as far as is necessary for them to actuate the valves. Their travel is effected by the upper and lower ends of the piston-chambers alternately striking bosses at their lower extremities. When either piston has travelled nearly to the end of its up-stroke, the back of the chamber comes into contact with the boss on the piston-rod and forces the valve forward. Similarly, at the end of the down

stroke, the front of the chamber in the piston strikes the boss on the piston-rod and withdraws the valve. There are three ports under each slide-valve. The upper and lower ports in the valve-face above one cylinder communicate with the ports of the other cylinder, and the pistons reciprocate alternately. The central port leads to the outlet. Consequently, one end of each cylinder is always open to the supply and the other to the outlet. A mechanical counter records the delivery in terms of the number of strokes made by the pistons.

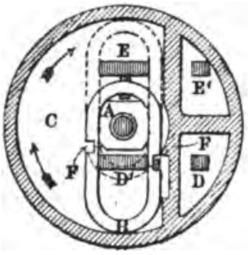
107. For low-pressure supplies, the Parkinson and Tylor meters are much used. The former works on the principle of the Parkinson wet gas-meter, and is found satisfactory in practice.

The Tylor "bascule" meter consists of a tumbling-vessel, divided into two compartments of known capacity, rocking on a horizontal axis which may be placed over a house-cistern. The supply-pipe delivers into the two compartments alternately. When one is full, the vessel tilts over, emptying its contents into the cistern; and the other compartment is simultaneously brought under the supply-pipe and begins to fill. Automatic gear of the ordinary ratchet-and-pawl type, counts and registers the number of times each compartment is emptied. A ball-valve cuts off the supply of water when the cistern is filled, and puts the meter out of action. Large quantities of water may be thus measured by being passed through a number of similar apertures, the amount passing through one of them being measured directly by the meter, and the quantity thus registered being multiplied by the number of the orifices employed.

108. The Kent meter, *Fig. 16*, has a cylindrical working-chamber tightly fitting into a cast-iron case through which the inlet- and outlet-pipes pass on opposite sides of the

working-chamber. This latter is divided by a straight vertical diaphragm into two unequal segments, in the larger of which a rotating piston works. The smaller segment is subdivided into two equal parts, into one of which the water is admitted and into the other the water is delivered after passing through the meter. The object of these chambers is to allow the water to enter and leave by ports on either side of the piston. In the larger segment, at the centre of the circle, a pin is fixed, upon which a square axle turns. The piston, which has straight parallel sides, but is rounded at the ends, is hollowed inside to fit accurately over the square axle, on which it slides. It is of such a length that when close to the axle at one end, it touches the sides of the chamber at the other; and when parallel to the diaphragm it fits closely to it. In this position, and touching the sides of the chamber at one end of the diaphragm, the port from the inlet-chamber communicates with the space within the piston, and when slid along the diaphragm to the other end the outlet-port is in communication with it.

Fig. 16.



KENT METER.

A, square axle;
B, piston;
C, working-chamber;
D, D, inlet-ports;
E, E, outlet-ports.

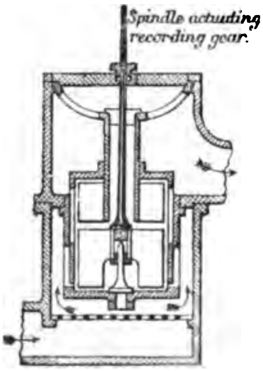
The action is as follows:—Starting with the piston lying close to the diaphragm at the inlet-side, water enters between it and the diaphragm and causes the piston to rotate through 180° with the square axle, which brings it over the exhaust port. The water then enters the piston through the inlet-ports between the axle and the circular end lying close to it, and causes the piston to slide parallel to the diaphragm, until it reaches the other end of its stroke, which is the position started from. In a more recent type, the diaphragm, instead of being straight, is made curved, so that the rotation of the piston, which is elliptical, is continuous when water is passing. A lever from the axle works the counting apparatus. The piston is of vulcanite and the working parts are of delta metal. On the inlet side a screen is fixed to catch grit, &c., as in other positive meters.

Where a supply of water is laid on through a cistern, and the latter is nearly full, a mere dribble of water passes through the pipes; a "positive" meter is then the only form which gives correct registration of the quantity of water supplied.

109. Of the "inferential" type, the Siemens, Tylor, Sporton, Deacon and Venturi water-meters may be referred to.

There are two forms of the Siemens inferential meter—the English and the German. In the former, the water enters a hollow rotating wheel through a central funnel, issuing by tangential passages into the casing surrounding it, as in a Barker's mill. To prevent excessive speed of rotation, vertical blades are attached to the periphery of the wheel and act as a brake by the resistance of the water—causing an approximately constant ratio to obtain between the velocity of the flow through the meter and the rate at which the wheel revolves. This form of meter reduces the pressure considerably, and the orifices are apt to become choked with solid matter, which interferes with the accuracy of registration.

Fig. 17.



SIEMENS METER.

Scale $\frac{1}{10}$.

In the German form of the instrument, *Fig. 17*, these objections are obviated. It consists of a gun-metal, brass, or in larger sizes, cast-iron cylindrical chamber, in which revolves a fan, consisting of a vertical spindle with four plane vanes symmetrically fixed at right-angles to it. These vanes almost brush the sides of the chamber. The water from the supply-pipe enters tangentially at the periphery of the fan and impinges normally against the vanes, setting them in motion and revolving with them in the chamber. The whirling water next passes into an upper part of the chamber above the vanes, where its rotation is checked by a diaphragm ; it then flows away through the outlet. The number of rotations of the fan is registered by recording gear actuated by the spindle at the top of the meter, and affords a measure of the water passing through it. This meter gives correct results except for small driblets, such as occur when supply pipes deliver into cisterns through slowly-acting ball-valves.

In order to prevent small quantities of water from passing through a large meter unregistered, a by-pass pipe is sometimes placed round the main inlet and outlet, and is provided with a meter of smaller size. When the velocity falls below a certain point, a weighted throttle-valve closes the main inlet, and the water is diverted through the auxiliary meter, which is more sensitive to small flows.

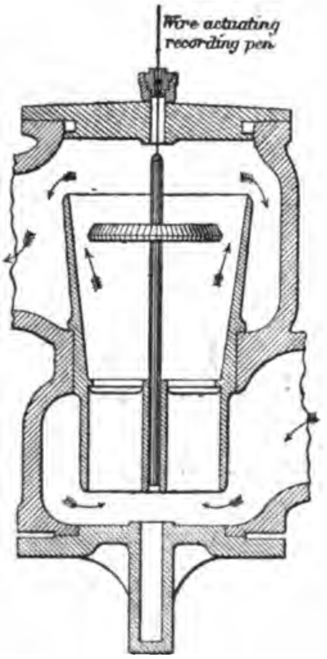
110. The Tylor and Sporton meters closely resemble the German form of the Siemens instrument. In the Tylor meter, the water enters from below almost tangentially to the vanes of the fans, and so causes the latter to rotate. It then passes upwards between radial ribs furnished with horizontal projections, which deflect a portion of the flow back to the fan. This action is greater as the velocity of flow increases, so rendering the meter accurate through a considerable range of working. Vertical corrugations are formed on the case at intervals round its circumference, acting as "vortex chambers" and re-

tarding the speed of the fan as the flow increases. The fan is made of phosphor-bronze, and the case of gun-metal.

This meter has been made self-registering, by recording on a strip of paper moved forward by clockwork each 500 gallons that pass through the meter.

In the Sporton meter, the water is admitted below the fan and caused to support its weight, thus rendering the friction of the pivot insignificant. This, like the Tylor meter, has been made to record automatically its measurement. To effect this, a drum hung over one of the index-spindles of the recording-gear has a vertical reciprocating motion imparted to it by clockwork, performing its stroke in 24 hours. The index-spindle carries an arm on its upper extremity, which is bent over so as to approach the outside of the drum, upon the paper covering of which it traces a diagram as it is carried round by the rotating spindle.

Fig. 18.



DEACON METER.
Scale $\frac{1}{10}$.

111. The Deacon differentiating water-meter is suitable for measuring either large flows of water, or supplies to small districts, as applied in the waste-water-meter. Essentially, it comprises a disk suspended in an inverted frustrum of a hollow cone, the lower end of which it acurately fits, *Fig. 18.* Attached to the lower end of

the cone is a short cylinder containing four vanes, the boss of which is bored out to form a guide for the spindle of the disk. The object aimed at is to steady the motion of the water by causing it to flow over the lip of the cylinder and to check any vortex motion before it enters the cone. The water enters from the bottom, flowing from the inlet-pipe round the cylinder, and leaves at the top where it overflows the lip formed by the upper edge of the cone, and so passes to the outlet.

The disk is weighted to the extent necessary to balance the pressure due to the velocity of the water past it, and it assumes such a position in the cone that, whatever the quantity passing may be, the pressure upon it due to the velocity of the flow is constant. The disk is supported by a wire which passes through the cover of the meter, and over a pully with a small counter-weight to keep it taut, and actuates a pencil recording the heights of the disk continuously upon a diagram carried by a drum, which is rotated by clockwork, say, once in 24 hours. For each size of meter, the rates corresponding with different heights of the disk are ascertained by experiment; and the diagrams are correspondingly ruled to show the rate of flow through the meter at every point that can be assumed by the pencil in its travel.

112. The principle of the Venturi meter is worthy of attention.

From the observed reduction of pressure caused by a contraction in a pipe, the velocity and thence the rate at which the water is delivered through it is inferred as a question of hydrodynamics.

If v is the velocity, and p the pressure in the pipe and p' the pressure in the contracted portion; and if A is the area of the pipe, a that of the contracted portion, and w the weight of unit volume of water,

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} + \frac{p}{w} = \frac{\left(\frac{vA}{a}\right)^2}{2g} + \frac{p'}{w}; \qquad (\S\ 65)$$

that is, $$p - p' = \frac{wv^2}{2g}\left\{\left(\frac{A}{a}\right)^2 - 1\right\}.$$

From this it follows that the velocity in the pipe is proportional to the square root of the reduction of pressure.

113. No assumptions have yet been forthcoming to form the basis of a satisfactory theory of any but the cases of steady motion already referred to (§ 65). In the channels of irregular form and surface which are met with in practice, the unsteadiness and internal disturbance of the flow become often so pronounced as to render direct gauging necessary to correct measurement.

The satisfactory application of gauging-processes is dependent in these cases upon the continuity of the observations, no less than upon the accuracy of individual measurements—the aim being to obtain *average* velocities or pressures.

Upon these considerations the suitability of instruments of all kinds for gauging purposes must be determined.

CHAPTER III.

THE COLLECTION OF WATER.

114. ALMOST all methods of collecting water for purposes of domestic or industrial supply can be summarised under two heads:—

(1) The water is obtained from the earth's surface, upon which it has fallen in the form of rain; or (2) it may be derived from the sub-soil and rocks, in the course of its subsequent passage to the ocean.

115. (1) In many tropical, and in some European countries, rain is collected in tanks as it precipitates, or is led off the roofs of buildings into cisterns, often situated underground; and the water thus preserved frequently forms the sole supply for dietetic purposes, as is the case in many parts of India. The Spanish Peninsula affords examples of the former class of tanks, employed for catching rain-water for irrigation purposes; whilst in Venice may be found many underground cisterns, supplied from the roofs of houses, and in some instances provided with sand filters, through which the water passes to clear-water wells.

The famous tanks at Aden bear silent testimony to the inadequacy of any system of direct collection for ordinary water-supply (§ 270). The disadvantage of such sources is that, even in countries where the rainfall is heavy, the quantity available for the use of each individual is limited by the relatively small collecting-area. The quality of the water, however, where that which first falls is rejected and the cisterns are properly attended to, may be, under favourable circumstances, good ; because it is only subject to contamination from the gases and dust of the atmosphere.

116. The more generally practised way of collecting surface-water is to draw it from lakes or streams, when the quantity afforded by the latter is sufficiently constant; or if it is liable to considerable fluctuations, and is reduced at times below the supply required, to impound the flood-waters and so equalise the yield at the various seasons. The earth's crust under certain conditions, itself forms the equalising reservoir—the water being drawn either from springs or shallow wells, or by means of intercepting tunnels or drains traversing water-bearing strata.

117. The considerations involved in the question of obtaining supplies of water from any sources whatever are: First, that it is sufficiently free from organic and mineral impurities; second, that the quantity available may be sufficient to satisfy the demands likely to be made upon it by the district that is to be supplied ; and third, that it can be conveyed from the source selected to the place of consumption at a reasonable cost.

Assuming a supply to be satisfactory, both as regards quality and quantity, and that physical circumstances point to the feasibility of using the source, the method of collecting the water in a convenient condition for its subsequent conveyance claims attention.

Where a river bank consists of sand or gravel, unjointed pipes, in the former case covered with gravel, may be laid in the bank, so that the water may percolate into them, and be thus partially filtered before its admission to the main collecting-tank or well. The supply of Oxford is drawn from the gravel beds through which the Thames flows, and a large district of London is at certain times similarly supplied from Hampton. Lyons, again, derives a supply from the Rhone, by shallow wells sunk in the gravel on the bank of the river; and this plan is extensively practised both on the Continents of Europe and America.

118. When water is taken from a river or stream direct, careful selection must be exercised in deciding upon a suitable site for the intake-works. A position should be chosen at which there is no tendency for the river to deposit silt or other detritus; consequently either a concave bank or a straight reach should be selected, and, if necessary, rendered stable by suitable training-works. The river Vistula was thus treated at Warsaw for a length of about 4½ miles, in order to render stable the concave shore for an intake.*

The intake-chamber is generally situated above the level of the river-bed, to prevent its being filled by the material rolled along by the current; but below the dry-weather level of the surface of the river, so as to avoid the ingress of floating matter. In countries where the whole body of the water in a stream is liable to be cooled below freezing-point, the latter precaution averts some of the difficulties due to ground-ice. For, when water in such a condition comes to rest in the intake-chamber, some of it freezes; but, by drawing the water from a sufficient depth below the surface, it may be abstracted continuously underneath the floating ice so formed. The importance of providing means to flush out the intake-chamber must not be overlooked; and the inlet should be protected by a grating, to prevent the passage of any matter of sensible size into the pipes.

119. To districts of supply which are situated sufficiently below the level of the intake-works, water is generally con-

---

* 'Deutsche Vierteljahrsschrift für öffentliche Gesundheitspflege,' 1890, p. 199.

veyed entirely by gravitation, unless high ground intervenes which cannot be tunnelled, and renders the resort to pumping necessary. The latter is the only plan available where the difference of level is insufficient to produce the required flow under the action of gravity or where the district to be supplied lies above the intake; and, where practicable and a large supply is required, it generally affords a cheap method of collection in first cost. Its adoption, however, usually implies that the dry-weather flow of the stream always exceeds the required supply, a condition of affairs which, unfortunately, seldom occurs when the water is of unimpeachable quality. The best surface-water supplies are usually obtained from streams of small size, draining comparatively limited catchment-areas from which sources of pollution can be easily excluded. In these cases, storage works (Chapter IV.) must be resorted to.

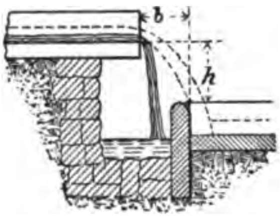
Stream-valleys affording suitable sites for impounding-reservoirs are, in this country, happily not uncommon. They should present an impervious stratum at no great depth below the bottom and sides, and should be free from faults, fissures or open joints—features that are often difficult of detection, even to a practised eye, and the discovery of which should form the object of a careful geological survey of the sites. Masonry walls are employed as dams where stone is plentiful, and of good quality. In narrow and rocky gorges such dams may be arched in plan—the sectional area being in that form much reduced ; but, with foundations situated at considerable depths, or of a soft, yielding nature, requiring the pressure thereupon to be widely distributed, embankments of earth may be found the most suitable (§ 194).

120. To maintain as far as practicable the purity of water falling upon a catchment-area of light surface-soil, a system of land-drainage is useful, and reduces the loss from

evaporation. In impervious ground, unless it is very steep, open ditches are sometimes employed to intercept the water and convey it to the reservoir; and these, although less beneficial than covered drains, have a similar effect in reducing deterioration and evaporation of the rain-water.

121. It is sometimes practicable to allow only the clear water from the contributing streams, during their normal flow, to enter one of the series of reservoirs from which the supply is drawn. By an ingenious method, introduced by the late Mr. J. F. La Trobe Bateman, the separation of such water may be automatically effected. A shoot or flume is constructed to carry the stream operated upon, almost, though not quite, across the channel which, immediately below it, is provided to carry the normal dry-weather flow of clear water to the reservoir (*Fig. 19*). In times of flood, the increased velocity of the stream causes it to leap completely across this channel, when it flows down a separate watercourse to other reservoirs, in which it may be allowed to settle before being used.

Fig. 19.



If v be the mean velocity of the stream in feet per second, when its water begins to be discoloured, h the depth in feet from the shoot to the edge of the clear-water channel, and d the depth in feet of the flow of the stream in the shoot,

$$v = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2gd},$$

and

$$h = \frac{1}{2}gt^2;$$

let b denote the horizontal distance, also in feet, from the end of the shoot over which the stream falls to the edge of the channel below, so that it may completely leap over this channel;

then $$b = v\,t,$$

therefore $$b = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2gd}\;t,$$

$$= \frac{4}{3}\sqrt{dh}.$$

As the water, in falling, does not assume the curve due to the mean velocity of the stream, the value of b thus obtained is somewhat small, though not to such an extent as to matter in practice.

122. Where the hydraulic surface over a tract of country nearly coincides with that of the earth, but no natural depressions exist in which the water may assume the form of lakes or streams, a supply may be obtained either from springs—if there are such; or from shallow wells, intercepting-tunnels, or drains, by means of which the land-water is collected to centres from which it may be convienently drawn. Many, probably most, towns have, at an early period of their history, been supplied from shallow wells, which have been adandoned as the increased pollution due to density of population and other circumstances has rendered this course obligatory.

The early growth of many other towns is at first confined to those districts adjacent to rivers, from the gravelly banks of which water can be readily obtained. In California there are upwards of 4000 shallow artesian wells, from 100 feet to 250 feet in depth, used for domestic supply and for irrigation. As, however, districts become more densely populated, or highly cultivated, such wells are very liable to contamination; although, when sunk through impervious into water-bearing strata, the dangerous surface-waters may be excluded by steining or lining the wells with brickwork, masonry, or metal tubes, down to the level of the impervious strata.

123. Deep-seated springs, being unaffected by surface-pollution, generally form desirable sources of supply, both for small districts and on the large scale. Examples of small spring-water supplies are familiar to every one, whilst London (New River), Rome, Vienna and Frankfort may be cited as instances of great cities thus supplied wholly or in part. The supply of Lancaster is drawn from the Millstone Grit of the Wyresdale Fells through a system of stoneware pipes carried into the springs, and so efficiently contrived that the water is not exposed to light until it reaches the consumers.*

124. Instead of numerous shallow wells, intercepting-tunnels driven into water-bearing strata are employed in many parts of the world. In California, water is thus obtained for irrigation purposes, from formations consisting of boulders and sand. The town-supplies of Naples and of Seville are collected by galleries deep below the surface. The supply of Constantinople, again, is augmented by means of the open joints of a tunnel through which the water percolates into the aqueduct.

125. Underground galleries constructed parallel to the banks of streams or lakes, to intercept the flow of the land-water on its passage to such outlets, form a common type of collecting-works. The rate of pumping from such galleries, if greater than the infiltration of land-water into them, induces a reverse flow from the river or lake through the intervening strata, of an amount that depends upon the extent by which the water-level in the gallery is lowered, and upon the porosity of the strata. Thus we have a second important class of tunnel-collection, in which the

---

* Mansergh, 'Lectures on Water Supply, &c.' p. 65—Chatham, 1882.

works, termed in this case "filter-galleries," collect but little land-water, and serve mainly to abstract surface-water from lakes and streams, filtered to a certain extent by passing through the intervening ground.

Toulouse is so supplied from the river Garonne. A good example of such works occurs at Lowell, Mass., where the main filter-gallery, situated alongside the river Merrimac, is 1300 feet long, 8 feet in width, and the same in height. The walls are formed of rubble masonry, and the roof by a brick arch, the level of which is approximately that of the dry-weather flow of the river. The water enters the gallery through the floor, which is covered by a sheet of coarse gravel, 1 foot thick.

The yield of springs is sometimes increased by the introduction of a puddled-clay wall, to check the passage of the land-water at that place, thus forming an artificial counterpart of the natural condition illustrated in *Fig. 1*.

126. A method of interception much practised in Holland for collecting water for domestic supply from the sand-dunes near the coast, is to intersect the dunes by canals, into which the water from the sand drains. The fine sand of which the dunes are composed, forms a natural reservoir for rain-water ; so that, even during long droughts, the water stored in it continues to drain into the canals, and the supply is maintained in an inexpensive manner. An amount equal to between 30 and 50 per cent. of the mean rainfall may be collected from these dunes, which absorb in a remarkable degree the moisture contained in the atmosphere. Instead of open channels, especially when the surface of saturation lies low, pipes with open joints are frequently laid, surrounded by shells, a modification which, owing to the conduit being closed, prevents the development of vegetable and animal life. The water thus collected in the pipes is led to a well, whence it is

raised by pumping. Waterworks at the Hague and at Amsterdam illustrate this principle.

On some of the plains of Flanders, where the surface of saturation is near the ground-level, instead of canals, numerous shallow wells are sunk. The water is led from these wells by siphons to a central well, whence it is pumped to a service-reservoir. Ejectors are used to exhaust the air from the siphons when required, and the water is by this means collected with little expenditure of power.

127. Pumping from deep wells is, owing of course to geological conditions, the most general method of water-supply in this country for the smaller towns and villages. All water pumped from wells means so much abstracted from the drainage system of the district, as an equivalent quantity would otherwise have gravitated to the natural outlet of the basin. It may be, however, that the water is returned after use to the catchment-area from which it is taken, in a more or less polluted state, and at a lower level.

The subject of well-sinking may be conveniently divided into two parts: (1) Geological considerations of the most suitable sites for wells; and (2) The methods adopted for sinking or boring them.

128. (1) The choice of a proper place for boring is a matter upon which depends the success of the entire venture. To determine it, geological features should be considered conjointly with the physical configuration of the district; and the dip and strike of the strata, and the direction and extent of faults, if any, should be closely examined. The most favourable position for a well is in a large synclinal basin of high rainfall—the outlier consisting of permeable rocks, sand, or gravel, overlying an impervious stratum of quaquaversal dip.

Success or failure in boring frequently depends upon the existence of fissures or faults. In chalk, which holds the water it contains so retentively that it can only be drawn from it at a slow rate, a bed of flints or a line of fissures presents an extensive surface from which the water is yielded comparatively freely. Mountain limestone affords another example of this, and if a fissure be cut by boring, a good supply may often be obtained from it. Permeable strata lowered by faulting so that on the "downthrow" side they make contact with impervious beds—if the catchment-area is large and other conditions are favourable—may be expected to afford, in the neighbourhood of the impervious barrier thus formed, a satisfactory yield, for a natural underground reservoir is there formed. Dykes of intrusive igneous rock intersecting permeable strata produce the same effect as the faults just mentioned, and borings made on the sides nearest the outcrop of the strata intersected would most likely be successful; whereas the probability of finding much water on the other sides of such dykes would be remote. On the other hand, a joint filled with the rocky detritus of the surrounding beds, might be best approached by boring on its lower side, for it would act as an intercepting drain to the whole of the catchment-area whose outcrop is situated on its upper side.

As an example of water being obtained from wells in very unpromising situations may be cited the bore-holes made in Sweden by M. Nordenskiöld to obtain water from temperature cracks in solid crystalline rocks at depth ot over 100 feet.

The probable yield of a bore-hole or well can only be estimated practically by comparison with similarly situated structures; because, in addition to the rainfall, the percolation and the absorption, the computation of which alone forms a sufficiently difficult problem, the question becomes so highly complex by considerations of the amount of water leaving the strata by springs and fissures, as to baffle all attempts to answer it directly. Where water lies in beds situated beneath impervious strata, under a hydrostatic pressure greater than that due to the depth of the beds below the ground, a bore-hole carried down to tap them produces an artesian well, through which the subterranean waters rise naturally to the surface (§ 25).

The size of bore-holes is of more importance in artesian than in ordinary wells whence water is raised by pumping. In the former case, however great the available amount of water may be, the supply will only be that which the excess of the pressure at the bottom of the bore-hole over that due to the column of water in it, can force through a tube of the length, diameter and roughness of the bore-hole, according to ordinary hydraulic laws. Whereas, in the latter case, where artificial power is employed, the height to which the water naturally rises may be reduced by pumping at a greater rate; and the percolation into the bore-hole may be correspondingly increased under the additional head thus produced. This is well exemplified in the Grenelle and Passy artesian wells, in the Paris basin, which pass through the Gault Clay into the Lower Greensand. The former, 1795 feet deep, yielded on its completion in 1841, about 750,000 gallons per day, through a 7-inch tube. Part of this tube having collapsed, it was replaced by one 4 inches in diameter, and the supply became reduced to about 200,000 gallons per day. The Passy well, 1939 feet deep, and 3 feet 3 inches in diameter, yielded on its completion, in 1861, nearly 4,500,000 gallons per day; but owing to gradual obstruction of the bore by sand, this quantity fell to 1,300,000 gallons per day.*

---

* *Revue Scientifique*, vol. xli. 1881, p. 241.

A remarkably successful example of an artesian well[*] is a 4-inch bore-hole at Bourne, Lincolnshire, made in 1856 through Oolitic strata. At a depth of 92 feet below the surface, passing through hard compact rock, the boring tool suddenly fell 2 feet into a fissure, from which 500,000 gallons of water per day rose under sufficient pressure to supply the town without the application of artificial power. Three bore-holes at Wilsthorpe,[†] near to Peterborough, through Oolitic strata, each 7 inches in diameter for a depth of 53 feet 6 inches, of which the last 27 feet is a bed of clay, pierce water-bearing rock for a further depth of about 12 feet, with a diameter of 5 inches. The combined yield of the wells exceeds 2,000,000 gallons per day. The bore-holes are lined with solid-drawn copper tubes, and at the top of each is fixed a valve to regulate the supply and prevent waste.

129. Wells and bore-holes in sandstone and other comparatively homogeneous rocks in which percolation is uniform, require to be of larger size than is necessary in chalk or limestone, where the supply is obtained from natural collecting-galleries in the form of beds of flints, open joints or fissures; because the percolation through a given area of the rock is determined simply by the differential head at every point. It is therefore usual to increase the collecting surface in such wells by driving tunnels at the bottom.

It almost invariably happens that the yield of ordinary wells falls off after pumping has proceeded for some time. The water from the so-called cone of depression (§ 27) becoming exhausted, the supply has to drain from greater distances, and consequently reaches the wells under smaller pressure and at a reduced rate. The clogging of the porous structure of sandstone or similar rock has a further effect in causing the supply to gradually diminish. In chalk or limestone the reverse of this may happen. For the fissures supplying wells in these formations are apt to become enlarged, owing to the solution of the calcareous rock by the dissolved carbonic acid contained in the percolating water; their resistance to percolation is thereby reduced, and the flow through them naturally increases.

---

[*] Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxv. p. 245.

[†] *Op. cit.*, vol. ci. p. 218.

130. The most important water-bearing formations in this country are the Chalk; the Lower Greensand, lying between the Gault and Wealden Clays of the Cretaceous strata; and the Triassic Sandstone, especially the Bunter series. Water is also obtained in considerable quantity from the Oolitic, Permian, Millstone Grit and some other less important formations.

131. In the extensive Cretaceous districts of England are many wells bored into the Chalk, for general use as well as for private supplies—the latter especially in the London basin, in which the level of the water has been artificially lowered until it is now considerably below the mean level of the river. One cubic foot of chalk can absorb 2 gallons of water, whilst one cubic foot of sandstone holds but little over ¾ gallon. Chalk is, however, highly retentive, and in order to obtain a good supply from it, some of the numerous beds of flints occurring in the upper Chalk must be intersected, or cavities and lines of fissures, which form natural reservoirs into which the water slowly percolates.

From the results of experiments and investigations in 1851, Prof. D. T. Ansted arrived at the conclusion that chalk is so absorbent and retentive of moisture that the fissures in it tend rather to supply water to the rock than to collect any therefrom. Evaporation proceeds rapidly from its surface, water being transmitted upwards by capillary action to supply the loss. Otherwise, water does not pass out from solid chalk by percolation ; and the available water in this formation consists only of so much as exists in crevices and fissures, by which it is fortunately intersected in a remarkable degree.*

The West Kent Water Company derives a large supply from the Chalk in the neighbourhood of the fault that traverses the Deptford district.† It has been often observed that little water is generally obtained from chalk which is buried by a considerable thickness of other strata. This has sometimes been attributed to the closing of the fissures by the superincumbent pressure. A more probable explanation is that the carbonic acid contained in solution in rain-water, augmented by that derived from decomposing vegetable matter during its passage through the soil, becomes combined in the upper strata before the water reaches the chalk. There is therefore no agent at work forming holes and enlarging fissures in the latter. Certainly, if at any previous time the surface of chalk had been exposed when newer beds were deposited upon it, there would be a tendency to fill up the fissures already formed in it. It is therefore generally stated that the outcrop of the Chalk is the most likely place to find water by boring.

The Oolitic rocks are almost as absorbent as the Chalk, whilst percolation takes place through them much more freely. They would rank among the finest water-bearing formations, were it not that the very porosity of their structure renders them peculiarly liable to pollution by infiltration of surface impurities. ‡

132. The lower Trias is but little fissured, and the supply

---

* Ansted, 'Water and Water Supply,' p. 84—London, 1878.

† Colburn and Maw, 'The Waterworks of London,' p. 67—London, 1867.

‡ De Rance, 'The Water Supply of England and Wales,' p. 41—London, 1882.

from wells in it depends on the percolation through the rock and along the joints in it. The water afforded by it is usually of excellent quality, if somewhat hard for ordinary consumption; though where the Triassic marls overlie the Bunter sandstone, the water obtained from the formation frequently contains large quantities of gypsum and rock salt in solution, and is then unsuitable for domestic supply —a cause that has led to the rejection of such water after the expense of boring or sinking wells in this formation has been incurred.

133. Wells of large diameter sunk through soft earth are generally lined with brickwork set in cement, carried upon a timber curb which sinks as the excavation proceeds. If lined with cast-iron cylinders, the bottom one is provided with a cutting-edge of slightly larger diameter than that of the cylinder, and the ground may be removed from the interior by a grab, or by the ordinary pick-and-shovel process. It is desirable to fix a timber framing, in order to guide the cylinders vertically for the first 15 or 20 feet. The frictional resistance opposed by the earth to sinking may at great depths amount to ½ ton per square foot of surface. When the cylinders stick, a small charge of dynamite exploded at the bottom will often cause them to re-commence their descent.

134. Wells of considerable depth in rock can now be bored more cheaply than they can be sunk in the old way, even when so large as 15 feet in diameter. A boring of such size as this requires, however, a pilot bore-hole about 6 feet in diameter to be driven first. Two wells of 6 feet diameter and 100 feet deep, bored near to Otterbourne for the Southampton Waterworks,* form interesting examples of recent well-boring by the percussive method in this country. The boring-tool employed consisted of a flat wrought-iron cross-

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xc. p. 33.

head, to which three wrought iron chisels with steel points 2 feet broad were attached by cottars, forming a trident. The two outer chisels were furnished with short iron guides formed so as to act as rimers, and were further attached to the cross-head by keep-chains in case of accident. The weight of the tool was 1½ ton. The boring-rods were of iron 3 inches square, coupled in 10-foot lengths with screwed joints, and were suspended to a 2-inch lifting-cable with a swivel and shackle. A steam-winch was kept running constantly, round the drum of which a few turns of the lifting-cable were coiled; when the loose end of the cable was hauled taut the rods were raised, and on its being released, they dropped instantly. A rotary motion was imparted to the rods and boring-tool by manual power.

The miser used was made of ⅜-inch boiler plate stiffened by angle-bars and plates. Each half of the lower portion was made tapering with a helical twist, the upper edge of one plate being brought nearly vertically over the lower edge of the other plate, and between the two a hinged flap was hung to retain the débris when forced into the miser. The edge of each plate was furnished with steel dog-tooth cutters and a set of points; cutters were also bolted to it to finally rime out the wells. The second of the two wells was sunk at an average rate of more than 5 feet per day.

These wells were bored by Messrs. Le Grand and Sutcliff, who have favoured us with further information as to a recent bore-hole executed by the same method at New Lodge, Windsor. This boring was commenced with a diameter of 7¼ inches in the expectation that water would be obtained from the chalk at a depth of 250 to 300 feet. Failing this, the rock was pierced to a depth of 1120 feet, the bore-hole being lined with 3-inch tubes to that point and finished with a still smaller diameter, to a total depth of 1242 feet, in the Lower Greensand. Had it been known at the outset that the boring would have to be carried to so great a depth, larger diameters would have been employed.

135. In sinking the shafts of mines, it is a practice on the Continent to bore first a well about 6 feet in diameter, which is subsequently widened out to the full diameter by a tool consisting of an inverted T-shaped forging carrying a set of vertical chisels, which diminish in length towards the outside so that the detritus falls into the smaller central bore-hole. The "shell-pump" employed to lift the débris in this work consists of an iron cylinder divided into four compartments by transverse partitions, each of which has its own valve, and of less diameter than the central pilot-hole in which it works.

Borings of smaller diameter in rock are effected much in the same way with a single chisel. If in sand, a shell-pump is used; and a special auger is employed for piercing clay.

136. An important modification of the above method of boring is that afforded by the diamond drill, which extracts a solid core, and is consequently of great utility when it is desired to examine the character of the strata bored through. It may be employed for cutting bore-holes up to 2 feet in diameter. In the larger sizes, the working crown in which the diamonds are set is of wrought-steel, about 2 inches thick. This crown is screwed into a core-tube which is attached to hollow rods, and the boring is effected by the rotary motion of the crown imparted to it through the rods by machinery at the surface. The diamonds are of the dark amorphous variety (the *carbonado* of South Africa and Brazil), about the size of small beans. They are brazed to steel plugs, which fit into holes drilled in the crown, about 1½ inch apart.

The core-tube, to which the crown is screwed, is of wrought-iron, 30 feet long; the rods, made of drawn-steel about 3½ inches in external diameter and ⅜-inch thick, coupled together in 5-foot lengths, are connected with a plate at the top of the core-tube. The latter, extending upwards 5 feet, is open at the top so as to receive the fragments of rock washed up by a stream of water which is forced down through the hollow rods, or falling from the sides of the bore-hole. The cross-head from which the rods are driven slides between the rotating vertical shaft and a fixed cast-iron pillar, and the rotary motion is given to the rods by means of a spur-wheel, for which the cross-head forms. a supporting pedestal. This gears into a spur-wheel sliding over a broad feather-key on the vertical shaft below the level of the cross-head, in order to allow for the downward motion of the rods. A weight is arranged to counterbalance the rods as the boring becomes deeper, so that the pressure on the crown does not ordinarily exceed half a ton, depending upon the diameter of the tool. The crown rotates at 40 to 200 revolutions per minute, according to the rock in which it works. After a 30-foot length has been drilled, the core-tube and crown are lifted to the surface, the crown is unscrewed, and an extractor is attached to the core-tube. The rods are raised by shear-legs and tackle, and are detached in 40-foot lengths. A 20-I.H.P. steam-engine suffices for the work under ordinary circumstances.

Plant such as that described was used by Messrs. Docwra & Son, in sinking two borings at Northampton;* the first, a bore-hole 850 feet deep, was sunk in the expectation of reaching water-bearing strata of the Triassic formation. This formation, however, proved to be absent at that place, mountain limestone being encountered. The rate of boring was between 6 and 12 feet in twelve hours, though a much higher rate may be attained for short periods. Simpler forms of the machine are used in smaller borings.

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxiv. p. 270.

137. The method of suspending the boring apparatus by a rope, which obviates the difficulties inseparable from the use of coupled boring-rods, was, after its early introduction, abandoned owing to the difficulty of boring vertically ; but more recently Messrs. Mather & Platt, of Manchester, have succeeded in rendering the method practicable. They use a flat hempen rope, ¾ inch thick and 4½ inches broad, which is wound round a large drum driven by a steam-engine ; in their later practice a round rope has been used. On leaving the drum, the rope is guided by a pulley so as to lap over another pulley carried in jaws at the end of a piston-rod, the piston of which reciprocates in a vertical steam-cylinder. When the boring-tool suspended by this rope has been let down the hole, the rope is clamped in position near to the drum, the piston being at the bottom of the cylinder. Steam- and exhaust-valves, for effecting the reciprocation of the piston, are worked by tappets moved by the piston-rod. The steam-valve is placed at the bottom of the cylinder and the exhaust-valve 6 inches above it, so that there may be a cushion of steam under the piston when it descends. The valves being actuated thus, an arrangement is required to set the piston in motion. This is effected by a small pipe constantly delivering steam through the bottom of the cylinder, by means of which the piston is slowly raised sufficiently to cause the main steam-valve to open—when the piston is driven to the top of the cylinder, raising the boring-tool twice the height of its stroke. The exhaust-valve is then opened, and the piston descends by its own weight, allowing the boring-tool to fall upon the bottom of

the hole. This tool consists of a wrought-iron bar, to the bottom of which is attached a cylindrical block, in which steel cutters are inserted and secured by nuts, so that they may be easily removed to be sharpened or renewed. Above the block one or more cylindrical iron castings are provided to act as guides.

A definite rotation is given to the tool by two cast-iron collars, cottared to the top of the bar. On the lower edge of the top collar, and on the upper edge of the bottom one, are formed deep ratchet teeth of the same pitch. Between these two collars a bush with corresponding ratchet teeth on both sides slides on the bar, and is attached to the rope, the teeth on its upper side being one-half the pitch in advance of those on its lower side. As the tool descends the upper teeth of the bush are in contact with the teeth of the upper collar, and when the tool reaches the bottom of the bore-hole, the bush falls on to the lower collar, causing the rope to twist through half the pitch; when the rope ascends, the upper teeth of the bush again engage with those of the upper collar, which twists the rope through another half pitch. The rope then turns the tool through the same angle in untwisting at each complete stroke.

With this boring-machine about 24 blows per minute can be given, and it can be worked by two men, one of them attending to the engine and changing the tools, and the other emptying the "shell-pump," or apparatus by which the comminuted rock is collected and lifted from the bottom of the bore-hole. This consists of a cylindrical iron barrel, a little smaller in diameter than the bore-hole, containing an indiarubber valve at the bottom, and suspended by a long link from the same rope as that employed to carry the boring-tool, after the latter has been drawn up to the surface and disconnected. The débris enters the shell by the flap-valve at the foot, which is loose to facilitate emptying. In use, the pump is lowered down the bore-hole by the rope, and is then raised and lowered two or three times through the range of the working-stroke of the boring-tool, after which it is drawn up and emptied; an operation that may be conveniently repeated every twenty minutes in this method of boring. In traversing beds of clay, a cylindrical grab is sometimes used for the larger sized bore-holes.

A bore-hole at Bootle, Lancashire, 1302 feet deep and varying in diameter between 26 inches in the upper and 20 inches in the lower part, made with this apparatus in 1877–78, occupied 17 months in construction. A bore-hole made by Messrs. Mather & Platt at Lackenby, near Middlesbrough, is 1806 feet deep; the diameter varying between 12 and 8 inches. In this and in other borings a rate of 40 feet a day has been attained in sandstone. In a boring made through chalk at Bushey, Herts, in 1885, with one of these machines, the diameter being 18 inches in the upper portion and 15 inches for the lower 180 feet, the unlined part, 617 feet in depth, was bored in 38 working days, including stoppages for repairs—an average of 16 feet per day. The greatest depth bored in one day was 30 feet.*

138. In boring through soft strata, to keep the hole open; or to prevent the ingress of surface-water, or loss in the case of artesian wells, the bore-hole must be made larger than is otherwise necessary, in order that wrought- or cast-iron tubing, generally screwed together with flush joints, may be introduced into it. The bottom tube has a sharp cutting-edge of hard steel. The boring and the introduction of the tubing proceed simultaneously, except during the short time occupied in inserting a new tube. When the tubes become earth-bound, a cap is screwed

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xc. p. 21.

on the top one, and they are either driven with a mall, or forced down by screw-jacks, in small, or by hydraulic jacks in larger bore-holes.

To prevent surface-water, which may find its way down the outside of the tubes, from entering the bore-hole at the bottom of the portion thus lined, a hollow conical plug is sometimes forced down to that place. This is designed to form a water-tight joint between the tubes and the lower, impervious stratum. In small bore-holes, however, when it has to be fixed from the top, its efficacy is doubtful. The best means of preventing this action, in wells of such size as to allow of men working inside them, is to inject cement grout under pressure round the cylinders through holes which are afterwards tapped and plugged; this possesses the further advantage of preserving the cylinders from decay.

139. For small supplies, the tube-well forms a useful apparatus. It consists of strong wrought-iron pipes from 1 to 2 inches in diameter, screwed together. The bottom pipe terminates in a point, and is perforated with small holes. The point is driven into the ground by a falling weight, as in pile-driving, and additional lengths of pipe are screwed on as it descends. When this kind of well is sunk through fine sand, the work may be performed expeditiously by forcing water through the tubes at a velocity of 10 to 15 feet per second. Such wells are driven to depths of over 100 feet.

140. By the methods described, wells have been bored to depths of several thousands of feet. A deep bore-hole was made at Schladebach, near Leipsic, in Germany, and is 5734 feet deep.* The diameter is 11·2 inches at the top, and decreases to 1·25 inch at the bottom. It was bored

---

* 'Zeitschrift für das Berg-, Hütten- und Salinen-wesen,' vol. xxxvii. Abhandlungen, p. 172—Berlin, 1889.

with the diamond drill. The temperature increased at the rate of 1° C. for every additional 110 feet in depth. Borings have been made about 1000 feet deeper than this. A boring 5 inches in diameter and 4500 feet deep, completed in 1891, at Wheeling, West Virginia, showed a rise of temperature of 1° C. for every 130 feet increase of depth,* the rate of increase being rather more rapid at the greater depths. The rates of increase of temperature with the depth are somewhat less than those observed in deep bore-holes in England—the average increment in our latitude having been observed to be about 1° C. for every 100 feet in depth.† This question assumes some importance in respect of water supplies sought by this means in the lower formations of the earth's crust; where temperatures obtain at which it is generally undesirable to supply water for domestic use, or to store it for long periods.

141. Hitherto we have considered only the means by which access is obtained to natural sources of water supply, which, in certain cases, can be rendered available for use without the resort to any power for purposes of conveyance and distribution other than that afforded by the action of gravity. Artificial power and appliances have, however, so frequently to be employed to raise water from lakes, streams and wells, to elevations from which the supply may flow and be distributed by the uniform and continuous gravitating impulse of the water, that we proceed to discuss them in some detail. Motive power for pumping purposes is supplied by steam, by water in motion or under pressure, and by the wind; the importance of the first being, however, much greater than the latter two, because it may be rendered available wherever and when-

---

* Report of the British Association, 1892, p. 129.

† Ramsay, 'Physical Geology and Geography of Great Britain,' p. 50—London, 1878.

ever required. The pumps employed are generally of the reciprocating type for high lifts, and of the rotary type for low lifts.

142. The three varieties of the former type of pump in most common use are: (1) the plunger-pump; (2) the bucket-pump; (3) the bucket-and-plunger pump.

(1) The plunger works through a stuffing-box, and acts entirely by displacement. The wear is consequently slight. It may be either single- or double-acting.

(2) The bucket-pump is subject to more wear, as the bucket must make a water-tight joint with the barrel in which it works, containing a valve or valves through which all the water passes. This pump is necessarily, in its simple form, single-acting. It possesses the advantage of having no gland, and may be worked whilst completely submerged; and the direction of motion of the water is not changed.

(3) In order to render the bucket-pump double-acting the pump-rod is thickened out to form a plunger, occupying about half the volume of the working-barrel, and passing through a stuffing-box. This forms the class of pump in most common use. The delivery is continuous on the down stroke, as well as on the up-stroke, and, with fewer valves than in the double-acting plunger-pump, it may be worked at somewhat higher speed than the latter.

143. Pump-valves are formed by either a number of small orifices, furnished with indiarubber or leather flaps, or with gun-metal disks; or they may be of the double- or multiple-beat, or the annular-grid types. An example of the first mentioned type of valve is formed of indiarubber or leather disks backed by gun-metal, sliding on fixed vertical spindles, with stops to prevent them from rising too high. The gratings on which the valves work are machine-faced. In the other variety, the valves are disks of gun-

metal sliding on spindles, or provided with guide wings, with indiarubber stops or spiral springs behind them to assist their closing action.

The double-beat valve is so well known as hardly to need description here. Its seat has gun-metal, gutta-percha or hard wood faces.

The annular-grid valve has a seat consisting of a horizontal gun-metal grating with concentric series of openings, over which works the valve, formed by a flat plate, in which similar series of concentric apertures are arranged so that the solid part of the plate covers the openings of the grating. The valve slides on a central vertical spindle. In a valve of somewhat similar construction, termed the "bee-hive," the perforated metal rings forming the valve-seat are separate, and arranged in tiers of diminishing diameter, telescope fashion, the valves being formed by loose indiarubber disks laid over the several grids, and kept in place by the vertical portion of the adjacent smaller rings. This type has proved effective and durable in practice.

144. Valves should be designed with seats narrow relatively to their apertures, in order that the surface of the moving parts exposed to the water when the valves are lifted may not be much greater when they are on their seats. This prevents the valves from being shot up violently as soon as they are opened, and so avoids the shocks that would otherwise occur from that action. The lift of the valve should be small, and the total opening should be large, opposing little resistance to the passage of the water through it. The valve will then, after rising, resume its seat quickly, and prevent reversal of the current of water, and the consequent slip. To avoid the effect of slip, the valves in plunger-pumps have sometimes been actuated mechanically, and this modification is beginning to receive

more extensive application in the Riedler system. The suction and discharge valves are opened to their full lift and closed mechanically at the instant of the reversal of the direction of motion of the plunger. This allows of the pump being worked at a greater speed than with automatic valves.

145. Uniformity in the delivery of pumps is always desirable, and is essential when water is pumped directly into distribution pipes, without the intervention of a reservoir or stand-pipe. It depends primarily upon the manner in which the pumps are driven. In a double-acting pump it may be ensured by causing the plunger to move at a uniform speed: but if the motion is governed by a fly-wheel, the delivery is nearly harmonic. The former condition is effected in pumps of the "Worthington" type. In the latter case, the uniformity of delivery depends upon the arrangement of the pumps and the phase of their motion relatively to each other.

To reduce pulsation in delivery and variation of the pressure in the main, an air vessel, consisting of a strong iron chamber communicating with the delivery-main, forms an important accessory to every pumping installation. It possesses the further advantage of preventing shocks arising from change of momentum of the water put into motion or stopped by the opening and closing of the valves. To be most effective for this purpose, an air-vessel should be situated near to the pump on the delivery-main, and connected with the latter by a branch pipe of large diameter. If a large mass of water is put into motion at each stroke in the suction-pipe, the latter also should be provided with a foot-valve, and with an air-vessel to effect a gradual arrest of the water and prevent undue impact on the pump-valves. A chamber for this purpose is sometimes formed round the pump-barrel or the valve-chamber.

146. Assuming the motion of the pumps to be harmonic, the quantity of water delivered through each barrel to any point θ of the stroke of the piston is $\frac{A\,L}{2}\left(1 - \cos\overline{\theta - a}\right)$; where L is the length of stroke and A is the area of the piston; $a = 0$ for the first pump-barrel, and 90°, 120° or 180° for the other barrels, according to the angles which the respective cranks make with the first one; and θ is an angle varying from 0° to 180°.

The rate of pumping in each barrel at any instant is therefore

$$\frac{A\,L}{2} \sin(\theta - a);$$

and the average rate throughout the stroke is for

a single-acting pump ($a = 0$)	$\frac{A\,L}{2\pi}$
2 single-acting pumps ($a = 90°$ or $180°$), or for a double-acting pump ($a = 180°$)	$\frac{A\,L}{\pi}$
3 single-acting pumps ($a = 120°$)	$\frac{3\,A\,L}{2\pi}$
4 single-acting pumps, or for 2 double-acting pumps ($a = 90°$ and $180°$)	$\frac{2\,A\,L}{\pi}$

The maximum excess of the delivery above the mean is obtained by finding the points of intersection of

$$y = \frac{A\,L}{2\pi};\ y = \frac{A\,L}{\pi};\ y = \frac{3\,A\,L}{2\pi};\ y = \frac{2\,A\,L}{\pi} = \eta, \text{ say,}$$

with $$y = \Sigma\,\frac{A\,L}{2} \sin(\theta - a),$$

—where $a = 0$ for the first pump-barrel; $a = 90°$, $120°$, or $180°$ for the others respectively; and $\Sigma\,\frac{A\,L}{2} \sin(\theta - a)$ denotes the curve resulting from the combination of the harmonic curves representing the rates of the several pumps—and integrating the expression.

$$y = \Sigma \frac{A\,L}{2}\,sin\,(\theta - \alpha) - \eta$$

between the limits of the first and other intersections.*

147. The ratio that this excess bears to the total delivery per stroke is, in

a single-acting pump ($\alpha = 0$)	55·0 per cent.
2 single-acting pumps ($\alpha = 90°$)	35·0 "
2 single-acting pumps, or a double-acting pump ($\alpha = 180°$)..	10·5 "
4 single-acting pumps, or 2 double-acting pumps ($\alpha = 90°$ and $180°$).. . ..	1·1 "
3 single or double-acting pumps ($\alpha = 120°$)	0·3 "

148. The size of air-vessels for ordinary working is arrived at by multiplying the fractions that represent these percentages by the delivery per revolution, and dividing by the fraction representing the limiting value of the variation of pressure in the main.

For example, for a variation not exceeding $\frac{1}{50}$th of the average pressure, the above ratios multiplied by the delivery per revolution and by 50 give the capacity required in the several cases. When two or more pumps are employed, it is desirable to make the air-vessel large enough to enable pumping to be continued without excessive fluctuation of pressure in the event of one of the pumps breaking down.

The ratio of the maximum excess of the delivery over the mean delivery with one pump out of work is, in the case of

2 single-acting pumps ($\alpha = 180°$).. .. .	55 per cent.
3 single-acting pumps ($\alpha = 120°$)..	27 "
4 single-acting pumps ($\alpha = 90°$ and $180°$) ..	17 "

The variation of pressure permitted in the main may under such exceptional circumstances be greater than in the former case, say twice as much. Therefore to find the capacity of the air-vessel required, the reduced delivery would be multiplied by these fractions and by 25.

---

* A graphical solution of this question has been given by the late Mr. W. E. Rich, *vide* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxviii. p. 24.

149. The supply of air, gradually dissolved in the water, is replenished in the air-vessel, either by a small force-pump or by means of a "snifting valve." This latter ingenious device consists of a chamber provided at the top with an inlet-valve communicating with the atmosphere, and a pipe with a reflux-valve leading into the air-vessel; also furnished at the bottom with a pipe communicating with the space between the suction- and delivery-valves of the pump. During the suction-stroke air is drawn into the chamber, and during the delivery-stroke it is filled with water from the pump-barrel, which expels the air, forcing it into the air-vessel. The inlet air-valve and the pipe from the chamber to the pump-valves are of such relative size that in the suction-stroke the pipe is not emptied of water; air is thus prevented from entering the pump.

150. Instead of an air-vessel, an iron or steel stand-pipe is often used, in which the water-level oscillates about a mean position corresponding with the average pumping-head employed. Its height above the most elevated point in the district to be supplied is equal to the head necessary to force the supply through the distributing- and service-pipes. Stand-pipes are generally situated near the pumps, and are designed of such dimensions that the excess of delivery in each stroke above the mean may not raise the height of the water in them more than corresponds with the allowable variation of pressure in the mains. In the United States it is a common practice to employ stand-pipes of huge dimensions—we do not allude to those which may be useful as service-tanks (§ 266): that at Bloomington, Illinois, is 8 feet in diameter and 200 feet high.

151. It will be observed that, as the flow of the water

through reciprocating pumps is necessarily discontinuous, the speed at which they can be worked depends upon the length of the pump-rods, the valve-areas, and the provision made, by air-cushions and otherwise, for absorbing that portion of the momentum of the water which is due to its varying motion in the suction-pipes and through the pumps.

The fundamental principle of the design of these pumps is that the rate at which effective work, measured by the water raised, is performed, may approximate closely to the power applied to the machines—the ratio of the former to the latter quantity is termed the "pump efficiency." The causes which tend to diminish the efficiency of reciprocating pumps are: the inertia of the water, and the friction of the suction- and the delivery-pipes, and of the pump-barrels; resistance at the valves; the periodic stoppage of the motion in the suction-pipe, and slip; variation of the motion in the pump-barrels and delivery-pipe; and friction of the working parts. The first mentioned group of these causes are precisely analogous to the phenomena presented for consideration by the motion of water in a gravitation main (§ 318); the remainder have been discussed, as far as concerns the steps necessary to reduce their effects in practice, in §§ 143–150.

In favourable circumstances, with pumps of any considerable size, the effective work approaches within 5 per cent. to the power applied.

If E is the efficiency of a pump,
P „ power applied to it in foot-pounds per minute,
V „ volume of water delivered per stroke,
n „ number of strokes per minute,
H „ lift in feet from the suction to the point of delivery,

h „ head in feet absorbed by the causes mentioned above,

and w „ weight in pounds of a cubic foot of water,

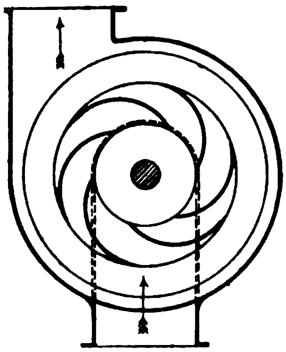
$$P = n\,V.\,w\,(H + h),$$

and
$$E = \frac{n\,V.\,w\,H}{P}$$

$$= \frac{H}{H+h}.$$

152. When large quantities of water are to be raised through a moderate lift, the centrifugal pump is conveniently employed, and, the flow of the water through it being continuous, may be driven at a high speed. It may be described as essentially a reaction turbine, which, instead of being worked by water under pressure, is rotated by mechanical power, and lifts a column of water.

Fig. 20.



To obtain the best effect, a centrifugal pump must work at the definite rate for which it has been designed. Any increase or diminution of that rate acts prejudicially upon its efficiency. The water is drawn through a suction-pipe into the centre of a rotating wheel, and, in the simplest form of the machine, is thence flung by centrifugal action into a circular chamber from which it flows directly to the delivery-pipe. In the improved type of the pump, *Fig. 20*, an inner chamber, within the pump-case, surrounds the wheel; and the water, set in motion by the curved vanes of the latter, rotates within the chamber in a free vortex. Part of the energy of this whirling motion of the water is utilised in augmenting the pressure in the pump, and its efficiency is correspondingly increased. A foot-valve is sometimes used, so that the pump may be filled with water at starting—a plug being provided in the upper part of the casing, or in the delivery-pipe, for this purpose. Starting may be also effected by exhausting the air out of the casing and the suction-pipe.

153. Let Q be the quantity of water in cubic feet per second that the pump is designed to lift; H the height of the lift in feet; r_0, b_0, are the radius and breadth respectively of the opening, in feet, at the outlet-circle (*Fig. 21*); u_0 the radial velocity of flow in feet per second at radius r_0; r_1, u_1, similar quantities at the inlet circle (*Fig. 21*);

then
$$Q = 2 \pi r_0 b_0 u_0,$$

neglecting the space occupied by the thickness of the vanes.

To find the "hydraulic efficiency" (E_H) of the pump, i. e. the efficiency if all losses arising from friction are neglected:—

If T be the torque acting on the pump; ω, the angular velocity of the pump-vanes; v_0, the velocity of whirl perpendicular to the radius at the outlet-surface from the vanes (the direction of the flow at the inlet-circle being normal to the latter, there is no velocity of whirl there); w, the weight in pounds of a cubic foot of water; and V_1 and V_0 the velocities of the pump-vanes at the inlet- and outlet-circles respectively; the work done on the pump is

$$T \omega.$$

Since the velocity of whirl at the inlet from the centre is nil,

$$T = \frac{Q w}{g} v_0 r_0$$

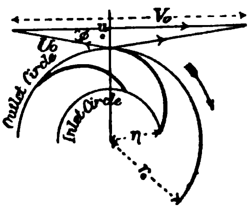
i. e. the torque equals the moment of momentum communicated to the water passing through the pump per second.

The work done by the pump is QwH.

Therefore
$$E_H = \frac{QwH}{\frac{Qw}{g} v_0 r_0 \omega}$$
$$= \frac{gH}{v_0 r_0 \omega};$$

or, since $r_0 \omega = V_0$,
$$E_H = \frac{gH}{v_0 V_0}.$$

Fig. 21.



If ϕ (*Fig. 21*) denotes the angle that the tangent to a vane at its outer end makes with the tangent to the outlet-circle at the same point, the former tangent being in the direction of water leaving the vane relatively to its motion at that point;

p_1, p_0, the pressures in pounds per square foot between a pair of vanes at their inlet- and outlet-surfaces respectively; and

U_1, U_0, the velocity of the water relatively to that of the vanes, at those points;

then
$$v_0 = V_0 - u_0 \cot \phi, \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

therefore
$$E_H = \frac{gH}{V_0(V_0 - u_0 \cot \phi)},$$

and the difference of pressure carried by the flow and the forced rotation of the vane
$$= \frac{p_0 - p_1}{w} = \frac{U_1^2 - U_0^2}{2g} + \frac{V_0^2 - V_1^2}{2g}.$$

The derivation of the first term on the right of this equation is an application of Bernoulli's theorem (§ 65), and the second term expresses the effect of the forced rotation of the water.*

Now $$U_1^2 = u_1^2 + V_1^2$$

because the flow is radial at the inlet circle,

and $$U_0 = u_0 \operatorname{cosec} \phi,$$

therefore $$\frac{p_0 - p_1}{w} = \frac{u_1^2 - u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi + V_0^2}{2g};$$

In this expression, $\frac{p_0 - p_1}{w}$, the gain of pressure in the pump, is equal to $H + \frac{u_1^2}{2g}$, the lift together with the head required to give the initial motion to the water;

therefore $$H = \frac{V_0^2 - u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi}{2g}, \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

or $$V_0 = \sqrt{(2gH + u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi)},$$

---

* If there were no flow through the pump the centripetal force on each small radial cylinder of water of length dr, i.e. the force which causes it to move in a circle, radius r, equals the difference of pressure dp on its ends, and the angular velocity ω is constant,

$$\frac{w\,dr}{g} \cdot \omega^2 r = dp;$$

but $$\omega r = V,$$

therefore $$\frac{V\,dV}{g} = \frac{dp}{w}.$$

Integrating, $$\frac{V_0^2 - V_1^2}{2g} = \frac{p_0' - p_1'}{w}.$$

and $$E_H = \frac{V_0^2 - u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi}{2 V_0 (V_0 - u_0 \cot \phi)}.$$

If ϕ is 90°, and the vanes are consequently straight,

$$E_H = \frac{V_0^2 - u_0^2}{2 V_0^2}.$$

Taking u_0 equal to $0 \cdot 25 \sqrt{2 g H}$,

$$E_H = 0 \cdot 47;$$

but as ϕ is diminished, the value of E_H correspondingly increases.

154. By the addition of a chamber partially enclosing the wheel, additional advantage is derived from the whirling motion of the water in a free vortex after it has passed through the vanes of the pump, an increased difference of pressure between the suction and delivery of the pump being obtained, the amount of which depends principally upon the outer radius R of this chamber. In a free vortex the total energy along each stream-line is constant, and the velocity varies inversely as the radius;* therefore the increased difference of pressure is

$$\frac{v_0^2 + u_0^2}{2 g}\left(1 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\right),$$

---

* In a free vortex, the total energy along each circular stream-line is the same. Therefore, differentiating Bernoulli's equation, we obtain

$$\frac{v\,d v}{g} + \frac{d p}{w} = 0; \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

and, since the centripetal force of each small radial cylinder of water of cross-section a and length $d r$ is equal to the difference of pressure $d p$ on its ends,

$$a \frac{w}{g} d r \frac{v^2}{r} = a\,d p;$$

substituting in (i.) $$\frac{d v}{v} + \frac{d r}{r} = 0.$$

Integrating $$\log v \,.\, r = \text{constant},$$

$$\text{or} \quad v \propto \frac{1}{r}.$$

which, substituting the value of v_0 (§ 153, (i.)),

$$= \frac{V_0^2 - 2\,V_0\,u_0 \cot\phi + u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2\phi}{2g}\left(1 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\right).$$

Adding this to the expression previously obtained for H (§ 153, (ii.)), the new value of E_H becomes

$$E_H = \frac{\left(2 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\right)V_0^2 - 2\left(1 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\right)V_0\,u_0 \cot\phi - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}u_0^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2\phi}{2\,V_0\,(V_0 - u_0 \cot\phi)}.$$

If ϕ is 90°, the vanes being straight,

$$E_H = \frac{\left(2 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\right)V_0^2 - \frac{r_0^2}{R^2}\cdot u_0^2}{2\,V_0^2};$$

and if $R = 2\,r_0$, $E = 0{\cdot}87$. As in the former case, when ϕ is less than 90°, as it generally is in practice, the value of E is duly increased.

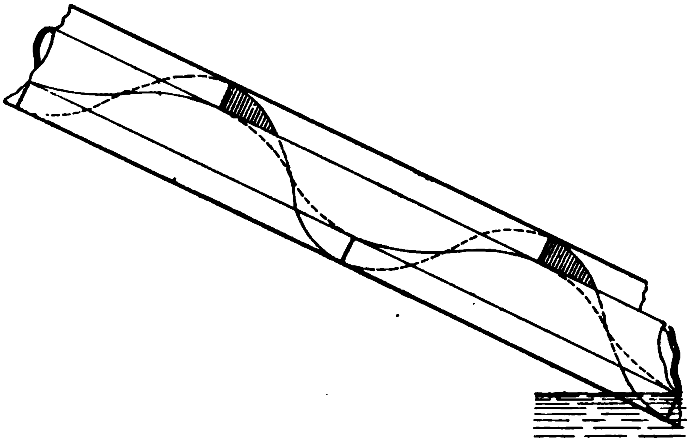
This investigation of the "hydraulic efficiency" of centrifugal pumps places the consideration of their efficiency on the same basis as that of reciprocating pumps. The losses owing to friction have still to be deducted from E_H above. Since the motion of the water in centrifugal pumps is continuous, losses corresponding with those due to variation of the motion in reciprocating pumps are absent.

155. The Archimedean-screw pump, *Fig. 22*, consists of a sheet-iron cylinder with a concentric central core. Several spirally-wound iron blades traverse the annular space thus formed. The ends of the core are carried by journals, not shown in the diagram, revolving in pedestals, the lower end being immersed in the water to be raised; the inclination of the cylinder, and its length, being regulated by the height

of the lift required. The pump is generally driven by spur- or bevel-gearing attached to the outer cylinder at its upper end, the motive power being furnished by steam, as at the Antwerp Waterworks, by water, or by wind. It is inapplicable when the water-level on the delivery side rises above the cylinder.

The following rules for the design of these pumps are due to Mr. Wilfred Airy, who has paid special attention to this machine. The quicker the spiral, the smaller should be the inclination of the machine, in order to produce the best effect. A quick spiral will lift more water than a slower one at an equal rate of revolution. The blades may be conveniently formed of continuous sheets, and in that case the machine works to the best advantage when placed so that the acute angle made by them with the core is downwards; and this angle varies with the spiral.

Fig. 22.

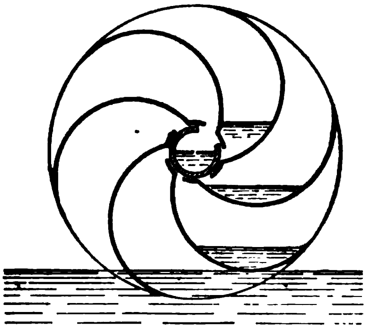


A machine of this description, 3 feet in diameter and 40 feet long, can deliver 50,000 gallons of water per hour, with a lift of 20 feet.

In Holland, this pump is made without an external case, consisting merely of a core or axis carrying a spiral blade that revolves close to a fixed semi-cylinder of masonry or wood. In this form, the leakage between the spiral and the envelope is a serious drawback, and the pump is inferior to the kind described above.

156. There are many other forms of lift-pump used for irrigation, drainage, and general purposes ; though they are frequently neither efficient nor capable of dealing with large quantities of water. Among them may be mentioned the "tympanum-wheel," "Persian wheel," "scoop-wheel" and "chain-pump."

Fig. 23.

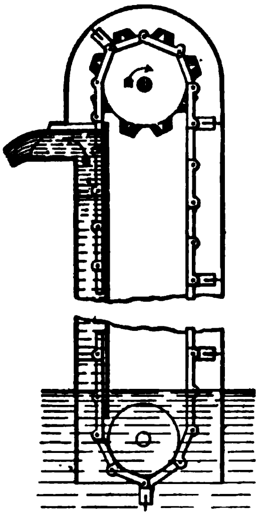


The tympanum-wheel, *Fig.* 23, raises water by the revolution of its curved radial vanes (which are closed at the sides by a pair of flat plates), from the lower part of its periphery up to the hollow axis on which it revolves. The water, rising as it follows the diminishing curvature of the vanes to the centre of the wheel, passes through an aperture in the axis corresponding successively with holes in the central part of the revolving case, and is thence delivered. This machine is frequently arranged to be driven by the flow of a stream from which it raises water, and then forms a convenient and durable, if inefficient, apparatus.

The Persian wheel, *noria* or "bucket-wheel," made up to 30 feet in diameter, carries a series of buckets, or earthenware pots, upon the circumference, so arranged as to lift water from the trough into which they dip at the bottom of the wheel, and, by various devices, to empty it at or near the top. The buckets are now commonly carried on an endless band, as was occasionally the case in ancient examples of this apparatus.

Scoop-wheels, which may be described as breast water-wheels caused to revolve backwards, are found, in the Fens of England and elsewhere, convenient for adapting wind-power to lift water a limited height. A wheel 50 feet in diameter, which is about the largest size made, will raise water about 15 feet, with a peripheral speed of 6 feet per second. They are, however, wasteful in action—slip, and the leakage between the wheel and its side-walls causing a serious loss—and are nowadays often displaced in favour of centrifugal pumps driven by steam-power.

Fig. 24.



The chain-pump, *Fig. 24*, consists of two parallel shoots, with wheels at the top and bottom, round which an endless chain passes. To the chain are attached, at intervals of 3 or 4 feet, flat plates which fit closely the shoot up which the water is raised. The power is applied to the upper wheel, the motion of the chain causing the plates to lift a continuous stream of water up the rising shoot. The chief objection to this apparatus consists in the number of its joints and working parts, but it is useful to pump gritty water or liquid mud. Although not economical in action for any but very low lifts, owing to the dead-weight of the apparatus to be moved, it is capable of working with a lift of 50 or 60 feet.

157. Among force-pumps may be noticed the "spiral pump," the "pulsometer" and the "hydraulic ram."

The spiral pump, invented by a Zurich carpenter in the middle of the 18th century, is an ingenious apparatus that has received but little attention in this country. Its employment in irrigation works abroad, and the peculiar simplicity of its action, may warrant us in giving a short description of it.

It consists in its simplest, though least effective, form, *Fig. 25*, of a cylinder or drum, round which is coiled a pipe open at one end, and terminating in a hollow journal at the other end. Into this journal passes, through a stuffing-box, a pipe that forms a rising-main, which is furnished with a foot-valve. The drum is partly immersed in a stream of water, in which it is caused to revolve by means of paddles fixed to one end of its axis. As it revolves, charges of air and water are alternately taken in by the open end of the pipe, which is trumpet-mouthed, and travel along the spiral through the hollow journal into the rising-main, up which the air at once escapes. The height to which the water can be forced by this apparatus depends upon the diameter of the drum and

Fig. 25.

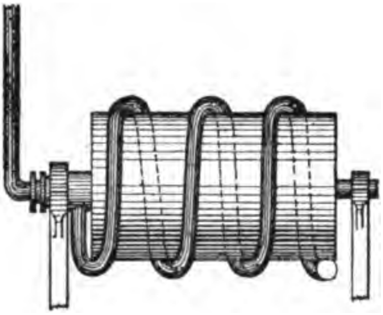
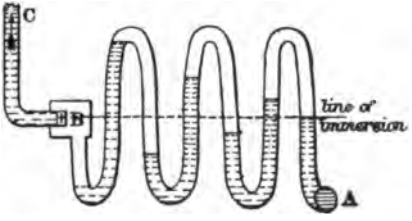


Fig. 26.



A, inlet; B, foot-valve; C, rising-main.

the number of turns in the coil of pipe. As the water advances along the spiral, its level on the forward side of the hollows is more and more depressed as the air becomes compressed to a smaller volume in its advance towards the journal, as shown in the diagram, *Fig. 26.* The pressure in the latter is consequently the sum of the differences of level of the water in each successive hollow of the spiral.

The delivery of the pump varies with the relative quantities of air and water admitted at each revolution. Owing to the volume of each charge of air diminishing in its progress through the coil, the quantity of water increases from coil to coil, and this increase, if considerable, as in the case of a machine working near to its maximum lifting capacity, is apt to cause momentary derangement of the action; although the foot-valve in the rising-main effectually prevents danger from the fall of the column of water in the latter. This difficulty is obviated when the drum round which the pipe is coiled is made conical, so that the quantity of water taken in at the mouth is, with the air, sufficient to fill the smaller coils, notwithstanding the decreasing volume of the air.

The condition of maximum efficiency then occurs when the drum is half immersed in the water, so that equal volumes of air and water are taken into the pump, and when the number of coils is such that the lower surface of the water on the forward side of the last hollow is level with the bottom of the coil, and its upper surface is level with the top of the coil, as illustrated in *Fig. 26.*

The lift H of which the machine is capable, is then found approximately from the expression

$$H = n r,$$

where r is the radius at the small end, and n the number of coils in the spiral.

To find r:

Let R be the radius of the inlet end, and L the atmospheric pressure expressed as head of water,—

Since the difference of the water-levels in the last coil is $2r$ and in the first one o, the volume of air in the last coil is proportional to

$$2\pi r - \pi R \quad \text{or} \quad \pi(2r - R).$$

And since the volume of the air in the first coil is proportional to πR, and the pressure at the inlet is L, and at the outlet $H + L$, it follows that

$$\frac{\pi(2r - R)}{\pi R} = \frac{L}{H + L},$$

or

$$r = \frac{R}{2}\left(1 + \frac{L}{H + L}\right).$$

The friction of the apparatus is small, as the drum can be floated in the water, so as to bear lightly on its journals; but the intermittent discharge of air, accompanied by a surging of the water in the rising-main, is a disadvantage, and is probably mainly responsible for the want of attention experienced by this type of pump. The loss of efficiency in the above forms of pumps is chiefly due to friction and to slip.

158. For temporary purposes, the pulsometer is a most useful pump, being driven by steam without the intervention of mechanism and capable of working suspended from a chain or rope in almost any situation. It consists of two pear-shaped vessels, inclined towards each other, and meeting at the top in a chamber in which a spherical ball in unstable equilibrium closes the neck of either one or the other vessel. Above the level of this ball-valve the steam-pipe communicates with the chamber. In the bottom of each vessel is a suction-valve, communicating with a common suction-pipe to which an air-vessel is

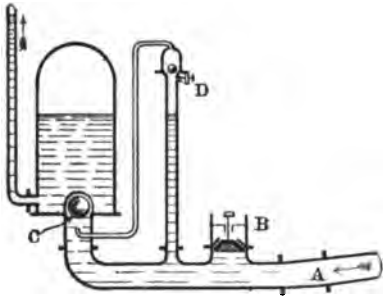
connected. Valves from both chambers open also into a common delivery-pipe.

The action is as follows: the vessels are at starting filled with water through plug-holes; steam is then admitted into the valve-chamber, and passes into the vessel left open by the ball, forcing the water in it down to the level of the delivery-valve, when a little steam blows violently through the water into the delivery-pipe. Instantaneous condensation takes place, and a vacuum is consequently formed in the vessel. This causes the ball-valve at the top to be forced over, shutting off the steam-connection with this vessel, when condensation is completed, water meanwhile entering the vessel through the suction-valve. The other vessel is now open to the steam-supply, and exactly the same cycle of operations takes place in it, the action proceeding in the two vessels alternately, as long as steam is supplied to them. The consumption of steam in this pump may be greatly reduced (though the quantity of water pumped with a pulsometer of given size is also reduced) by the addition of a "Grel" valve, which causes a secondary cut-off and produces expansive use of the steam.

159. The hydraulic ram employs the momentum of some considerable body of water, having a slight fall, to elevate a small quantity of it to a comparatively great height. This apparatus is shown diagrammatically in *Fig. 27*. It consists of a strong main pipe laid at such an inclination as is available, and connected at its upper extremity with the stream or reservoir whose water is to be utilised. Near the lower end of the main pipe, it is provided with a waste-valve of large area, opening inwards, and at its extremity is a small delivery-valve opening outwards and communicating with an air-vessel, from the bottom of which the delivery-pipe ascends to the tank or

cistern into which the water is to be pumped. Between the waste- and the delivery-valve is a small branch pipe furnished with a reflux-valve at the top, and, on the lower side of this, with a "snifting-valve," or fine orifice the area of which can be varied by a screw-plug. Connection is made by a small tube between the upper side of this reflux-valve and the lower side of the delivery-valve.

Fig. 27.



A, main supply-pipe; B, waste-valve; C, delivery-valve; D, snifting-valve; E, delivery-pipe.

When the ram is in action, the main pipe is supplied with water, which issues freely through the open waste-valve until the velocity of its motion is sufficient to raise and close this valve. The body of water then in motion in the pipe being quickly arrested, its impulse causes the delivery-valve to open and a small quantity of water to be forced into the air-vessel. Simultaneously, the air in the branch pipe is, notwithstanding a small loss through the snifting-valve, so compressed as to raise the reflux-valve momentarily—when a discharge of air takes place through the delivery-valve into the air-vessel. The effect of the impulse or "ram" of the water having subsided with a slight rebound, due to the elastic nature of the resistances that have contributed to check its motion, the pressure in the main pipe falls, the waste-valve opens again, and the water falling in the small branch pipe sucks in a fresh charge of air through the snifting-valve.

The object of the air-pump arrangement afforded by the branch pipe and the reflux- and snifting-valve, is to automatically replenish the main air-vessel—an important feature of the apparatus, especially with high lifts. It will be readily understood that a machine acting by a series of violent impulses must, in any case, be somewhat limited in its application; and this form of pump (the illustration is to be regarded as diagrammatical only) is, where used, restricted to comparatively small supplies.

By the introduction of a cylinder and piston, with suitable valves, between the working-barrel or main pipe of the ram and the delivery pipe, a large stream of impure water may be utilised to pump a small quantity of pure water from an adjacent source.

The efficiency of hydraulic rams is affected principally by the water necessarily lost through the waste-valves, by friction in both the supply- and the delivery-pipes, by the resistance at the valves, and by the distention of the apparatus under the high pressures that occur when the waste-valves close. If H is the height of the upper end of the supply-pipe above the waste-valve, h the height at which the water is delivered, Q the rate of supply and q that of delivery; and if H_0, h_0 and h_1 denote the head lost by the resistances in the supply-pipe, delivery-pipe and at the waste-valve, respectively,

$$Q(H - H_0) = q(h + h_0) + (Q - q)h_1,$$

or

$$Q(H - H_0 - h_1) = q(h + h_0 - h_1);$$

that is,

$$\frac{q}{Q} = \frac{H - H_0 - h_1}{h + h_0 - h_1}.$$

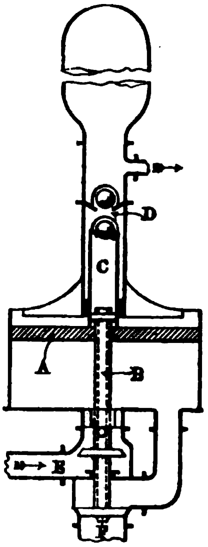
In practice, h_1 may be expected to be about $\frac{H - H_0}{4}$.

Taking an example, if $Q = 328{,}000$ gallons per day, $H - H_0 = 32$ feet and $h + h_0 = 175$ feet, then

$$q = 328{,}000 \times \frac{32 - 8}{175 - 8} = 47{,}000 \text{ gallons per day.}$$

160. The hydraulic pressure-pump, *Fig. 28*, possesses many of the advantages of the hydraulic ram, and is free from the objectionably violent action of the latter. By its use, a large quantity of water under a small head, flowing slowly through a supply-pipe, may be caused to steadily raise a small portion of the water to a high level. A vertical cylinder of large diameter, open at the top, supports on radial brackets a smaller cylinder surmounted by a valve opening upwards into an air-vessel. The delivery-pipe leads from the bottom of the air-vessel in the usual way. Through a piston that works in the large cylinder, passes a hollow piston-rod capable of a small range of motion, fitting a hollow plunger attached to the main piston, and furnished at the top with a ball-valve opening upwards. This hollow plunger works in the small upper cylinder. The inlet- and the outlet-valve of the main cylinder, situated under its centre, are opened and closed by disks on the piston-rod. A lateral orifice in the latter affords communication between the water under pressure in the inlet-pipe and the hollow plunger.

Fig. 28.



A, main piston;
B, hollow piston-rod;
C, hollow plunger;
D, upper cylinder;
E, supply-pipe;
F, outlet-valve.

This orifice and the main inlet- or supply-pipe being open, the piston is raised, and with it the plunger, forcing water with considerable power out of the small upper cylinder into the air-vessel and delivery-main, and drawing water through the piston-rod into the hollow plunger. Near the top of its stroke the piston engages with a collar on the piston-rod, raising the latter so as to close the inlet-valve, open the outlet-valve, and simultaneously to cover the orifice behind a fixed collar through which the piston-rod slides. The main piston then sinks as the water beneath it escapes through the outlet-valve, and as it descends the piston-rod displaces water from inside the plunger into the cylinder above. As the piston reaches the bottom of its stroke, it moves the piston-rod down, so reversing the valves ready for the next stroke of the piston. By duplicating the cylinders, the pump may be caused to deliver water both steadily and continuously.

161. A review of the apparatus employed for raising water almost necessarily involves reference to steam-engines and other prime movers. Although mechanical contrivances in detail are outside the scope of this treatise, the general conditions of efficiency of certain steam-engines employed for pumping, and the methods according to which it is estimated will be discussed briefly. In order to render the matter intelligible, the general principles of action of the several types of engine will be first sketched; though for a clear comprehension of it, their structure should form a subject of special study.

The expansive working of steam-engines that are used to drive pumping-machinery, introduced for economical reasons, obviously gives rise to the condition that the power applied by the piston at each point of its stroke generally differs considerably from that required at the same instant to work the pumps, assuming uniformity in the delivery of the latter (§ 146).

There are three methods commonly practised for overcoming this, and equalising the effort exerted upon the pump to the resistance of the latter:—

(1) By the use of an oscillating beam, or a rotating fly-wheel, which, by increased momentum during the portion

of the stroke at which the power developed exceeds that required by the pumps, accumulate energy that is restored when the power exerted by the piston falls below the average, as in the Cornish or the ordinary rotative pumping-engines. (2) By so arranging the steam-cylinders, and linking the pumps together, that, with the momentum of the moving parts, the effort of the pistons equals at each moment the resistance of the pumps, as in the Davey engine. (3) By causing the excess of the effort of the pistons in the early part of the stroke either to compress air, or to pump water into an accumulator, stand-pipe, or pressure-main. The energy thus stored supplements that of the steam during the latter part of the stroke of the piston, as in the Worthington type of engine.

162. Of single-cylinder engines, the old Cornish beam-engine, in which steam is admitted on one side of the piston only, is still the most economical for the range of expansion employed in it. Cornish engines are of two kinds: beam and direct-acting. In the beam-engine the steam is admitted above the piston. The piston-rod is connected with one end of a stiff iron or steel beam of considerable weight, the pump-rods being attached to the other end. The weight of the rods is sufficient to perform the "out-doors" or up-stroke of the piston. No fly-wheel is employed, and the engine cannot be governed in the ordinary way. The steam-, equilibrium- and exhaust-valves are double-beat, worked by tappets. The rate of working is governed by a cataract, which regulates the opening of the valves.*

163. The direct-acting, or "Bull," engine is constructed so that the pump-rods form a prolongation of the piston-rod, and the steam is admitted below instead of above the

---

* For a description of the cataract, *vide* Downing, 'Elements of Practical Hydraulics,' p. 169—London, 1875.

piston as in the beam-engine. The arrangement of both engines is such that the steam side of the piston is never open to the exhaust; consequently, that part of the cylinder and piston is but slightly cooled at each stroke. This circumstance accounts for the fact already mentioned, that, for the same range of expansion, a Cornish engine is more economical than any other single-cylinder type. The "duty" of a good Cornish engine and pump may be expected to reach 90,000,000 foot-pounds for one hundredweight of good steam coal consumed in the boiler-grates.*

164. Compound engines are either of the "Woolf" type, in which the exhaust-steam from the high-pressure passes directly into the low-pressure cylinder, or of the "receiver" type, in which the high-pressure cylinder is exhausted into an intermediate receiver before being used in the low-pressure cylinder.

165. In the rotative beam-engine, which is furnished with a fly-wheel driven by a connecting-rod directly from one end of the beam to the other end of which the connecting-rods of the two pistons are attached, the points of attachment of the latter, the main pump or pumps, the air-pump and the circulating-pump to the beam may vary considerably. An object that must be kept in view, is the reduction of the stresses in the beam and of the resultant pressure on the gudgeons that carry it, to a minimum. By prolonging the piston-rod of either the high-pressure or the low-pressure cylinder through the bottom cover to work a pump beneath, the gudgeons may be relieved of considerable pressure, and the stresses in the beam may be reduced. A similar result may be effected, though in a less degree, by connecting an auxiliary pump with the cylinder side of

---

* The duty of pumping-engines is expressed by the product of the weight in pounds of the water raised by the pumps, into the height in feet to which it is lifted, resulting from the consumption of a given quantity of coal in the grates of the boilers that supply the steam (§ 173).

the beam. An "entablature," or horizontal iron frame supporting the beam, is either built into the walls of the house, or is carried by columns. In the latter case, in addition to the columns, vertical A-frames are introduced beneath the gudgeons to resist the longitudinal thrust. This arrangement, whilst increasing the cost of the engines, reduces somewhat that of the engine-house. The cylinders are bolted directly to the bed-plate, which may span the well.

166. The beam-engine permits of a long stroke and a high piston-speed in the steam-cylinders, whilst at the same time a shorter stroke and lower speed may be given to the pumps; and in pumping from deep wells it is a most serviceable form of engine. It is easily balanced, and affords facilities for working more than one pump from the beam. In common with the type of engine to be next described, it possesses the advantage that all the bearings can be kept tight by adjusting the brasses in a vertical direction only. The cylinders and pistons tend in working to preserve their circular shape, lubrication acts uniformly round their circumference, and they are easily kept free from internal moisture. This form of engine may conveniently work up to 25 revolutions per minute, according to the length of the pump-rods and the size of the pump-valves.

167. The vertical direct-acting rotative engine may frequently be well employed when only one main pump is required. The cylinders, compound or triple expansion, are placed vertically over one another, their common piston-rod being prolonged downwards to work the pump, transmitting the steam-pressure directly to the plunger and, by a connecting-rod to the fly-wheel. The number of working parts and the weight are thus considerably diminished below those of the beam-engine; and it may be run at a higher speed than the latter—to 30 revolutions per minute.

The engine-frame is independent of the house, and the area required for it is very small. Up to 100 horse-power, there is no difficulty in equalising the effort to the work by means of a fly-wheel; but in larger sizes, a small beam may be usefully added, from which the auxiliary pumps are conveniently driven.

168. When the depth of suction admits of the employment of a horizontal engine having the pump in line with it, the horizontal rotative engine forms the cheapest and simplest machine of its class. If, however, the use of a horizontal engine involves an approach to 30 feet depth of suction, it is often unsuitable for the purpose, as this condition is disadvantageous to the easy working of large engines. A convenient arrangement is afforded by each piston actuating a separate crank on the same shaft, having its own main pump in line with it. An air-pump for the condenser, and in certain cases a circulating-pump, are worked from the tail-rods of the main pumps. An expansion-valve, adjustable by hand, on the low-pressure cylinder, enables the work done upon both pumps to be equalised, a second expansion-valve being provided for the high-pressure cylinder, and regulated by a governor.

In raising water from deep wells, vertical pumps are frequently worked from horizontal engines by means of rocking-levers, at the expense, of course, of some additional loss of power in friction. The horizontal engine requires little head-room, but considerable floor-space.

169. The Davey engine is made in various forms. Its objects are to use steam expansively whilst doing a constant amount of work, and, by differential valve-gearing, to adjust its action to sudden variations of load, should such occur.

The first object is attained as in Cornish engines: (1) by taking advantage of the momentum of the pump-rods or, if these are short, that of a moving weight or an oscillating disk ; or (2) by suitably arranging the steam-cylinders, and coupling the pistons by a rocking-frame, to the pumps they work, so that the velocity of the pump pistons is greater than that of the steam pistons for the first part of the stroke, and less for the latter part.

The former arrangement is chiefly used in pumping-engines that drain mines, where the pump-rods possess considerable inertia. In the latter arrangement, the rocking-frame forms a varying lever by means of which the resistance of the pumps is caused to admit of a higher degree of expansion than would be possible in employing the inertia of the pump-plungers alone. The mechanical principles alluded to are embodied in simple, compound and triple engines. In the compound engines, the cylinders are placed horizontally, vertically or inclined to one another, as may be required to suit the varying conditions met with in practice.

The second form of this engine may be either simple or duplex ; in the latter case one engine begins its stroke before that of the other is completed. The high- and low-pressure cylinders form one chamber, the piston of the former being connected with that of the latter, which is vertically above it, by a trunk of its own diameter. The pumps are actuated directly by the piston-rods, the pump-plungers being connected together by means of a rocking-frame. Both pistons being at the beginning of their stroke simultaneously, steam is admitted under the high-pressure piston, and is, after cut-off, expanded into the annular space around the trunk in the lower part of the other low-pressure cylinder. The up-stroke being completed, the steam is transferred to the upper side of the low-pressure piston, when the down-stroke is effected by a third expansion. The expansion-valves of the steam-cylinders are connected by levers with the rocking-frame, and the main-valves are worked from the piston of an auxiliary steam-cylinder, uniformity of motion being ensured by a cataract.

The effect of gearing the valves in this manner is that if the engines suddenly lose their load, and the pistons begin to race, the motion of the expansion-valves soon attains the same phase as that communicated to the main valves from the uniform movement of the auxiliary piston. The steam is consequently cut off earlier in the stroke, and the piston-speed is reduced to its normal value. If, on the other hand, an additional load is suddenly thrown upon the engines, the pistons commence moving more slowly, and the motion communicated from the pistons to the expansion-valves takes longer to attain the same phase as that of the main valves. Consequently the cut-off is delayed, and the piston-speed is thus restored to its former amount. This form of regulation, affecting the cut-off in both the high- and low-pressure cylinders, is more reliable and rapid in action than that of a governor regulating the point of cut-off in the high-pressure cylinder only.

By a recent arrangement of the differential gear, in addition to cutting off steam from both cylinders when the engines race, the exhaust-valve from the high-pressure cylinder is closed.

The Davey engine combines the advantage of a high rate of expansion with perfect safety in the event of a pump breaking down, or of a burst occurring in the delivery-main.

170. The Worthington direct-acting engine possesses the great advantage of working with a ratio of expansion as high as that of any type of rotative engine, at the same time exerting a uniform pressure upon the pump-plunger.

It consists of two similar engines side by side, the motion of one engine actuating the valves of the other.

Expansion-valves on both the high- and low-pressure cylinders are actuated by the engine to which they belong. The main valves are of the Corliss type. Two of these on the high-pressure cylinders serve for both inlet and exhaust. The low-pressure cylinders are each provided with two inlet- and two exhaust-valves. The ratio of expansion is variable by hand.

The pumps are bolted to the bed-plate, but the steam-cylinders are left free to move lengthwise as change of temperature may require. The former are worked by the piston-rods of the engines, and each pump consists of a chamber divided by a transverse partition, in the middle of which is a collar, through which a solid plunger works. Numerous small inlet- and outlet-valves are formed in the chamber-wall, on both sides of the partition.

At the end of each stroke a pause occurs, to allow the pump-valves to close before the commencement of the next stroke, by which action "slip" through them is prevented. There is no fly-wheel, and the pressure exerted by the engines is rendered uniform by means of compensating-cylinders in the following manner. The high- and low-pressure cylinders are arranged for such an expansion that the excess of their combined pressure in the first half of the stroke above the mean pressure, is equal to the defect in the second half of the stroke below it. Two oscillating cylinders are placed, facing one another, one on each side of the piston-rod, with their trunnions at right-angles to it and attached to the main framing. The piston-rods of these cylinders are connected with a sleeve on the main piston-rod. When the latter is at half-stroke, the compensating (oscillating) cylinders are at right-angles to it. During the first half of the stroke of the engines, water is forced into an accumulator or against air-pressure by the pistons of these cylinders, and the energy thus stored is given back in the second half of the stroke. The size of the compensating-cylinders, and the pressure of the water in them, is arranged so that the work done in the first half of the stroke, and returned in the second half, is equal to the excess and defect respectively of the combined work of the high- and low-pressure cylinders above and below the mean, in the first and second halves of the stroke of the main piston. For waterworks purposes, the pressure in the compensating-cylinders may be adjusted by suitable devices to the varying head of water against which the engines are pumping.

171. All the engines mentioned are worked with either jet-evaporative or surface-condensers. It is now a common practice in the latter case to allow water from the main pump to pass through the condenser. The temperature of the water is but slightly raised thereby, and a circulating-pump is dispensed with.

172. The generation of steam for pumping-engines is a subject with which we are only incidentally concerned, because, in the remarks which we propose to offer on the testing of such engines, their efficiency is measured in relation to the heat contained in the steam consumed by them, and is thus separated from the question of the efficiency of steam-generators. The latter efficiency is the ratio of the heat units imparted to the steam generated to the number of heat units in the fuel burnt.

173. The thermal efficiency of a steam-engine* may be defined as the ratio between the heat utilised as work on the pistons and the heat supplied to the engine; the latter being taken as the number of thermal units of heat in the steam supplied minus the number of thermal units in an equal weight of water at the temperature of the

---

* Report of the Committee on the Thermal Efficiency of Steam-Engines, Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. cxxxiv. p. 296.

steam exhausted from the engine. But if steam-jackets are used, and the condensation from them is returned to the boiler, the actual sensible heat of that water is subtracted.

To distinguish the efficiency of the engine from that of the boiler which supplies it with steam, the number of thermal units consumed by the engine must be measured, as well as that in the fuel consumed in the boiler-grates, and the indicated work of the engine.

As the total heat contained in a pound of dry steam does not vary greatly through the ordinary range of pressures, the number of pounds of dry steam required to develop one-horse power in the cylinders may be regarded as an approximate measure for the comparison of the efficiencies of engines.*

To determine the efficiency of engine and boiler, indicator-diagrams, showing the power developed in the cylinders, are taken at intervals of ½ hour during the period of the trial, the quantity of feed-water and its temperature are measured—the boiler-pressure, the temperature and dryness fraction of the steam just before entering the high-pressure cylinder, and its temperature just after leaving the low-pressure cylinder, being also observed, and the fuel burnt weighed. These observations afford the necessary data for calculating the number of thermal units communicated to the engine for each horse-power developed in the cylinders, as well as the evaporative effect of the boiler per pound of coal burnt—a method of engine testing which was initiated by Mr. G. A. Hirn.†

---

* It need scarcely be mentioned that the mechanical efficiency of an engine is the inverse ratio which its cylinder-power bears to the power developed by its driving-shaft or other motive agent; and that the efficiency of a pump driven by it, is the inverse ratio borne by this latter quantity to the work done, as measured by the product of the water raised into the actual lift of the pump.

† Hirn, 'Exposition Analytique et Expérimentale de la Théorie Mécanique de la Chaleur'—Paris, 1862, and later editions.

174. Where possible, the amount of heat rejected from the engine should be ascertained as a check upon the heat supplied to it by the boiler, for the heat supplied to an engine equals the work done expressed in thermal units, together with the heat rejected.

Where boilers supply steam to more engines than that under test, or for other purposes, and such supplies cannot be separated, the measurement of the heat rejected added to the indicated work affords the only means of finding the total heat supplied to the engine.

175. The point of cut-off, and the steam-pressures at admission to and exhaust from the cylinders are carefully measured and averaged whilst the indicator-diagrams are taken. In a paper read by Dr. A. W. Brightmore in 1885,* it was shown that the effect of the use of a flexible cord to give motion to the drum of the indicator is to distort the diagrams. This effect may be avoided by the use of a steel wire. To ensure accurate results, the springs of the indicator should be carefully tested, both for pressure and vacuum, before being used. The areas of indicator diagrams are best measured by a planimeter, and the average of all those obtained during the trial is taken.

176. The feed-water to the boilers is measured into the tanks from which the boilers are supplied, and the quantity of water in the boiler is, at the conclusion of the trial, left the same as it was at the beginning. When convenient, the water from the steam-main is collected in buckets, in order to give an idea of the amount of priming that takes place; but it is generally arranged for this water to drain back to the boiler.

An estimation of the heat rejected in the exhaust is more easily arrived at by ascertaining the discharge from the air-pump than by measuring the amount of the injection-water. The former quantity is therefore usually measured, and is best done by causing the water to pass through one or more orifices, any variation in the head above these being recorded. The calculations applicable to the discharge of such orifices (§ 80) should be checked by actual experiment if very accurate results are desired; as slight differences in their mechanical finish may exert a considerable effect upon their discharge.

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxxiii. p. 20.

The weight of the total discharge of water thus found is equal to that of the steam passing through the cylinders, together with the injection-water.

177. The heat rejected is equal to the product of the weight in pounds of steam passing through the cylinders into the number of thermal units due to the temperature of the air-pump discharge, and the weight of the injection-water multiplied by the number of thermal units due to its rise of temperature in the condenser. As the specific heat does not vary much between these temperatures, the differences in the latter may be taken as the multipliers.

178. Since the air-pump abstracts air which escapes laden with moisture at the temperature of the hot-well, a certain amount of heat is lost in this manner and is not registered; however, in carefully conducted experiments, the measurement of the heat rejected should coincide with the difference between the heat supplied and the work done, within at most 5 per cent. The heat rejected in the exhaust cannot be calculated in the above manner if a surface-condenser is used.

The steam that condenses in the jackets is collected in suitable vessels, the drain-cocks being open as far as possible without letting the steam blow through. The heat returned to the boiler when this water is conducted back again equals the weight of water collected, multiplied by the number of thermal units corresponding with its temperature.

The radiation from the cylinders is found by turning steam into the jackets and cylinders, when the engines are standing, and measuring the condensation in the jackets during a period of several hours. The weight of this water, multiplied by the latent heat of evaporation at the temperature of the steam, equals approximately the heat lost by radiation during this time.

179. It thus appears that the heat supplied to an engine is equal to the weight in pounds of dry steam supplied to it, multiplied by the number of thermal units added to one pound of dry steam between 32° F. and the temperature corresponding with the boiler-pressure. This is also equal to the work done in the cylinders of the engine expressed in thermal units, together with the heat rejected into the condenser above the temperature 32° F., the loss of heat due to condensation in the steam-jackets and the loss by radiation.

From these relations, the objects to be sought in an investigation of the efficiency of a pumping-engine are at once apparent; and the foregoing outline of the methods adopted to determine the several elements of the question may, whilst it does not pretend to be exhaustive, serve to place before the reader a concise summary of the operations involved in it.

180. The mechanical efficiency of well-constructed engines of the types discussed in the foregoing sections ranges as high as 90 per cent., and it may be expected (§ 151) that an efficiency of 95 per cent. should be obtained in the pumps driven by them. The "duty" of the entire pumping-plant frequently attains 120,000,000 foot-pounds to 130,000,000 foot-pounds (water lifted) for each hundredweight of good steam coal consumed in the boiler-grates.

A very simple expression for the work done on the pistons of an engine in a given time is $C \times (T_a - T_e) \times W$ foot-pounds.

Where C is a constant which may be found for any particular engine, it averages 600 for condensing engines without superheat.

T_a is the temperature of saturated steam corresponding with the average pressure of admission, and T_e the average temperature of the steam on the condenser side of the exhaust valve, during the given time, in degrees Fahrenheit.

W is the weight of steam in pounds supplied to the engine in the given time.

By comparing this result with the work done in lifting the water during the same time a check on the efficient working of the engine is obtained.

181. Besides steam, pumping-engines are, under special circumstances, driven by power derived from water under pressure or in motion under gravity, from the combustion of gas or oil, and from the wind.

As explained in § 65, Bernoulli's theorem

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} + \frac{p}{w} + h = H$$

represents the total energy along any stream-line, and the various forms of hydraulic motors utilise the energy of water as expressed by one or more terms of this equation.

182. When water available for motive purposes exists under a head of more than 200 feet, water-pressure engines are generally found to be suitable forms of motor, the energy being utilised as expressed by the second term of the equation; as is also the case in the hydraulic-pressure pump (§ 160).

Under more moderate heads, turbines afford an economical means of utilising the energy of the water; or, if the head does not exceed 50 feet, overshot water-wheels utilise the energy of the water in the form expressed by the first term of the equation, as do turbines if of the "impulse" type (which are most applicable when the supply of water is variable); and in that given by the first and second terms, if of the re-action type. When the head does not exceed 6 feet, the undershot water-wheel forms a good water-motor, the energy of the water being utilised in the forms expressed by the first and third terms of the equation—chiefly the former. The hydraulic ram, which is at once a pump and a motor, utilises the energy of water as expressed by the first term of the equation, after having converted it into the form expressed by the second term.

Unfortunately, it seldom happens that a satisfactory source of water-power is available in the positions required for pumping-works, and we do not propose to further discuss the theory or application of this form of motive power.

Gas and other internal-combustion engines, though of considerable importance in this connection, hardly call for special treatment.

183. Motive power derived from the wind is extensively used in pumping for drainage and irrigation purposes, and may sometimes be usefully employed in village water-supply works. In pumping for drainage purposes, owing to the sub-soil forming a natural reservoir, wind-power is usefully employed to lower the water-level when it happens to be available, but for the remainder of the time the surface of saturation gradually rises in the ground. When employed in connection with the water-supply of small districts, unless supplemented by steam or other power, it requires storage-tanks to ensure continuance of the supply when there is no wind; and it must generally be regarded as an unreliable, if economical, source of power for such an important function as that of raising water for domestic use.

CHAPTER IV.

THE STORAGE OF WATER.

184. IN storing water for ordinary purposes of supply it generally happens that two somewhat opposite conditions have to be satisfied. On the one hand, it is frequently required that a fluctuating quantity of water yielded by the inconstant sources in nature shall be so averaged as to satisfy the more regular requirements of civil life; whilst, on the other hand, a steady and uniform supply has to be adapted to meet the periodic variations of domestic and industrial consumption.

In waterworks that are dependent directly upon rainfall collected on comparatively small catchment-areas, provision must be made to afford supplies that are to a large extent independent of the variable yield of water which is the result of meteorological phenomena—cyclical or erratic; whereas, in those which draw supplies from great rivers or lakes, or from the extensive water-bearing formations of the earth's crust, such provision has not to be specially contemplated, because it is afforded naturally. But either class of works is seldom adapted to effect its object without some arrangement by which the extreme diurnal variation of consumption may be met by a comparatively constant delivery of water at or near the place of its distribution.

185. The first-mentioned requirement is satisfied by the formation of "impounding-reservoirs," the office of which is to gather the irregular natural yield of surface-water, in

order that it may be supplied at a uniform rate; the second is met by the construction of "service-reservoirs," tanks and cisterns, from which water is distributed as required by the hourly demands of consumers. Another important function of storage-reservoirs is to render possible a constant supply of compensation-water (§ 34) to the streams affected by the waterworks to whose service they have been converted. And it is to be remarked that such streams derive no inconsiderable advantage from the mitigation of their floods, brought about by the impounding of the water required to fill and raise the level of the broad expanse of the reservoirs—an action that is operative even when the latter are brim-full.

An efficient and economical reservoir must be capable of maintaining a fair balance between the demand for and supply of water during any given period of time, and yet must not exceed the minimum size necessary to effect this object, if such additional size entails increased cost in construction. The capacity of reservoirs is therefore a vital and elementary question of every scheme of water-supply. Where the requisite data are available, it becomes a mere mathematical matter; although it frequently happens that the experience and judgment of the engineer must be exercised in the preparation or selection of such data, to an extent that can only be fully realised by those who have engaged in the operation.

186. The absolute necessity for an impounding-reservoir, as part of a waterworks, arises when the rate of consumption during some part of the year is higher than the natural yield of the source of supply. The condition to be fulfilled is that the surplus water yielded during periods of excessive rain or flood shall be retained and utilised to supply such natural deficiency in times of drought. How much of this surplus is to be thus retained depends entirely upon the

exigencies of each particular case. Hence the proper capacity for the reservoir is governed by the relation that subsists between the natural yield of the source and the rate of consumption of the water. The latter of these two elements is given by the specified conditions of the water supply in question—whether estimated upon the basis of population and domestic requirements, or upon that of power required, or compensation, or lockage in the case of canal-supply, or the requirements of irrigation, or other disposal of the water for industrial purposes, as the case may be.

The former element is directly ascertained by gauging the flow of water off the area or in the river under consideration, or is inferred approximately from the rainfall, according to the methods explained in §§ 61, 62.

187. The office of the impounding-reservoir being, broadly speaking, to store up water in times of plenty and to dole it out in seasons of deficiency, it might appear that the requirements of any particular case would be met by making the reservoir of capacity sufficient to ensure the maintenance of the usual daily supply during the longest drought that experience might lead us to apprehend. When, however, it is considered that prolonged periods of alternate drought and flood may occur, in which the successive spells of drought, although not individually of remarkable duration, may, in the aggregate, far outweigh the shorter alternate spells of wet weather, it becomes obvious that any single term of dry weather does not form a sufficient basis to proceed upon in designing the capacity of the reservoir-accommodation. Further, as either the whole, or only a part, of the absolute yield of the catchment-area may be wanted to maintain the supply, it is evident that any rules for guidance in this matter must, in order to be generally applicable, take into account, not

only the physical conditions that affect the amount and periodic variations of the yield of water, but also the conditions under which the supply is to be drawn.*

188. Empirical formulæ have been suggested for determining the storage-capacity required for a given supply from a knowledge of the mean rainfall of three consecutive dry years, without reference to the rate of supply provided or the actual fluctuations of the yield—though probably on the assumption that all the available water except that of great floods should be stored. The application of such formulæ must, however, be very limited, or must involve re-determination of the constants in order to suit variation of either meteorological conditions, or the geological nature of the district under consideration, or the rate of supply.

E.g. an approximate formula for use in this country is

$$C = \frac{1000}{\sqrt{\text{mean rainfall of 3 dry years, in inches}}}$$

where C is the number of days' storage required. And, in this connection, it may be noticed that the actual storage provided in the waterworks of Liverpool, Manchester, Dublin and Edinburgh differs from the figures deduced by this rule between 10 and 30 per cent.

189. The great expense incurred in the formation of reservoirs, and the important nature of their duties, renders it imperative alike in the interests of economy and sanitary efficiency that their storage-capacity should be made the subject of careful inquiry as a preliminary step towards their design. The most satisfactory data upon which to proceed is a long series of measurements of the yield of the source in question. In the absence of such data, recourse may be had to an estimation of the yield during three consecutive dry years, one of which should be a phenomenally

---

* Compare Rankine, 'Civil Engineering,' 10th edition, p. 700.

dry one. In forming this estimate from rainfall statistics, it is highly necessary to consider the geological character of the district, and how far it may of itself obviate the necessity for artificial storage, by equalising the dry-weather and wet-weather flow of the streams. It would be tedious to enter into a disquisition upon all the various observations which, under different circumstances, would lend aid to this inquiry. Much follows directly from the application of the principles treated in Chapter II. The remainder must be left to the practical knowledge gained by the engineer in other catchment-areas.

190. Could both the yield from the source, and the desired supply, be expressed as periodic functions of the time, the question would admit of easy algebraical treatment. The generally erratic character of the yield, however, renders it more convenient to deal with it by graphic analysis. Several processes are in use for this purpose.* The following solution of the question was communicated in 1891 to the Liverpool Engineering Society: †—

Having ascertained the monthly increments of both yield and supply during the period under examination—expressed either as available rainfall in inches, or as an actual quantity of water measured in cubic feet—from the addition of these quantities form two series, giving respectively the total yield and the total desired supply up to the end of every month, from the commencement of the period.

Plot these series of figures as ordinates upon a diagram, *Fig. 29*, using the corresponding time, in months, as abscissæ plotted along OX, so that the ordinate at any epoch measures the total yield, or supply, as the case may be, during the period then terminating.

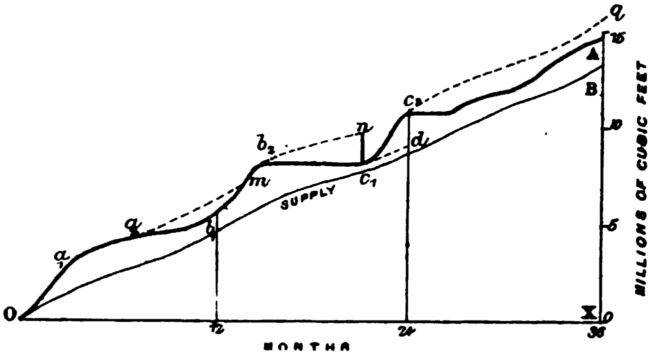
* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxi. p. 270.

† Trans. Liverpool Eng. Soc., vol. xiii. p. 53.

Through the upper extremities of the two sets of ordinates, draw two curves *OA*, *OB*, which may be termed curves of "yield" and "supply," respectively.

From the construction, it is evident that the inclination of either curve to the horizontal axis, at any point, measures

Fig. 29.



the rate of increase of the quantity symbolised by the curve considered. Where, as at $a_1\, a_2$, the "yield" curve runs exactly parallel to the "supply" curve, the yield from the catchment-area just equals the supply.

Where, as at $b_1\, b_2$, $c_1\, c_2$, the yield curve is more highly inclined than the supply curve, the quantity of water contributed from the source is in excess of the consumption; and, if there be storage-room available, this excess may be impounded. Where, as at $a_2 b_1$, $b_2 c_1$, the inclination of the yield-curve is less than that of the supply-curve, the rate of supply exceeds the rate of yield; and the storage-reservoir must be losing water, in order to meet the draught on the mains for supply purposes.

If, now, lines $a_2 m$, $b_2 n$, $c_2 q$, parallel to the supply-curve, be drawn touching the yield-curve at the culminating points (points of inflexion) a_2, b_2, c_2, the total amount of such loss from the reservoir is at any time measured by the difference between the ordinate of the curve OA and that of the parallel curves a_2m, b_2n, c_2q, at the same point; and the loss is greatest where this difference is found to be greatest.

This maximum difference, which is the object of the investigation, can be readily found by simple inspection of the diagram, and is c_1n, at the point c_1, in the example presented in *Fig. 29.* The amount of this difference, in whatever units it may have been expressed for convenience of plotting, is the absolute storage-capacity required to balance the yield and supply, in any period similar to the one investigated.

In this example, the quantity is 2×10^6 cubic feet; whence, the total supply being 4,500,000 cubic feet per annum, the required storage-capacity is

$$\frac{\dfrac{2 \times 10^6}{1}}{\dfrac{4.5 \times 10^6}{365}} = 162 \text{ average days' supply.}$$

191. The diagram, *Fig. 29*, shows also the storage-capacity required, to utilise to the utmost extent the yield during the period considered, at a constant rate of supply—an important matter in schemes for the utilisation of water-power.

Suppose the rate of supply to be such that the greatest depression nc_1 of the curve OA below the tangential lines, becomes exactly equal to its greatest altitude c_2d above the supply-curve. Then the latter attains a higher inclination, as indicated by the short dotted length c_1d, and either of these equal quantities measures the necessary storage-capacity to utilise all the available water in the epoch considered. For nc_1, being equal to c_2d, the reservoir would be, although full at c_2, emptied at c_1; and no greater rate of supply could be maintained, notwithstanding that the aggregate yield $A X$ during the period under review exceeds the aggregate supply $B X$. Hence the quantity measured by $n c_1$ or $c_2 d$ is the storage-capacity required to utilise the yield to the fullest extent, at the constant rate of supply indicated by the dotted supply-curve $c_1 d$ in the figure. This example may be sufficient to show that, although, doubtless, over an indefinitely long period of time, the yield and supply from any source might be equalised by sufficient storage; such is by no means necessarily the case if the period under review be short, i.e. provided that a uniform supply is contemplated.

192. The process described is applicable to the investigation of every case of balance between an ascertained rate of entry of water into, and issue out of, tanks of all kinds, and might be employed to find the proper dimensions for service-reservoirs generally. The practical consideration, however, that such reservoirs exist not only to regulate periodical variations of consumption, but, further, to maintain a reserve of water to meet accidental stoppages of the supply from the source—whether these arise from the fracture of mains, the break-down of machinery, or the need for special cleansing—and that the provision which it is prudent to make against such accidents is usually large in comparison with the fluctuations of consumption, leads us to appeal directly to past experience of waterworks maintenance in determining the capacity proper to these structures.

The introduction of service-reservoirs into systems of water-supply arises from considerations of economy in the first place, and security in the second. In order to regulate and equalise the hourly and daily variations of water-consumption, and to provide against the contingencies of accidental stoppage of the supply, or its abnormal temporary increase due to conflagrations, all works for the supply of water must be large enough to ensure the maintenance of the maximum supply, and should be duplicated to provide against accident, or disuse of the works during repairs and cleansing. It is, however, found generally the cheaper course to avoid the construction of the very large pumping-plant and supply-mains, duplicated for safety, which would be necessary to meet the maximum demands of consumers during the busy hours of the day or week, by the provision, near the centres of distribution, of service-reservoirs, into which the average supply from the source may be constantly delivered, and from which the fluctuating demands of consumption and occasional abnormal draught may be satisfied.

For a gravitation supply by a single main, three to six days' storage-capacity is desirable in the service-reservoir—depending upon the length, accessibility, and size of the supply-main. Where the length is short, it may prove more economical to duplicate the main than to build a reservoir. For a pumping-supply, one or two days' storage is generally ample; and as the pumping-machinery is usually in duplicate, less than this amount of storage is not infrequently provided. Although, as a safeguard against fires, the adoption of the larger quantity is to be recommended.

The sizes of cisterns for house-supply, where it is necessary to use them, may be arrived at on precisely similar lines. To make them too small leads to inconvenience, if not, at times, to absolute famine; whilst, if they are too large, the households suffer the risks of the pollution and natural deterioration of water, to which storage in small quantities upon inhabited premises renders it peculiarly liable.

193. The capacity of a reservoir having been determined,

the next question in its design turns upon its site and the materials to be employed in constructing it. In the selection of sites, the engineer naturally chooses positions which, whilst sufficiently elevated to ensure the gravitation of the water to the district to be supplied, and a proper pressure throughout the entire system of distributing-pipes, appear to lend themselves to the impounding of the required volume of water with the greatest facility and economy of construction. The advantages gained in these respects by raising the level of an existing lake, as, for example, in the works of the Manchester Corporation at Thirlmere, are obvious; and the formation of Lake Vyrnwy, in North Wales, by the construction of a dam across the narrow neck of the ancient glacial outlet from the valley, affords another example of the art of availing oneself of the advantages presented by nature in this respect.

The requisite elevation of a reservoir depends upon the pressure, or head of water, required by consumers at the place of supply, together with the portion lost in conveying the water from the reservoir to that point. These important considerations are fully discussed in the chapters on "distribution" and "conveyance" of water.

It need scarcely be observed that all proposed sites of reservoirs must be, as a preliminary step, carefully examined for the presence of any easily permeable rocks within their boundaries, as well as for faults and other dislocations of the strata, which might lead to either loss of the water or failure of any part of the structures erected to impound it.

In choosing positions for embankments, dams, or other heavy works, the foundations may be first tested by probings and borings; but, before the works are designed, or can be correctly estimated as to cost, the ground must be thoroughly proved by sinking trial-pits into it, of size sufficient to admit of close examination of the strata upon which building is contemplated.

A compact rock or clay foundation may be built upon without special precautions; but fissured or permeable beds, gravel or alluvium, can only be rendered fit to serve as reservoir-floors or as foundations for the heavy works employed to impound water, if they are covered by a sufficient thickness of impervious material. In cases where permeable beds have an outcrop in the otherwise impervious basin of a river-valley, the site may be rendered available for a reservoir by carrying a puddled-clay or concrete wall across the beds in the line of the reservoir-dam—thus preventing any discharge of water under that structure. In clay foundations, it is desirable to prove the continuity of the clay strata under dams and embankments, by boring down a sufficient depth into it at a number of points—such bore-holes being afterwards carefully plugged.

194. The next question of design—that of the materials to be used in the construction of reservoirs, is so intimately connected with their position, that it not infrequently exercises a certain amount of influence in determining the latter. If clay and earth are available in sufficient quantity in the immediate vicinity of the works, it may prove to be an economical course to impound the water by means of an earthen embankment. The absence of earth and an abundance of rock in the neighbourhood, among other considerations, sometimes suggest a masonry or concrete dam as the most economical and durable kind of structure provided that the foundation is rock. Brickwork is often well employed in the building of service-reservoirs; whilst iron and steel are generally the most suitable materials to use for small-sized and elevated tanks, and slate or iron for house-cisterns.

195. Having settled the position for a reservoir, the

entire site should be closely contoured at every few feet of elevation, in order to determine the extent of the works required to impound the desired quantity of water, the variation of water-level corresponding with different volumes in stock, and the area of the water-surface at every contour, when a natural depression in the ground is to be utilised for this purpose.

EARTHEN EMBANKMENTS.

196. We proceed to describe in outline the several classes of works employed in the storage of water. An earthen embankment generally consists of a mound of earth, of trapezoidal section, supporting along its central line a vertical wall of impervious material, such as puddled clay or concrete. Sometimes the nature of the material available for the embankment is itself so fine and retentive, that the central wall is rendered unnecessary; but, where it is used, the integrity of the entire structure depends primarily upon the impermeability of this wall—the duty of the banks on each side being to afford lateral support to it, and to resist the thrust of the impounded water.

197. In preparing the foundation of a reservoir-embankment, the entire surface of the natural ground must be divested of grass, roots and mould; and that portion of it which is to bear the impervious core of the embankment must be excavated down to a continuous, firm and impermeable bed.

The soundness of this bed is a crucial feature of the entire work; and foundations are seldom found so naturally perfect as not to require some artificial treatment in order to render them satisfactory for their purpose. The passage of water, in however small a stream, across any part of the foundation of an embankment, will, if continued, by washing away the friable material of which it is composed, inevitably increase in quantity and ultimately threaten the ruin of the entire work. Hence, in preparing the foundation of the core or puddle-wall, pot-holes must be dug out and re-filled with concrete, loose fragments of rock must be removed, open joints must be cleared out and plugged with cement, and springs must be led away in pipes and afforded free egress on the lower side of the embankment, *Fig. 32*. All this work must be performed with extreme care—with the consciousness that, whatever tendency the foundation may exhibit to yield water when laid open, will be enormously accentuated under the pressure of the water impounded in the reservoir when full, and that upward pressures are subtle and dangerous in an exceptional degree.

All irregularities of the bottom should be removed. Sudden variation of depth, and vertical faces in the foundation, are apt to produce rending of the structure during its settlement—the tendency being for the whole mass to coalesce towards its central base. Holes, joints and fissures should be made good, as already explained; rock faces should be scarfed back; and the whole foundation prepared so as to be free from horizontal benchings and steeply-inclined steps.

When a sound foundation is only to be met with at a considerable depth below the surface of the ground, the work of sinking and of subsequently filling the puddle-trench, assumes an important aspect in regard to both the cost and the efficiency of the entire work. Hence, the prudent course is to spare neither time nor money in exploring, and ascertaining by actual trial, the fitness of a foundation, before going to the expense of opening it up completely.

198. In the case of the Woodhead reservoir of the Manchester Corporation, the actual excavation of the ground

disclosed a foundation so different from what had been expected, that, although an attempt was made to use the site first selected, a new embankment had ultimately to be constructed in a different position.* At the Yarrow reservoir belonging to the Liverpool Corporation, similar conditions led to the sinking of the puddle-trench in "Turner's Embankment" at great expense, to the depth of 168 feet below the surface of the ground.† On the other hand, it is on record that a proposal to construct a great embankment on a site selected after considerable inquiry in the Bleasdale district of Lancashire, received a decisive check from the evidence of borings which proved that no sound bottom existed at 100 feet below the surface.‡

199. Borings afford valuable aid in indicating generally the continuity of ascertained strata; but too much reliance may easily be placed upon their results. They cannot be said to be ever thoroughly trustworthy guides, and in wet ground are generally misleading. It would be an easy, although invidious, task to point to deplorable examples of misplaced confidence in the results of borings. Before a foundation is accepted, its fitness should be conclusively proved by means of trial shafts of such size as to permit an examination of the strata traversed to be made by the engineer personally.

200. If the ground is firm enough, the puddle-trench may be excavated with its sides sloped to the batter of the puddle-wall. Where the ground is unsuitable for this method to be pursued, a timbered trench is sunk. The construction of timber-work for this purpose in a deep trench, requires much practical skill. Not only must the enormous thrust of the sides be resisted, but the timber

---

* Bateman, 'History of the Manchester Waterworks,' p. 111.

† Beloe, 'The Liverpool Waterworks,' p. 15—London, 1875.

‡ Trans. Liverpool Eng. Soc., vol. i. p. 156.

must be inserted without disturbing the adjacent ground, and in such a manner as to be readily withdrawn as the raising of the puddle-wall proceeds. The best, although most costly, plan is to excavate each successive graft of the trench between rows of thin sheet-piles driven as the excavation proceeds; putting walings and stretchers in as each frame of timber is completed, in the customary manner—in-setting the successive rows of sheeting a little, to accord with the proposed batter of the puddle-wall.

Well-puddled or tempered clay, if prevented from losing the water with which it is combined, forms a peculiarly tough, elastic and impervious body, capable of resisting the percolation of water under considerable pressures. Clay is a hydrated silicate of alumina, containing a variable amount of gelatinous or plastic silica. To be suitable for use as "puddle," it should be free from sand and vegetable matter, and should not contain soft friable stone; but the presence of a certain amount of gravel in it is advantageous, and may be necessary.

The proper thickness for a puddle-wall depends upon the head of water to be retained by it, and the quality of the puddle. In practice, there is as much variation in the dimensions given to such walls, as there is variety in the constitution of different clays. For general guidance, it may be regarded a safe rule, with good puddle, to make the thickness of the puddle-wall at the base of the embankment equal to one-third of the depth of the impounded water in the reservoir—battering both sides to such an angle as will give a minimum thickness of 6 feet of puddle at the top of the wall. It is unnecessary to carry the puddle-wall above the highest wave-level of the reservoir (§ 237), and it is undesirable for it to have anywhere a less covering than 3 feet to 4 feet of ordinary earth, to protect it from the evaporative influences of sun and wind.

The puddle-wall must be carried down through the subsoil, to form a water-tight joint with the impervious base of the reservoir. It is laid in a trench excavated in the ground, the sides of which, frequently battered equally but always reversely to the sides of the puddle-wall in the embankment, afford the requisite lateral support to the material.

Owing to the comparatively unyielding character of the sides of this trench, and to the superior compression and consolidation of the puddle as greater depths are attained, as well as to the increased resistance opposed by the adjacent soil to the passage of water—the reversed batter of the puddle-wall below the ground-surface is found to be no source of weakness, whilst it is practically, most convenient. The exact batter required in any particular case, is, of course, dependent upon the depth of the trench and the permeability of the adjacent earth ; and, in practice, the thickness of the wall at the base is seldom found to be less than one-half the thickness possessed by it at the ground-level.

201. The clay from which "puddle" is to be made should, during its excavation, be carefully freed from the presence of roots and all other vegetable matter ; and should be spread out and exposed to the weather for as long a period as possible, before being used. The action of rain, frost and sun is to completely disintegrate the masses of clay—a treatment analogous to that of laying land fallow in agricultural work. This operation is termed "souring" the clay.

In constructing the puddle-wall, the foundation having been first carefully dressed and prepared, the "soured" clay is laid in a horizontal layer about nine inches deep on the lowest part of the bottom of the trench. A transverse grip is cut into it, into which water is poured. A gang of labourers working in line cut the clay with "puddle-spades" (narrow flat spades with blades 15 inches long), and draw it towards them, band by band, across the grip—thus forcing the water through it and treading it at the same time. The grip must from time to time be replenished with water, the amount required varying with the condition of the clay and the state of the atmosphere. This operation is termed "cutting" the clay, and is repeated two or three times in directions at right-angles, without the further addition of water after the desired plastic condition of the mass is attained. The clay is added layer by layer and is treated in a similar manner, each successive layer being incorporated thoroughly with that preceding it—the object of the long blades of the puddle-spades being to cut through the top layer of clay into that beneath it; and so, by sufficiently working it, to unite the whole into one homogeneous mass. In timbered trenches, the timber is withdrawn as the puddle-wall is raised, care being used to pack with clay any voids disclosed behind it.

202. When the puddle-wall has been raised to the ground-level, the construction of the earthen embankment is begun. The inner portion, made of fine, selected material, should be built in layers sloping inwards, punned in thin layers, or consolidated by traffic over it in layers not exceeding two feet in thickness—the puddle-wall being brought up slightly above it, and the greatest care being used that, in so doing, earth may not be carried from the embankment on to the puddle. The outer, coarser portions of the embankment are tipped in layers of three feet or four feet in thickness, following up the progress of the inner portion of the work, the slopes being kept full in order to allow for the effect of settlement. The embankment should be raised as far as practicable simultaneously from end to end, so that no portion of the surface may

exceed nine feet in height above the surface of any other portion in course of construction.

It may be observed that clay or fine earth, although, when moist and consolidated, well-adapted to resist the percolation of water, is ill suited for the purpose of forming an entire embankment, on account of its small angle of repose when saturated with water; hence the necessity for the coarser material employed in the construction of the exterior portions of embankments.

203. Cases frequently occur that demand very different treatment from the foregoing, in respect of the impervious strata of embankments. The occasional construction of the latter entirely of retentive earth, without any special core at all, has been already alluded to. Sometimes the impervious core has been formed of an intimate mixture of gravel, sand and clay;* it has been successfully made of peat;† examples are not uncommon in which concrete or rubble-masonry has been used for the purpose, whilst, often, a core is dispensed with, and the impervious stratum is laid as an apron under the pitching of the inner slope of the embankment. Whatever special adaptation of form is used in any such impervious sheets of clay or similar material introduced into embankments, it is all-important to observe the necessity for preserving them in a moist condition—especially in the case of clay-puddle, which, once cracked, will never heal naturally. For this reason, the interior portion of an embankment is formed of a finer material than that constituting the general body of the work, specially selected and built up with a view to retaining in its capillary pores the moisture it derives from the atmosphere.

---

* Fanning, 'Hydraulic and Water-supply Engineering,' p. 348—New York, 1884.

† Trans. Liverpool Eng. Soc., vol. xi. p. 32.

204. The dimensions of the earthwork on each side of the puddle-wall, or other impervious core, in an embankment, is regulated, in the first place, by the angle at which the earth in question will stand, i.e. by its angle of repose. With ordinary materials it is a common practice to make the slope on the inner or water side, which is saturated with water, 3 to 1; and that on the outer side 2 to 1. But the width of every high embankment is dependent upon another condition, which is that of the maximum stress to which its foundation may be prudently subjected. The batter of high embankments is therefore flattened as greater depths below the top are attained, benchings being often formed at each place where the slope changes, to prevent the violent scour that would otherwise take place on the surface of long unbroken slopes during heavy falls of rain.

The top-breadth of embankments is a very variable feature, lying generally between 15 feet and 30 feet, dependent to some extent upon the roadway accommodation desired along them. The height to which the work is carried above the highest water-level of the reservoir is determined by the exposure of its situation and by its size, and is seldom less than 10 feet in structures of any considerable magnitude. *Figs. 30* and *32* present typical embankment sections.

205. When the work has completely settled—after a lapse of time that depends upon the rate at which the embankment has been raised, and the amount of artificial consolidation performed upon it during its construction—the inner slope is covered with a facing of stone, 15 to 18 inches deep, hand-pitched upon a layer of small stone scabblings or gravel. The object of this is to preserve the slope from the ravages of vermin and from the destructive effects of the wash of the waves, which, in some exposed reservoirs, attain considerable magnitude. The outer slope

is sodded, or sown with grass seeds. Where it is necessary to make a road along the top of the embankment, the top-breadth should be considerable, the boundary-walls being well away from the crests of the slopes. The road should be kept in first-rate repair, in order to prevent surface-water from finding its way through the embankment to any considerable extent; and provision should be made to prevent the passage of any extraordinarily heavy traffic along it.

206. The height to which it is practicable and desirable to build embankments of earth is dependent upon many considerations of the quality and quantity of materials available for the purpose, and of the character of the foundation. One of the finest examples of such structures in this country forms the Upper Barden reservoir of the Bradford Waterworks, constructed by Sir Alexander R. Binnie. This embankment has a height of 125 feet above the bottom of the valley.

The frictional resistance to horizontal movement possessed by such embankments as are here indicated, is except upon specially slippery foundations, sufficient to overcome the horizontal thrust of the water impounded by them; whilst their rigidity in relation to the pressures transmitted through them is far too great to permit failure through distortion of the work. We do not here allude to the great vertical distortion, or settlement, that takes place both during and after the construction of embankments; the process of which is supposed to have ceased, or become negligible, before they are called upon to sustain their full charge.

207. To every reservoir belong two indispensable accessories—the outlet and the overflow, or "waste-weir," upon the design and construction of which depend the utility and the security of the entire works. In the formation of embankments for impounding-reservoirs, the first step is to

provide for the passage of the water discharged from the catchment-area across the line of the works during their construction. This may be done either by building an outlet-culvert at a low level first of all, and passing the water through it during the erection of the embankment and auxiliary works around it; or by forming a "by-wash" past the site of the works at a high level, and diverting the natural flow of the stream that is to be dammed up into this channel at some convenient point higher up the valley —the level of the by-wash being generally higher than the top of the intended embankment.

The latter plan is usually adopted when the outlet from the reservoir is constructed under the embankment. The difficulties arising from the association of the rigid barrel of the outlet-culvert, of brick, masonry or iron, with the yielding inseparable from earthwork and puddle, are so considerable as to render the plan of carrying reservoir-outlets through such embankments extremely hazardous. Hence the practice of constructing such outlets in tunnels through solid ground, clear of the embankments, where the stresses due to the settlement of great masses of earth are absent, and where leakage or failure of the outlet-pipes or culverts, will not threaten destruction to the whole works, has much to commend it;* although it must be admitted that the disturbance of the strata cut through in pursuance of this method is a disadvantage, in addition to which the cost involved by it is considerable.

Whether carried under the body of the embankment, or through the solid ground in its vicinity, the outlet-culvert is to be made of sufficient size to permit the free passage of the heaviest flood that is to be anticipated as likely to occur during the construction of the works. As an approximate guide, the following formula may be used, in this country, to determine the area of the discharge-culvert or tunnel.

---

* For a discussion of this question *vide* Minutes of Proceedings Inst.C E., vol. lix. pp. 37 *et seq.*

Area of culvert in square feet

$$= \frac{R_m}{50} \times \sqrt{\textit{number of acres in the watershed}},$$

where R_m is the mean rainfall in inches.

Tunnelled outlets are lined with the best brickwork or masonry in cement—scrupulous care being used to back the lining with good concrete so as to form a watertight joint all round between the shell of the tunnel and the natural ground. An outlet-culvert constructed across the site of the embankment itself is likewise built of brick or stone bedded upon concrete and covered with either concrete or puddled clay—preferably the former—throughout its length.

Its form is properly elliptical in cross-section, the shorter axis being horizontal and the eccentricity depending upon the nature of the soil in which it is built. Small culverts may, however, be made circular with advantage. In ordinary practical cases, ellipses whose axes have the ratio

$$\frac{\text{horizontal axis}}{\text{vertical axis}} = \frac{2}{3}$$

will satisfy the requirements of stability; and, for convenience of access, the lower third of the section may be truncated and closed with a flat inverted arch, *Fig. 31*. The thickness of the wall of the culvert, if built of first-class materials, may be approximately estimated from the equation

$$t = b\sqrt{\frac{h}{2}},$$

where t is the thickness of the wall in inches,

b is the smaller diameter of the culvert in feet,

and h is the height of the superincumbent earth in feet:

the rule being understood to be merely applicable within the limits of ordinary practice.

208. The culvert, when constructed in a trench cut through the ground under the base of the embankment, thus obtains considerable lateral support from the natural ground; but has a strong tendency, when loaded with the enormous weight of the superincumbent embankment, to settle vertically in the middle of its length, especially at the place where it passes through the puddle-wall. Serious fractures may be, and unfortunately sometimes are, thus produced in it. Further, the material composing the puddle-wall has itself a tendency to settle, and so to part from the lower side of the culvert at this place.

To meet these difficulties, two methods of construction have been employed:

(1) The culvert is constructed with a "slip-joint," i.e. a loose vertical joint is introduced over each side of the puddle-wall, so as to freely permit of unequal settlement there.

(2) A concrete or masonry pillar is built up from the bottom of the puddle-trench to support the culvert; in which, if the ground under the remainder of it is of a yielding nature, slip-joints should be introduced as in the first case. Neither method is free from objection; although the latter is on many grounds the preferable plan.

209. When the embankment has been completed, and the outlet-culvert is no longer required to convey the natural discharge of the waters to be impounded past the site of works under construction, its permanent office is to contain the "draw-off-" or "supply"-pipe and the "discharge-" or "scour"-pipe, belonging to the reservoir.

These pipes are usually small in diameter compared with that of the outlet-culvert, which thus affords a useful means of access to them for examination and

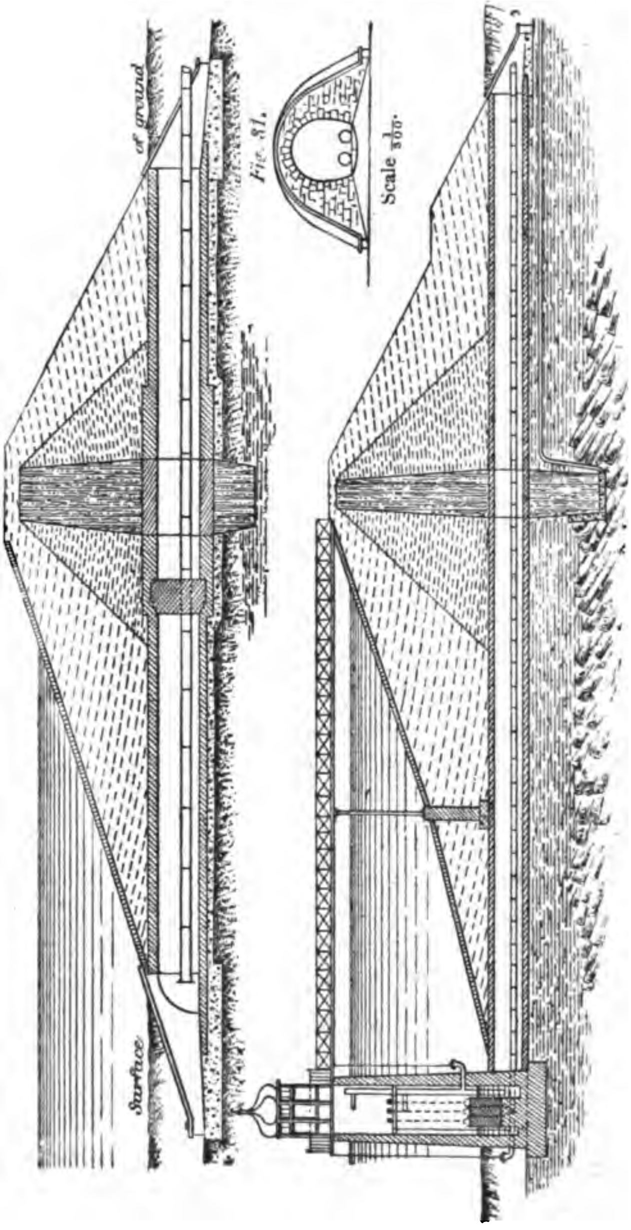


Fig. 30. Scale $\frac{1}{500}$.

Fig. 31. Scale $\frac{1}{500}$.

Fig. 32. Scale $\frac{1}{1000}$.

repair. Their actual dimensions are determined according to the considerations set forth in §§ 322, 323. They are sometimes passed through a strong brick or masonry "stopping," built across the culvert near to its inner end, and tied into it so as to form a water-tight diaphragm, that sustains the full pressure of the reservoir; though, in the highest class of works, they are generally carried into a tower that is built over the inner end of the culvert, connection being made between them and the reservoir at several points in the tower (§ 245).

The former construction is illustrated in *Fig. 30*, which gives a typical cross-section of an embankment along the line of the outlet-culvert. The valves that command the "supply-" and "scour"-pipes are situated either in a chamber at the outer end of the culvert, or at the bottom of a well sunk through the embankment in front of the puddle-wall. In both situations they threaten the security of the embankment by permitting the existence of a charge of water at high-pressure in the pipes under the whole or a portion of its width. A grid or screen over the inner end of the culvert prevents the entrance of matter that would injure the valves or obstruct the pipes.

210. Both the inner and outer ends of the culvert are terminated by horizontal arches buttressed by strong wing-walls, forming respectively a "fore-bay" and "tail-bay," to resist the thrust of the embankment at these points during its settlement, *Fig. 31*. The strength required in these arches and wing-walls is considerable, and the stability of their foundations is of the greatest importance. If they are insufficient to sustain the thrust, the culvert is liable to be severely strained, and may be fractured by the spreading of the embankment during its settlement. The foundations must therefore be carried down to an unyielding base, and there built into it so substantially as to preclude all risk of

slipping. The invert of the culvert may be carried along between the bases of the wing-walls, so as to distribute their thrust and at the same time prevent them from closing together. The wing-walls, if not spread too wide but carried to the toe of the embankment, approximately in the line of the culvert, may be of moderate section. Each of them presents a case of a retaining-wall resisting the thrust of earth, the upper surface of which is practically level with the top of the wall. The more severely stressed of the walls are those of the fore-bay, which must sustain wet earth. The cross-section of the arches of both the fore-bay and the tail-bay may be made equal to that of wing-walls of corresponding height; and the entire structure will then be possessed of ample longitudinal strength in addition to the transverse stability which is actually made the subject of investigation.

211. Retaining-walls are of such importance in water-works, being frequently necessary auxiliaries to the structures employed in them, that it may be advantageous here to briefly consider the case presented in § 210, remarking that, with some simple adaptations, the same treatment is applicable generally.

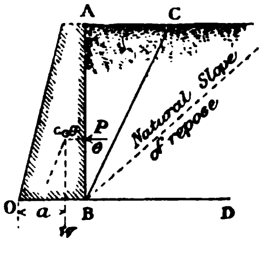
In presenting this investigation, we do not propose to assert that it is unexceptionable, or that the last word has been said upon the subject; but a consideration of the purely mechanical aspect of the question, imperfect though our knowledge may be of the conditions of adhesion and friction obtaining in masses of earth, cannot fail to be an aid to intelligent design.

The condition of stability of a retaining-wall, the base of which is prevented from sliding, is that the moment of the overturning couple formed by the thrust of the earth behind it into the distance of the centre of pressure from the base of the wall, shall be at least equal and opposite to the moments of the equilibrating couples of the wall itself. These couples are two in number, and comprise: (1) the weight of the wall into the distance of its resultant line of action from the toe, or outer extremity of the base of the wall; and (2) the frictional resistance to vertical motion developed by the earth at the back of the wall into the breadth of the base.*

A primary assumption is, of course, rigidity of the several masses considered, and, consequently, a tendency of the wall to rotate about its toe. In determining the value of the earth-thrust against the back of the wall, an inherent difficulty lies in our ignorance of the coefficients of static friction in the interior of masses of earth. But these can be approximately ascertained by filling a box without top or bottom with the earth when placed upon similar earth, and then finding what pull is required to start the box and contained earth moving. By placing weights on the earth in the open box, any desired pressure at its plane of motion can be obtained

Considering a vertical section or slice of the wall with the earth behind it, one foot in thickness—let h denote the height A B of the wall, b the breadth of its base O B, ρ the specific gravity of the earth, μ the coefficient of friction of earth on earth and μ^1 that of earth on the wall (*Fig. 33*).

Fig. 33.



The thrust of the earth against the back of the wall may be regarded as due to the pressure of a prism of earth of triangular section separated along the line B C, making an angle θ with the vertical B A, from the whole adjacent mass

---

* *Vide* Boussinesq, 'Essai théorique sur l'équilibre des massifs pulvérulents'—Paris, 1876.

The weight of this prism is $62 \cdot 4 \, \rho \frac{h^2}{2} \tan \theta$; call this M. Let P denote the force applied horizontally necessary to support this prism of earth, and call R the reaction normal to B C.

Consider the equilibrium of the prism A B C when on the point of moving.

Resolving horizontally,

$$P + \mu R \sin \theta = R \cos \theta.$$

Resolving vertically,

$$\mu^1 P + \mu R \cos \theta + R \sin \theta = M$$

from which

$$P = \frac{2 \cdot 4 \, \rho \, h^2}{2} \times \frac{1 - \mu \tan \theta}{1 - \mu \mu^1 + (\mu + \mu^1) \cot \theta} \text{ lbs.}$$

If $\mu^1 = \mu$,

$$P = \frac{\rho \, h^2}{72} \times \frac{1 - \mu \tan \theta}{1 - \mu^2 + 2 \mu \cot \theta} \text{ tons.} \quad . \quad \text{(i.)}$$

From this it is evident that, for a certain value of θ, P has a maximum value, to find that value of θ, differentiate (i.) and equate to zero in the ordinary way, we obtain,

$$\tan \theta = \frac{-2 \mu \pm \sqrt{2 (\mu^2 + 1)}}{1 - \mu^2}.$$

The value of θ thus found indicates the size of the prism of earth whose effective thrust against the wall is a maximum.

By assigning to θ this value in equation (i.), it is found that the maximum value of P in tons

$$= \frac{\rho \, h^2}{72} \times \frac{1 + 3 \mu^2 - 2 \mu \sqrt{2 (1 + \mu^2)}}{(1 - \mu^2)^2}$$

and it acts at $\frac{h}{3}$, above the point B, *Fig.* 33.

By the assumption previously made, μ is the coefficient of friction between the earth and the wall; let W denote the weight of the wall, and a the distance of the vertical through its *c.g.* from the toe O, and c the distance from O of the point where the resultant R of the forces acting on the wall cuts the base; therefore, equating moments about O, the conditions of stability require that

$$R\,c\,\sin a = W a + \mu P b - P\frac{h}{3} \quad \text{(ii.)}$$

a being the inclination of R to the base

Resolving horizontally $R \cos a = P$

Resolving vertically $R \sin a = W + \mu P$

$$\therefore \quad \tan a = \frac{W}{P} + \mu$$

and substituting for $R \sin a$ in (ii.)

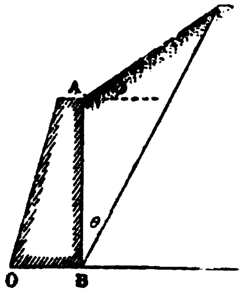
$$c\,(W + \mu P) = W a + \mu P b - P\frac{h}{3}$$

or

$$c = \frac{W a + \mu P b - P\frac{h}{3}}{W + \mu P}.$$

From a solution of this equation, the proper dimensions of the wall are arrived at—the top-breadth being first chosen such as in practice is found to be consistent with durable construction in the situation considered. There are two other important factors of stability under the assumed circumstances: the first being that the resultant of P and W shall cut the base of the wall within the middle third of its breadth, which is equivalent to requiring that there shall be no tensile stress developed in it; and the second being that every horizontal joint is possessed of sufficient shear-strength to resist the horizontal thrust above its plane. These matters are more fully considered in relation to masonry dams (§§ 221 *et seq.*); and it is sufficient to

Fig. 34.



say that compliance with these two latter conditions is, in practice, generally involved in the observance of the rule expressed by equation (ii.).

212. The investigation of the case of "surcharged" retaining-walls, which support a slope of earth, *Fig. 34*, may be followed out in a precisely analogous manner, substituting the value

$$62{\cdot}4\,\rho\,\frac{h^2}{2}\cdot\frac{\sin\theta\cos\phi}{\cos(\theta+\phi)}$$

for *M* in equation (i.), we get

$$P = \frac{\tan\theta}{1-\tan\phi\tan\theta}\times\frac{1-\mu\tan\theta}{(1-\mu^2)\tan\theta+2\mu}\times\frac{\rho h^2}{72};$$

where

$$\tan\theta = \frac{2\mu^2-\sqrt{2\mu(1+\mu^2)(\mu-\tan\phi)}}{(1+\mu^2)\tan\phi-\mu(1-\mu^2)}.$$

This may be written

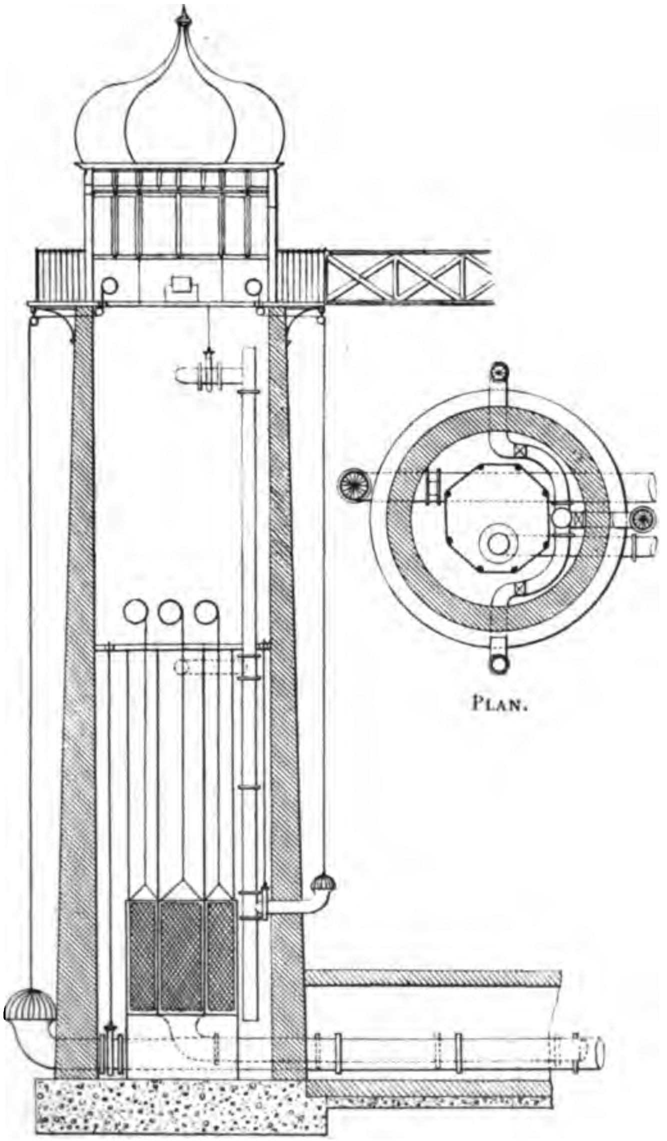
$$P = K\frac{\rho h^2}{72}\text{ tons}$$

where *K* is the ratio of the lateral to the vertical pressure taking into account the friction on the back of the wall. Its value for various coefficients of friction and surface-slope are given below. The last column is given for comparison with Rankine's method (when the earth is level), which neglects the effect of the friction on the back of the wall.

VALUES OF *K*.

$\mu = \tan\psi$.	ϕ			$\frac{1-\sin\psi}{1+\sin\psi}$
	$\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{2}$	$\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$	0	
0·4	—	0·58	0·37	0·45
0·6	0·44	0·33	0·25	0·32
0·8	0·26	0·22	0·17	0·23
1·0	0·17	0·15	0·125	0·17

Fig. 35.



PLAN.

SECTION OF VALVE-TOWER.

Scale $\frac{1}{150}$.

213. When a tower is employed to contain the supply- and scour-pipes and the valves which form the working equipment of the outlet-works of a reservoir, it forms the inner abutment of the outlet-culvert. The variation of detail in the design of such works is dealt with in the numerous published descriptions of particular undertakings for water-supply. The typical example illustrated in *Fig. 35* is adapted to draw the supply from any one of three levels in the reservoir, as well as to scour or discharge the water from the bottom.

The supply pipe is carried into the base of the tower within the screens, and draw-off branches, each commanded by a separate valve, communicate with a down-pipe outside the screens. The scour-pipe passes through the base of the tower. The straining-screens are carried in frames that can be raised at pleasure to be cleansed—duplicate screens taking their places during that operation.

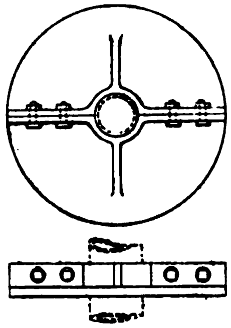
The tower is founded upon a thick mass of concrete and is built of ashlar masonry or brickwork in cement. It is circular in plan, of a diameter dependent upon the space required for the straining-apparatus and the valves. The wall has a minimum thickness of 2 feet, and increases ½ foot in that dimension for every 20 feet in depth below the top-water level of the reservoir.

214. In shallow and comparatively unimportant reservoirs, the supply- and the scour-pipes may, with proper precautions, be laid directly under the embankments. In such cases, the cost of a less exceptionable form of construction is sometimes prohibitive; whilst the risk to the pipes from settlement or spreading of the embankment is inconsiderable—if built with due attention to its artificial consolidation.

The pipes are of specially strong section to support the superincumbent earth; and are armed at the middle of the core of the embankment (whether of puddled clay or other impervious material) with circular shields termed puddle-plates, *Fig. 36*, made in segments and bolted together on the pipe at the required place, the joints being filled with lead and caulked. The consolidation of the core against such a shield is most effective in preventing "creep" of the water along the external surface of the pipe.

As in the case of culverts, pipes under such embankments must rest upon a strong homogeneous bed throughout their length. If a suitable natural bed does not exist, an artificial one may be formed of concrete, so as to prevent the irregular settlement of the pipes when subjected to the unequally-distributed weight of the embankment. The pipes should run into a small brick or masonry fore-bay and tail-bay constructed on similar lines to those described in the case of culverts under high embankments.

Fig. 36.



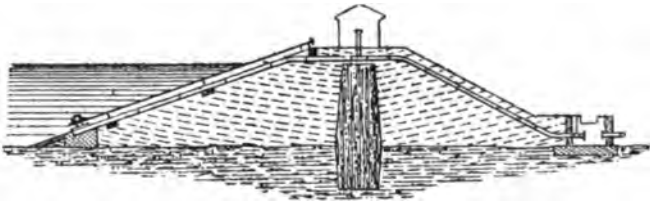
Scale $\frac{1}{20}$.

215. An alternative method of drawing-off and discharging the water from a shallow reservoir, avoiding the risks attendant upon the existence of passages through the body of the embankment, is afforded by the adoption of siphon-pipes carried from the inner toe, over the top of the puddle-wall, and terminating in a valve-well at the toe of the outer slope, *Fig. 37*. The siphons are provided with valves at each end, the supply-siphon being further provided with one or two valves at different levels; the inner valves are worked by rods running in guides down the slope of the embankment.

The pipes should run under the pitching of the inner, and the turf of the outer, slope; the several draw-off valves and the valve-rod guides being set in blocks of concrete or in heavy stones.

The action of the siphon may be started by exhausting the air, and thus charging it with water by suction from its inlet-valve; or by closing all the valves and charging it directly through a cock at the top, then closing the charging-cock and opening the inlet- and outlet-valves—when flow will take place through the siphon in virtue of the difference of pressure at the inlet and outlet. The last-described is usually the more expeditious method of starting the action; but a small air-pump should be provided in connection with the charging-cock, for the purpose of exhausting the air that is disengaged from the water and collects at the top of the siphon, reducing its delivery by throttling the flow. Or a self-acting air-cock, with a cistern of water above it, kept constantly supplied with water, so that when air is expelled water is drawn in, has been found to work satisfactorily.

Fig. 37.



Scale $\frac{1}{500}$.

The tail-bay into which the siphons discharge may be formed as a circular well, with an overflow-weir of appropriate size, and an orifice for gauging the compensation water, if any. By a suitable arrangement of guides, the screens or strainers covering the valves may be drawn up to be cleansed and be restored to their positions, as required from time to time. It is of course essential to the complete action of the siphons that the discharge-well, or tail-bay, be so constructed that the level of the overflow-weir be below that of the lowest inlet-valves in the reservoir, by the amount of " head " necessary to produce the required velocity of flow through the siphons, and to overcome their frictional resistance (§ 318).

The questions of the size, strength and joints of pipes suitable for the outlet-works of reservoirs, as well as of the valves and other gear, are treated as forming part of the subject of the " Conveyance of Water," Chapter VI.

216. The second indispensable accessory of a reservoir—the " waste-weir "—has for its object the prevention of a rise of the surface-level of the impounded water above the top of the impervious portion of the embankment.

By discharging the surplus water due to floods or other sudden increment of the contents of the reservoir, and so preventing the over-topping of the embankment, and its consequent immediate destruction by the scour of the escaping water, the " waste-weir " performs the office of a safety-valve, and, as such, demands the greatest attention in regard to its design, construction, and subsequent maintenance. It may be safely said that many of the great reservoir disasters on record have been due to inadequate waste-weir accommodation.

The dimensions of the waste-weir are determined by two factors: (1) the maximum flood discharge; and (2) the depth of the stream of water which it is permissible, with due regard to economy in construction, to pass over the crest of the weir. This depth is generally limited to two feet as a maximum; and, with a free discharge from the crest of the weir, the length for the latter may be ascertained from the formula

$$l = \frac{Q}{8};$$

where l denotes the length of the waste-weir in feet, and Q denotes the maximum flood discharge of the catchment-area in cubic feet per second.

If, as frequently happens, proper flood gaugings of the district under consideration are not available, the length of the waste-weir may be approximately determined from the equation

$$l = 2\,R_m A^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

where R_m denotes the mean rainfall in inches, and A denotes the number of thousands of acres in the catchment-area. Where the proportion of reservoir-capacity to watershed-area is considerable, a smaller weir may suffice, owing to the balancing effect of the reservoir in retaining floods and thus mitigating their intensity.

217. The waste-weir is constructed, where possible, on the natural ground, of heavy masonry set in cement—the sill being composed of stones often as much as three feet in breadth and four feet in depth, and being provided with a concrete apron on its inner face. From the outer face of the sill, a flight of stairs between side-walls conveys the overflow past the embankment down to the stream or ditch that forms the natural artery for the drainage of the district. This structure, termed the "waste-water-course," must be strongly built upon a concrete foundation, if the natural rock cannot be conveniently reached by it. The stairs are formed of heavy blocks of stone, the ratio of rise to tread being such as to prevent any acceleration of the flow beyond that attained by it in falling over the sill of the waste-weir. The rise of each stair should not exceed two feet; but the design generally is largely dependent upon the nature of the foundation and the materials of construction available.

218. Owing to the strain to which the whole structure

is subject during floods, and the frequent impossibility of effecting any repairs to it for long periods of time, the materials and the workmanship alike must be of the most substantial character. No temporary or movable parts can be safely admitted here. As an illustration of the kind of accident that may be confidently expected if these precautions are neglected, we may allude to an old experience at the Glencorse reservoir of the Edinburgh Waterworks. About the year 1850, permission had been obtained to raise the waste-weir of this reservoir one foot, so as to increase the storage-capacity. This was effected by the addition of a strong balk of timber to the crest of the weir; and when, twenty years later, the removal of the balk was under consideration, it proved on thorough inspection to be so unsound that its removal was effected without loss of time—to prevent the catastrophe that would probably have taken place had the balk given way during a heavy flood.*

219. The most effective form of weir for any given length and section of crest is arrived at by placing it simply at right-angles to the direction of the current approaching it. Curved or slanting weirs, placed across a channel with a view to provide greater length and consequently less depth of over-fall, produce concentration of the current towards those parts of the weirs which are furthest up-stream—with diminution of the flow at the more remote down-stream parts. This is a result that might be expected to follow from the fact that the surface-slope towards any part of the weir is governed by the distance of its crest from the nearest cross-section of the channel where the flow is steady and the surface of the water is level.

220. When the impounding of water by embankments or dams affects streams that have considerable value as

---

* *Vide* 'Report of the Parliamentary Enquiry into the St. Mary's Loch Water Scheme for Edinburgh, 1871.'

fisheries and spawning-grounds, it is necessary to provide for the passage of the fish into the reservoirs. The old form of salmon-stair, or ladder, consisting of a series of little pools formed as a flight of steps down which water flows in a cascade, is sufficient to meet cases of obstruction formed by low weirs; but, applied to high embankments, the necessarily flat inclination of such stairs would often render their extent inconveniently great. To meet this objection, fish-passes, on the lines of the well-known Macdonald fish-way, are found serviceable. Essentially, the apparatus consists of a broad shallow trough, in which a diaphragm parallel with its bottom runs from end to end at mid-depth; the lower half thus forming a box, which is divided by a series of parallel diagonally-placed partitions, the spaces between them being connected with the upper trough at the ends. A series of half-spiral tubes is thus formed, and the water flowing down them and across the trough, even if the latter is inclined at a high angle, moves slowly in virtue of the small inclination of the tubes, up which the fish can readily pass.

MASONRY DAMS.

221. For the sake of presenting a connected account of the class of works necessary for an impounding-reservoir, we have, in the preceding sections, dealt somewhat fully with earthen embankment and the accessories belonging thereto; but, as has already been pointed out (§ 194), such structures represent only one type of impounding-works.

The design of a masonry or concrete dam is not, like that of an earthen embankment, dependent largely upon the viscosity of the material of which it is constructed. The cohesion of the whole body is, if it be well built, so great that, assuming the pressures occurring in and transmitted through the mass of the structure to be everywhere less than some pre-arranged quantity, the question of the proper shape to be assigned to it might, if the law of its elasticity were completely known, be strictly investigated as a problem of statics. The important questions relating to the foundations of dams and the materials and workmanship employed in their construction, affect the data upon which the design is based, and may be considered separately.

The form to be aimed at is one in which economy of material and workmanship is combined with such disposition of the parts of the structure that every one of them may be applied to good purpose, in resisting either percolation or the thrust of the impounded water. Generally, it is necessary for the foundation upon which the dam is erected to be strong enough to bear the load imposed upon it without yielding, and it is desirable that it should be impervious to water. A rock foundation, firm and durable, is pre-eminently suitable, as less likely to lead to unequal settlement of the structure than a foundation of clay, although the latter might be equally impervious, and, when consolidated, just as well able to bear the load. Fuller reference is made to this subject in §§ 197 and 256.

222. The complete solution of the question of the stability of dams would require a knowledge of molecular statics which has not, up to the present time, been forthcoming. But, as we shall show, under certain conditions, a form of dam may be designed at once strong, stable, and economical as to material.

The hypotheses under which we proceed to seek this solution of the question are: (1) that the dam is a homogeneous rigid body,* and (2) that the stresses transmitted through such a rigid body are either uniform in intensity, or uniformly varying from point to point. Under the latter hypothesis, the sum of the stresses acting in one direction on the line A B, *Fig. 38*, in a given plane, if zero at A, and attaining a maximum value, B C, at B, may be represented graphically by the triangle A B C. The resultant of these stresses, which may be considered positive here, is equal to their sum, and acts at the centre of gravity of A B C in a direction parallel to any one of them, and it therefore cuts A B at a point distant one-third of its length from B. If there is a negative stress at A, whilst that at B remains positive, the resultant may be represented as the difference of two triangles, A D E, B C E, *Fig. 39*, and is positive or negative, and cuts A B at less than one-third of its length from B or A, according as the stress at B or at A is numerically the greater. If the stresses at both A and B are positive, the resultant cuts A B at more than one-third of its length from B or from A, nearer to the end at which the stress is the greater, and, in the case in which those stresses are equal, bisects A B.

---

* The student of engineering will recognise here one of the many hypotheses that our ignorance of the properties of matter obliges us to adopt provisionally as bases for investigations.

Fig. 38.

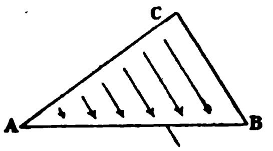
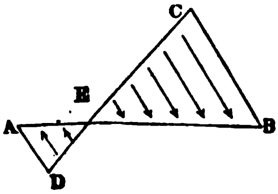


Fig. 39.



From this it follows that, whether the maximum positive stress occurs at A or at B, the essential condition of the absence of negative stress in A B is that the resultant of all the parallel stresses acting on it shall be numerically equal to their sum, and shall not cut it outside of the middle third of its length.

223. Structures of concrete and masonry offer such high resistance to compressive stress, and are so variable and

uncertain in respect of tensile strength, that it is the usual practice to rely only upon their resistance to compression in estimating their stability. Compressive and tensile stresses being regarded as positive and negative respectively, the results of the foregoing investigation may be directly applied to them. And here it may be worth while to advert briefly to the benefits to be derived from refined examination into the statics of such bodies as masonry dams.

In many classes of engineering structures, a study of existing types is of itself frequently sufficient to lead to the evolution of designs appropriate to given circumstances. But in the case of dams, engineering practice exhibits a want of uniformity which must in many cases be ascribed to an inadequate conception of the principles that should govern their design, as well as to incomplete information as to some of the important physical properties of the materials of which they are built.

Without doubt, the vastness of the forces to be contended against, and the fearful risks attending rupture or other failure of dams, contribute to produce a demand for structures whose mere mass may be viewed with complacency by the public. But, when those massive proportions are attained at the cost of bringing into action excessive stresses in the structure with an unnecessary and lavish expenditure of capital, there can be little question that the engineer should disregard the popular view and follow the guidance of scientific principles, the application of which in this branch of construction, was, to the credit of French engineering talent, first demonstrated at Furens and the Ban to lead to safe results in practice.

224. The essential conditions of the strength and stability of a dam are:

(1) The maximum (compressive) stress on any plane, at either the inner or the outer face of the structure, shall

not exceed in intensity a safe limit—found in existing works to be between 6 tons and 12 tons per square foot.

(2) There shall be no tensile stress at any part of the structure. This involves (§ 222) that, under all conditions of loading, the resultant stress shall not in any plane vertical section fall without the middle third of the breadth of the dam.

(3) The resistance to shear in any horizontal plane shall be greater than the total horizontal thrust of the water above the level of the plane considered.

(4) The structure shall be impervious to water.

225. Observance of the first two conditions stated in § 224 generally involves the fulfilment of the third. The fourth condition is never absolutely complied with; for even the most compact and homogeneous rock is permeable in some degree. Still, by skilful selection of the materials of construction, and sound workmanship, any sensible amount of flotation or "up-lift" of the structure may be prevented, by which the important element of its effective weight would be affected. Springs met with in the foundations are given free vent by being led in drain pipes to the lower side of the dam.

It is, further, of the utmost importance that the requisite strength and stability of a dam be obtained without excessive cost—which generally implies without excess of material. Hence, a fifth element of a perfect design is that the primary conditions of strength and stability shall be fulfilled with that disposition of material which gives the smallest cross-sectional area in any vertical plane.

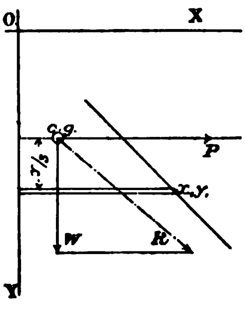
226. The two classes of dams to which allusion has been already made (§ 119) are: Those which are straight in plan and depend for their stability upon their power to transmit the thrust of the impounded water to the foundation upon which they rest (sometimes called "gravity" dams); and

those which, arched in plan, transmit the thrust of the water to their abutments on the flanks of the hill-sides between which they are usually situated. The latter class are generally known as "arched" dams.

227. The nature of the general problem presented in the preceding sections is highly complex and no complete solution of it has yet been given, although the investigations of Sazilly, Graëff, Delocre, Rankine and others have resulted in more or less close approximation to the truth within certain limiting conditions.

There is, however, one method by which a rigid determination of the problem is readily obtained; and, as a clear conception of the statical conditions of the entire question and the general mode of treatment follows from a consideration of this case, we propose to examine it.

Fig. 40.



228. Case I.—To find the most economical form of section for a dam required to sustain still water up to the level of its crest, and to conform to the primary conditions of strength and stability.

Let ρ denote the specific gravity of the masonry referred to that of water as unity, and w the weight of 1 cubic foot of water.

Using Cartesian co-ordinates x and y in the ordinary way, the origin being taken at the crest of the dam, and considering a plane vertical section of unit thickness: (*a*) when the reservoir is empty, the resultant of the vertical forces arising from the weight of the structure, is, at any horizontal joint, $x_1\ y_1$, *Fig. 40.*

$$w\rho\int_0^{y_1} x\,dy.$$

Call this W.

In its limiting position *W* must cut the joint at one-third of its breadth, i.e. $\frac{x_1}{3}$, from the inner profile of the section.

(*b*) When the reservoir is full to the crest, the resultant of the weight of the dam and the thrust of the water above the same horizontal joint must, in its limiting position, cut the joint at two-thirds of its breadth from the inner profile.

The thrust of the water above the joint considered is

$$w\int_0^{y_1} y\,dy,$$

$$= \frac{w y_1^2}{2}.$$

Let this be denoted by *P*.

The line of action of *P* is horizontal, and is situated at a distance $\frac{y_1}{3}$ above the joint. By the triangle of forces (*Fig. 40*)

$$\frac{\rho\int_0^{y_1} x\,dy}{\frac{y_1^2}{2}} = \frac{\frac{y_1}{3}}{\frac{x_1}{3}};$$

therefore $$x_1\int_0^{y_1} x\,dy = \frac{y_1^3}{2\rho}. \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

But, finding the centre of figure with reference to the axis *O Y*,

$$\frac{x_1}{3}\int_0^{y_1} x\,dy = \int_0^{y_1}\frac{x^2\,dy}{2},$$

therefore $$\frac{y_1^3}{2\rho} = 3\int_0^{y_1}\frac{x^2\,dy}{2}, \qquad \text{from (i.)}$$

Differentiating,

$$\frac{3y_1^2}{2\rho} = \frac{3x^2}{2},$$

therefore $$x = y\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}. \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

Hence, the required section is a triangle, the inner side being vertical, and the breadth at any given depth is determined by equation (ii.) as far down as the point where the limiting intensity of stress is attained in the outer face of the dam.

229. Such a triangular profile satisfies completely conditions (1) and (2), § 224. The thrust of the water being $\frac{y_1^2}{2}w$, and the weight of the dam being $\frac{y_1^2}{2}w\sqrt{\rho}$ above the joint considered, w denoting the weight of a cubic foot of water; condition (3) requires that the coefficient of resistance at that joint shall be not less than $\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}$, which is generally, although it has not been invariably, the case in practice.

Proceeding further, it is desirable to ascertain the depth below the crest or top of the dam, to which the triangular profile may be extended without causing the occurrence of stresses exceeding some prescribed limit of intensity, which is known from experience to be permissible in the class of masonry dealt with.

Let s denote this limiting intensity of stress, and let a denote the vertical angle of the section,

$$\text{i.e.}\quad a = tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}};$$

Let W denote the total weight of the dam on its base at any depth h below the crest; then,

$$W = \frac{h^2}{2}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}\cdot\rho w;$$

and the limiting value of y is reached if the reservoir is empty when the average intensity of stress

$$= \frac{\frac{h^2}{2} \cdot \frac{\rho w}{\sqrt{\rho}}}{\frac{h}{\sqrt{\rho}}} = \frac{s}{2};$$

that is, when $$h = \frac{s}{\rho w} \cdot \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

230. If the reservoir is full, which is the practical condition required, the limiting height h_1 of the triangular profile, being that at which the maximum stress-intensity s is attained at the outer edge of the base, on a plane perpendicular to the resultant pressure ; thus the maximum pressure on the horizontal plane must $= s \cos a$, and therefore the average pressure on that plane is $\frac{s \cos a}{2}$, and must equal the resultant pressure divided by the breadth of base.

Therefore. $$\frac{s \cos a}{2} = \frac{\frac{W}{\cos a}}{h\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}} = \frac{h^2 \rho w}{2\, h \cos a};$$

therefore $$\frac{s \cos a}{2} = \frac{h \rho w}{2},$$

or $$h = \frac{s}{w(1 + \rho)}. \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

EXAMPLE.—Take $s = 10$ tons per square foot;

" $\rho = 2 \cdot 25$,

and, consequently, $a = tan^{-1} \frac{2}{3}$;

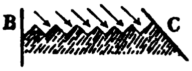
take $w = \frac{1}{36}$ ton ;

then the foregoing triangular profile may be adopted for a dam not exceeding in height

$$\frac{10}{\frac{1}{36} \times \frac{13}{4}} = 111 \text{ feet.}$$

Referring to equation (ii.) above, the inclined parallel forces acting at any joint B C, *Fig. 41*, are considered to act across a section normal to their direction, through which section they are naturally resisted. The *Fig.* indicates diagrammatically the action of the individual forces upon particles whose faces, normal to the direction of the forces, form in the aggregate the section of resistance. This section is equal to B C mutiplied by the cosine of the inclination of the forces to the vertical.

Fig. 41.



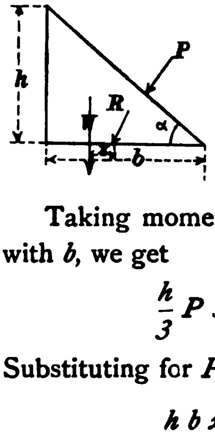
231. Dams which fall within the limit of height thus found, may be conveniently termed "low" dams; whilst those in which the maximum stress-intensity occurs in the base, may be designated "high" dams. A special method of investigation must be applied to this latter class, the profiles of which are affected by the increase of width necessary to prevent the intensity of the stress at their bases from exceeding the given maximum value s.

232. The upper portion of the high dam, as far below the crest as $\frac{s}{w(\rho + 1)}$ (§ 230), assumes the form already investigated for the low dam; but, below that depth, the stresses which occur, in relation to the resistance to crushing of the masonry, introduce a fresh element into the investigation of the profiles. The relation of the breadth of the dam to its height is now dependent not only on the position of the resultant stress, but also upon its amount; and the determination of this latter quantity strictly involves a

knowledge of the very relation that is sought. In fact, the general form and the mass of the dam are indispensable data for the calculation of its base. The problem thus calls for the application of some method of investigation suited to the treatment of indeterminate quantities.

Graphic methods may be employed, but, although very useful as a check upon the results, for fairly accurate work they are somewhat laborious, and involve the difficult and oft-repeated operation of finding the centre of gravity of a curvilinear area.

Fig. 48.



When a dam is constructed of light materials, as is the case in some of the rock-fill dams built in America of timber and rubble,* the *inside* face is sloped; the water-pressure on the sloping face $= P = \sqrt{h^2 + b^2}\,\frac{w\,h}{2}$; the weight $= W = \frac{h\,b}{2}\,\rho\,w$; ρ being the specific gravity of the material of the dam.

Taking moments about the point of intersection of *R* with *b*, we get

$$\frac{h}{3} P \sin a + W x = P \cos a \left(\frac{b}{3} - x\right) \quad . \quad \text{(i.)}$$

Substituting for *P* and *W* the above in (i.)

$$h\,b\,x\,w\,(1 + \rho) = \frac{w\,h}{3}\,(b^2 - h^2),$$

or,

$$x = \frac{1}{1 + \rho}\,\frac{b^2 - h^2}{3\,b}.$$

To advoid tension, *x* must be positive, i.e. $b =$ or $> h$. It will be noticed in the latter case that *x* is greater the smaller the value of ρ.

233. CASE II.—We are enabled to present a simple, practicable solution of the problem, complying with the

four primary conditions of strength and stability, § 224, by introducing the following condition—

(5) The resultant of the weight of the dam at any horizontal base and of the water over its inner face, shall cut that base at a distance e from its inner face not less than one-third of the breadth of the dam in that plane.

The process of solution is based upon the following theorem :—

> If a rigid body rest upon a horizontal surface, the distance of the centre of pressure from the extremity of the base at which the maximum stress occurs is

$$c = \frac{b}{3}\left(2 - \frac{s}{2\,s_1}\right), \text{ or } s = \frac{2\,s_1}{b}\,(2\,b - 3\,c),$$

where b is the length of the base upon which the body rests,
s is the maximum stress-intensity on the base,
and s_1 is the average stress-intensity on the base.

This theorem is easily proved, thus :—

Let y denote the stress occurring at any distance x from the extremity of the base: At this extremity the stress is s, and at the other extremity it is $2\,s_1 - s$; and

$$y = s - x\,\frac{2\,(s - s_1)}{b}.$$

Let c denote the required distance of the centre of pressure from the extremity of the base, then

$$c\,b\,s_1 = \int_0^b x\,y\,dx = \int_0^b s\,x\,dx - \int_0^b \frac{2\,(s - s_1)}{b}\,x^2\,dx$$

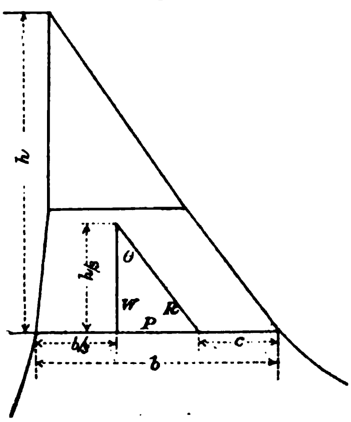
$$= \frac{1}{2}\,s\,b^2 - \frac{2\,(s - s_1)}{b}\cdot\frac{b^3}{3},$$

$$\therefore\quad c = b\left(\frac{4\,s_1 - s}{6\,s_1}\right) = \frac{b}{3}\left(2 - \frac{s}{2\,s_1}\right).$$

234. We now proceed with the investigation. Let W denote the total weight of the masonry and the water over the inner face of a vertical section of the dam of unit

thickness; let P denote the corresponding horizontal thrust of the water against the inner face of the dam; and let R denote the resultant pressure on the base. Then $P = \frac{w}{2} h^2$, and $R = \sqrt{W^2 + P^2}$ (*Fig. 43*).

Fig. 43.



If s is the maximum intensity of stress in the dam, the maximum stress-intensity on a horizontal section is

$$s \cos \theta = s \frac{W}{\sqrt{W^2 + P^2}};$$

the average stress-intensity on b is

$$\frac{\sqrt{W^2 + P^2}}{b}.$$

Hence (theorem) $c = \frac{b}{3}\left(2 - \frac{s\,b\,W}{2(W^2 + P^2)}\right)$;

assuming e, condition (5), to be one-third of b,

$$b = \frac{b}{3} + \frac{P}{W} \cdot \frac{h}{3} + \frac{b}{3}\left(2 - \frac{s\,b\,W}{2(W^2 + P^2)}\right),$$

hence
$$\frac{P\,h}{W\,b} = \frac{s\,b\,W}{2\,(W^2 + P^2)},$$

$$\therefore\quad b^2 = \frac{2\,P\,h\,(W^2 + P^2)}{s\,W^2};$$

and, substituting the value $\frac{w}{2}\,h^2$ for P,

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{w\,h^3}{s}\left(1 + \frac{w^2\,h^4}{4\,W^2}\right)}. \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

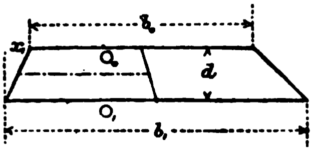
It will be seen that the latter term in the bracket only varies from $\frac{1}{6}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ of the factor in the bracket, as h varies from 120 feet to 190 feet.

Therefore from this equation, b is readily found with a high degree of accuracy, if W be known even approximately. A second approximation to b may be easily made if required, as W is the only variable on the right of the equation for any given value of h at which the breadth b is being computed.

Having found b, the next step is to ascertain how much of it must lie under the inner face of the dam, i.e. within the vertical through the crest, in order to bring the incidence of the resultant weight of the whole superincumbent mass of masonry and water to the distance $\frac{b}{3}$ from the inner toe.

This is arrived at by equating the moments of the vertical forces about the point in question, O_1 *Fig. 44*, to zero.

Fig. 44.



Thus, considering a lamina of unit thickness and of depth d, the upper and lower breadths of which are respectively b_0 and b_1, *Fig. 44*, situated at depths h_0 and h_1 below the crest of the dam, let W_0 denote the total superincumbent weight on the upper surface of the lamina, acting at O_0, $\frac{b_0}{3}$ from the inner face; and let x_1 denote the required increment of the breadth under the inner face of the dam, due to the addition of the lamina under consideration. Then the weight of the lamina is

$$\frac{b_0 + b_1}{2} \times \rho w d;$$

the distance of its c.g. from the vertical axis through O_1 is

$$\frac{b_0 + b_1}{4} + \frac{x_1}{2} - \frac{b_1}{3} = \frac{3 b_0 + 6 x_1 - b_1}{12}, \ d \text{ being small};$$

the weight of water over the inner face of the lamina is

$$\frac{h_0 + h_1}{2} \times w x_1;$$

the distance of its c.g. from O_1 is

$$\frac{b_1}{3} - \frac{x_1}{2};$$

and the moment of W_0 about O_1 is

$$W_0\left(\frac{b_1 - b_0}{3} - x_1\right).$$

The condition of equilibrium about O_1 of the entire mass above the base b_1 is expressed by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{\rho w d}{24}\left(3 b_0^2 - b_1^2 + 6 x_1 (b_0 + b_1) + 2 b_0 b_1\right)^{*} \\ - \frac{w x_1}{12}(h_0 + h_1)(2 b_1 - 3 x_1) - W_0\left(\frac{b_1 - b_0}{3} - x_1\right) = 0, \end{aligned}\right\} \text{(ii.)}$$

---

* The first line in equation (ii.) may be written more exactly

$$\frac{\rho w d}{6}\left\{x_1 (b_1 + 2 b_0) + b_0^2\right\}.$$

which is an ordinary quadratic equation for finding x_1; whence the precise value of W_1 is fixed. The process of calculation may be repeated and applied to lower laminæ so as to determine values of b_2, b_3, and so on.

These equations apply for dams up to such a height that the intensity of stress on the inner face becomes equal to the limit determined upon—a height of about 190 feet with the data assumed.

235. The method described in § 234 is rendered applicable to dams of any height, by making the relation of e to b, § 233, such that the value of s in the equation

$$s = \frac{2\,U}{b^2}\,(2\,b - 3f),$$

where U is the weight of the dam above the base b,
and f is the distance of its centre of gravity from the inner toe,

does not exceed the prescribed limiting stress-intensity.

236. In applying the principles of stability thus far developed to the design of dams in practice, there are two further circumstances that require consideration: (1) the top-breadth of the structure, and (2) the effect of wind-pressure on its outer face when the reservoir is empty.

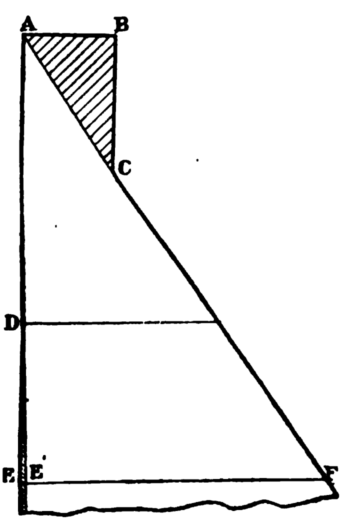
The top-breadth of a dam is a feature that is governed by local conditions. The thin edge shown in *Fig. 43* is in practice inadmissible, because it could scarcely be built so as to be impervious to water, and it would not resist wave-action or the thrust of ice. Beyond this, a foot-path or carriage-way is almost always required along the top of a dam; and the breadth may therefore be taken as varying necessarily between 5 feet and 10 feet; and, in some cases it is considerably more than this.

237. Having fixed the top-breadth, the next step is to discuss the effect of the addition of a triangular mass of

masonry, such as A B C, *Fig. 45*, to the triangular section considered in § 228.

Still assuming the existence of hydrostatic pressure against the inner face up to the crest A—for the oscillatory waves produced in deep reservoirs may be assumed to exert approximately the hydrostatic pressure due to their height; and, generally, it is unnecessary to carry the body of the dam above the level of the crests of the largest waves in the reservoir, i.e. $1 \cdot 5 \sqrt{D} + (2 \cdot 5 - \sqrt[4]{D})$ feet above top-water level;* where D is the "fetch," or longest line of exposure of water-surface to wind, expressed in statute miles—it may be easily shown that the conditions of stability permit both the inner and outer profiles of the section to be carried down vertically from the top to the point C, *Fig. 45*, which is situated at $b\sqrt{\rho}$ below B, where B denotes the top-breadth A B, and ρ is, as before, the specific gravity of the masonry. The special case of a dam acting as a weir and surcharged by water during floods is treated by measuring h (§ 229) from the flood water-level and not from the crest of the dam; the point of application of P being of course slightly affected. The method of calculation is similar to that sketched out in the preceding sections.

Fig. 45.



---

[*] Stevenson, 'The Design and Construction of Harbours,' 3rd edition, p. 29—Edinburgh, 1876.

238. The addition of the triangular mass of masonry A B C causes the centre of vertical pressures of the entire section (i.e. a vertical through its c.g.) to fall within the middle third of any horizontal joint down to a depth below the crest equivalent to $AD = 2\,b\sqrt{\rho}$. Below the point D, the vertical through the c.g. of the section would fall in the inner third of every horizontal joint, that is, nearer to the inner face than one-third of the breadth, approaching that face down to E′ F, which is situated at a depth $3 \cdot 1\ b\sqrt{\rho}$ below the top of the dam.* Proceeding still lower, the incidence of the verticals on successive horizontal joints, would gradually recede from the face towards the middle third of the joints.

In order to avoid thus violating condition (2), a batter is given to the inner profile of the section, of amount sufficient to maintain the line of resultant pressures,† reser-

---

* This may be found thus:

Denote by $C : h\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}$ the ratio that is borne by the distance from the inner face at which the vertical through the c.g. of any section cuts the corresponding joint or base, to the total breadth of that joint.

Required the value of h which makes this ratio a minimum.

By taking the moment of the area *A E′ F C B*, *Fig.* 46, about a vertical axis through *F*, we have

$$C = \frac{2\,b^3\rho^{\frac{3}{2}} + h^3}{3\,(b^2\rho^{\frac{3}{2}} + h^2\rho^{\frac{1}{2}})}\,;$$

and, by applying the ordinary process for finding maxima and minima values of this function of h, it will be found that the value

$$h = 3 \cdot 1\,b\sqrt{\rho}$$

gives a minimum value of the expression

$$\frac{C}{h\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}}.$$

† By "line of resultant pressures" is meant the line joining the points of incidence of successive resultants upon corresponding horizontal joints of the dam.

voir empty, within the middle third of the section, down to a point situated $3 \cdot 1\, b \sqrt{\rho}$ below the crest (E, *Fig. 45*). Below this point the inner profile may be vertical down to a depth $\frac{s}{w(\rho + 1)}$. (Equation (ii.) § 230.)

To find the batter required,

Let $n =$ E E′ (*Fig. 45*), the addition to the breadth of the dam under the batter D E. Equate the sum of the moments of the three triangular areas A B C, A E′ F, D E′ E, about F to the moment of their sum, acting at two-thirds of F E from F, about the same point. Hence is obtained for the value of n, for use in cases that arise in ordinary practice, approximately

$$n = \frac{b}{16}.$$

The required batter is therefore,

$$\frac{\frac{b}{16}}{1 \cdot 1\, b \sqrt{\rho}} = \frac{1}{18 \sqrt{\rho}}.$$

The effect of this modification of the elementary triangular form of section is to cause the line of resultant pressures, reservoir full, to fall slightly within the middle third of any given joint or base; and the section is therefore not strictly of the most economical form possible. The defect is slight, and may if desired be corrected by a series of approximations; but upon several considerations that will suggest themselves to practical men, the simple and highly economical form of section arrived at in the above investigation may be accepted without such correction, when the top breadth is not excessive—complying at it does with the primary conditions of strength and stability.

239. The action of wind-pressure upon the outer face of a dam introduces an element into the investigation of

stability, which should, strictly speaking, be considered simultaneously with those of weight and water-pressure. The effect of the horizontal component of the wind-pressure is to throw the lines of resultant pressures nearer to the inner face of the dam, whilst that of its vertical component is to increase the intensity of the stresses upon the base. The total effect is so slight that it may be neglected in every case except that of the "high" dam, reservoir empty. Here it would, at a certain point of the inner face, if not provided against, violate the fundamental condition (1)—by causing the occurrence of stress in that face which would exceed the limiting value s. Such an effect is, however, provided against by condition (5), § 233, introduced to meet the case of high dams.

How slight a shift of the line of resultant pressures, reservoir empty, is caused by a considerable wind-pressure acting upon the outer face of a dam, may be seen from the following examination of the case, which will probably satisfy the reader that the course, frequently adopted in practice, of neglecting its consideration, is not unreasonable.

240. Considering the case of a dam of simple triangular section—the inner face being vertical and the outer (inclined) face being exposed to the action of wind-pressure; and, as the worst case, assuming the reservoir to be empty:

Let p denote the intensity of the wind-pressure against a vertical plane;
w the weight of 1 cubic foot of water;
ρ the *s.g.* of the masonry;
and α the vertical angle of the dam.

The wind-pressure normal to the outer face is $p \cos \alpha$; the total horizontal thrust of the wind down to any depth h

below the crest of the dam is $h p \cos a$: the total weight of masonry in a section of unit-thickness, corresponding with this value of h, is

$$\frac{1}{2} h^2 w \rho \tan a.$$

The inclination of the resultant of the wind-pressure and the weight of the dam to the vertical is

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{2 h p \cos a}{h^2 w \rho \tan a};$$

which, substituting the value $\sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}$ for $\tan a$ (§ 229), may be written

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{2 p \cos a}{h w \sqrt{\rho}}.$$

From this it appears that the batter varies inversely as h. Therefore, as the point of application of the resultant wind-thrust above any given base is situated $\frac{h}{2}$ above that base, the amount by which the line of resultant pressures is forced out of the vertical by the thrust of the horizontal component of the wind-pressure, is constant at all depths, and is

$$\frac{p \cos a}{w \sqrt{\rho}}.$$

The intensity of the vertical component of the wind-pressure is $p \cos a \sin a$, and its total amount is, at any depth h,

$$\frac{h p \cos a \sin a}{\cos a}$$

$$= h p \sin a.$$

This force acts at the middle of the base, and causes a shift in the resultant vertical pressure nearer to the middle of the base by an amount

$$\frac{p \sin a}{3 w \rho}.$$

Hence the line of resultant pressures is thrown nearer to the inner face of the dam by the amount

$$\frac{p}{w\sqrt{\rho}}\left(\cos a - \frac{\sin a}{3\sqrt{\rho}}\right)$$

EXAMPLE.—If $p = 56$ lbs. $= \frac{1}{40}$ ton per square foot,

$$w = \frac{1}{36} \quad " \quad "$$

$$\rho = 2\cdot 25\,;$$

then $$\cos a = \frac{5}{6},$$

and $$\sin a = \frac{1}{2};$$

therefore the shift of the line of resultant pressures, reservoir empty, due to the assumed wind-pressure on the outer face of the dam is

$$\frac{\frac{1}{40}}{\frac{1}{36}\times\frac{3}{2}}\left(\frac{5}{6} - \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{3\times\frac{3}{2}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{5}\times\frac{39}{18}.$$

i.e. $< \frac{1}{2}$ foot.

241. In illustration of the methods sketched above we propose to add here an example containing a numerical solution of the several problems comprised in the process of design; and to supplement it by an outline of the operation of applying graphic statics to the case in order to check the results obtained by calculation.

Consider a vertical plane section of the dam, 1 foot thick.

Let b, the top-breadth, $= 10$ feet,

ρ, the *s.g.* of the masonry, $= 2 \cdot 25$,

w, the weight of a cubic foot in water, $= \frac{1}{36}$ ton,

s, the limiting stress-intensity, $= 10$ tons per square foot; which gives a maximum stress-intensity of $8\frac{1}{3}$ tons per square foot and a normal stress intensity of 7 tons per square foot on the horizontal plane:

Then the weight of 1 cubic foot of the masonry will be $\frac{1}{36} \times 2\frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{16}$ ton; and, since $\tan a = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\rho}}$, $\cos a = \frac{5}{6}$; also $\sqrt{\rho} = \frac{3}{2}$.

Measuring depths parallel to the vertical axis A L through the crest, and breadths to the inner and outer profiles from that line, *Fig. 46*,

A B $= 10$ feet;

A D $= 2 \times 10 \times \frac{3}{2} = 30$ feet (§ 238);

D E $= 1 \cdot 1 \times 10 \times \frac{3}{2} = 16 \cdot 5$ feet (§ 238);

A L, the limiting height for the low dam, is

$$\frac{10}{\frac{1}{36} \times \frac{13}{4}} = 111 \text{ feet (§ 230)};$$

$$\mathrm{L\,M} = \frac{111}{\frac{3}{2}} = 74 \text{ feet (§ 228, ii.)};$$

$$\mathrm{B\,C} = 10 \times \frac{3}{2} = 15 \text{ feet (§ 237)};$$

$$\mathrm{E\,E'} = \mathrm{L\,N} = \frac{10}{16} = 0{\cdot}6 \text{ foot (§ 238).}$$

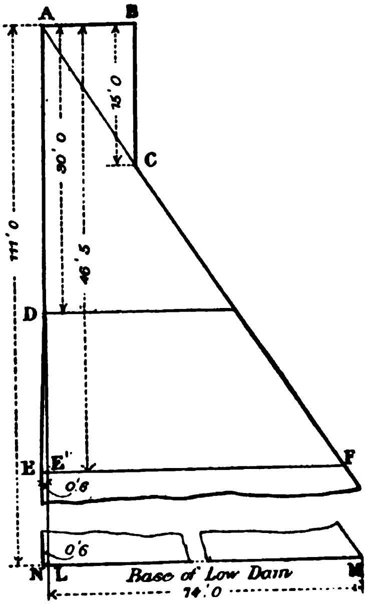


Fig. 46.

The inner and outer profiles of the dam are then formed by joining the points thus formed — A D E N, A B C M, respectively.

The total area of the section is easily found to be 4225·7 square feet; and the total weight upon the base N M, including that of the water above the portion D E of the inner profile, may be taken as 265 tons.

242. Proceeding further with our illustration, we may apply the formulæ of § 234 to the investigation of a high dam, assuming the same data as those of the low dam already developed. As these calculations are only intended to illustrate the subject, it will be sufficient here to ascertain points in the profiles at four levels, down to that where $h = 150$ feet below the crest.

The successive values of h, then, under consideration, may be thus designated:

From crest to base of low dam, $h_0 = 111$ feet.
" " 1st lamina, $h_1 = 120$ "
" " 2nd " $h_2 = 130$ "
" " 3rd " $h_3 = 140$ "
" " 4th " $h_4 = 150$ "

Corresponding with these values of h, are values of b and x, which are respectively the total breadth of base and the breadth of that portion of it which lies under the inner profile of each successive lamina considered. These quantities, corresponding with h_0, h_1, h_2 . . . ., may be conveniently designated by b_0, b_1, b_2, ..., x_0, x_1, x_2 . . . . ; and, by a similar notation, the total weight of the vertical slice of the dam and the superincumbent water, corresponding with the successive values of h, may be written W_0, W_1, W_2 . . . .

1st lamina. At the base of the low dam (§ 241)

$W_0 = 265$ tons, $h_0 = 111$ feet, $b_0 = 74\cdot 6$ feet, $x_0 = 0$.

If the profiles above b_0 be produced down to the level $h_1 = 120$ feet, the weight of the trapezoid of masonry thus added is

$$\frac{9 \times 74\cdot 6\left(1 + \frac{120}{111}\right)}{2 \times 16}\text{, say, 44 tons.}$$

Then, as a first approximation,

$$W_1 = 265 + 44 = 309 \text{ tons.}$$

By equation (i.), § 234, introducing the proper value of s,

$$b_1 = \sqrt{\frac{(120)^3}{360}\left(1 + \frac{(120)^4}{5184\,(309)^2}\right)}$$

$$= 82\cdot 5 \text{ feet.}$$

The next step is to find x_1 corresponding with this value of b_1.

By equation (ii.), § 234,

$$\frac{9}{16 \times 24}[3 \times 5565 - 6806 + 6\,(157 \cdot 1)\,x_1 + 2 \times 6154]$$

$$- \frac{x_1}{36 \times 12}[231\,(165 - 3\,x_1)] - 265\,(2 \cdot 63 - x_1) = 0\,;$$

that is $$1 \cdot 6\,x_1^2 + 199\,x_1 - 177 = 0\,;$$

therefore $$x_1 = \frac{-199 + \sqrt{39{,}601 + 1133}}{3 \cdot 2},$$

$$= \frac{3}{3 \cdot 2} = 0 \cdot 9 \text{ foot.}$$

The values of b_1 and x_1 thus found, enable us to obtain a closer approximation to the weight of the trapezoid under consideration, and to determine the weight of water overlying its inner face: The sum of these two quantities may be found to be 47 tons.

Then a second approximation gives

$$W_1 = 265 + 47 = 312 \text{ tons.}$$

Introducing this value of W into equation (i.), § 234, we find, as a second approximation,

$$b_1 = 82 \cdot 3 \text{ feet;}$$

which value of b_1 is so nearly that previously used in applying equation (ii.), § 234, as not to affect the already found value $x_1 = 0 \cdot 9$ foot.

Thus we have at the base of the 1st lamina below the low dam,

$W_1 = 312$ tons, $h_1 = 120$ feet, $b_1 = 82 \cdot 3$ feet, $x_1 = 0 \cdot 9$ foot.

2nd lamina. Proceeding as before, produce the profiles immediately above b_1 down to the level $h_2 = 130$ feet; the weight of the trapezoid of masonry thus added, together with that of the water overlying its inner face, is

$$\frac{10}{16}\left[82{\cdot}3 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{10}{9}(82{\cdot}3 - 74{\cdot}6)\right] + \frac{120 + 130}{2 \times 36} \times 1{\cdot}0 = 58 \text{ tons.}$$

Then, as a first approximation,

$$W_2 = 312 + 58 = 370 \text{ tons.}$$

Hence $$b_2 = \sqrt{\frac{(130)^3}{360}\left(1 + \frac{(130)^4}{5184\,(370)^2}\right) \cdots\cdots},$$

$$= 92{\cdot}5 \text{ feet.}$$

Applying equation (ii.), § 234, and introducing these values of b_2 and W_2, we find

$$x_2 = 1{\cdot}4 \text{ foot.}$$

Correcting the weight of the trapezoid and its superincumbent water for this value of x_2, we have as a second approximation

$$W_2 = 312 + 59 = 371 \text{ tons,}$$

whence, a reapplication of equation (i.), § 234, gives the corrected value

$$b_2 = 92{\cdot}4 \text{ feet.}$$

Thus, at the base of the 2nd lamina,

$$W_2 = 371 \text{ tons}, h_2 = 130 \text{ feet}, b_2 = 92{\cdot}4 \text{ feet}, x_2 = 1{\cdot}4 \text{ foot.}$$

3rd lamina. Produce the profiles above b_2 down to the level $h_3 = 140$ feet.

As a first approximation

$$W_3 = 371 + 67 = 438 \text{ tons.}$$

$$b_3 = \sqrt{\frac{(140)^3}{360}\left(1 + \frac{(140)^4}{5184\,(438)^2}\right)},$$

$$= 102 \cdot 8 \text{ feet.}$$

By equation (ii.), § 234,

$$x_3 = 1 \cdot 4 \text{ foot.}$$

This introduces no sensible correction in the value of W_3; and we therefore have, without further calculation, at the base of the 3rd lamina,

$$W_3 = 438 \text{ tons}, h_3 = 140 \text{ feet}, b_3 = 102 \cdot 8 \text{ feet}, x_3 = 1 \cdot 4 \text{ foot.}$$

4th lamina. Produce the profiles above b_3 down to the level $h_4 = 150$ feet.

As a first approximation,

$$W_4 = 438 + 75 = 513 \text{ tons.}$$

$$b_4 = \sqrt{\frac{(150)^3}{360}\left(1 + \frac{(150)^4}{5184\,(513)^2}\right)},$$

$$= 113 \cdot 3 \text{ feet.}$$

By equation (ii.), § 234,

$$x_4 = 1 \cdot 4 \text{ foot.}$$

Again, no sensible correction is introduced into W_4; and we have at the base of the 4th lamina,

$$W_4 = 513 \text{ tons}, h_4 = 150 \text{ feet}, b_4 = 113 \cdot 3 \text{ feet}, x_4 = 1 \cdot 4 \text{ foot.}$$

Summarising these particulars, we have :—

Depth below Crest of Dam. (h)	Breadth of Base. (b)	Weight of Masonry.	Breadth measured from axis under inner face. (x)	Weight of Water over inner face.
feet.	feet.	tons.	feet.	tons.
0	10	..	..	..
111*	74·6	264	0·6	$\frac{2}{5}$
120	82·3	308	1·5	4
130	92·4	362	2·9	9
140	102·8	424	4·3	14
150	113·3	493	5·7	20
190†	158·8	833	11·2	48

The section thus calculated is plotted in *Fig. 47*.

For dams up to 190 feet high the pressure at the inner toe, reservoir empty, is less than 10 tons per square foot, and the resultant then falls within the middle third.

243. The situations in which most dams are constructed render it necessary for some, often a considerable, portion of the structures to be built below the ground-level. In such cases there must be considered the water-pressure or the earth-pressure, according as the ground is, or is not, saturated, acting upon the lower portion of the outer face of the dam, reservoir full; and similar pressures upon the lower portions of both faces, reservoir empty. Both these effects tend to throw the lines of resultant pressures towards the middle of the section. The stability of the dam is thus improved by an amount that may be readily calculated in any particular case, according to the methods discussed in §§ 211 and 212; it is, however, not usual in practice to take advantage of this circumstance to reduce the sections.

---

* Base of low dam, § 241.

† Maximum intensity of pressure at inner toe equals the limit assumed, i.e. 10 tons per square foot.

244. To illustrate the process of testing graphically the stability of these structures, the diagrams *Figs. 48* and *49* are added.

The first proceeding is to separate the section into blocks—in this (illustrative) case by horizontal lines at 60 feet and 111 feet below the top, but in ordinary practice at intervals of, say, 10 feet in depth. The weights of the blocks into which the slice of the dam is thus divided, are, respectively, 81 tons, 184 tons and 248 tons—proceeding from the top downwards.

Fig. 47.

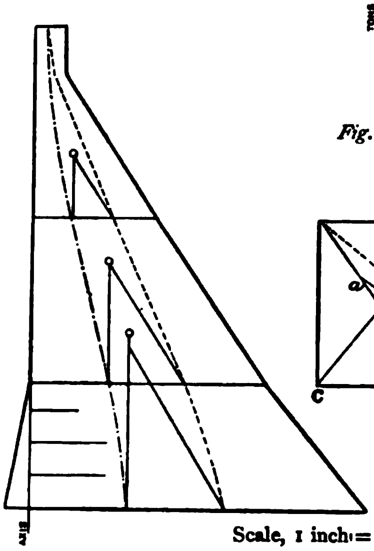
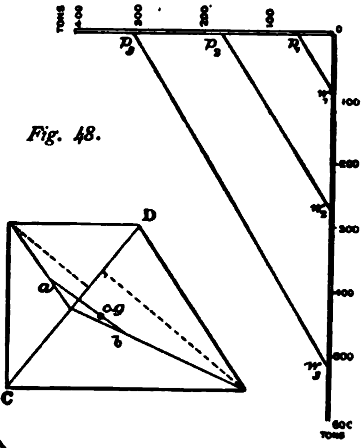


Fig. 49.

Fig. 48.



Scale, 1 inch = 60 feet.

Line of resultant pressures, reservoir empty —·—·—·

,, ,, reservoir full ....

Next, the *c.g.* of each block is found. *Fig. 48* illustrates for the middle block, the method adopted: It consists of dividing the trapezoid into two triangles, bisecting their common base, C D, joining the opposite angles with the point of bisection, trisecting the joining lines at *a*, *b*, and dividing the line $a\ b$ at the point $c.g$ in the inverse ratio of the heights of the triangles above the base C D.

The point $c.g$ thus found is the centre of gravity of the trapezoid in question ; and the centre of gravity of any portion of the section of the dam is readily found by successive applications of the method—dividing the line that joins the centres of gravity of any two component parts, in the inverse ratio of the areas of those parts.

In the diagram of forces, *Fig. 49*, $o\ w_1$, $w_1\ w_2$, $w_2\ w_3$, are set off vertically to represent the weights of the 3 blocks together with the water over the inner profile of each of them ; $o\ p_1$, $p_1\ p_2$, $p_2\ p_3$, are set off from o representing to the same scale the horizontal thrusts of the water—50 tons, 121 tons and 142 tons, respectively, acting against the inner faces of the several blocks.

The lines $p_1\ w_1$, $p_2\ w_2$, $p_3\ w_3$, represent, then, in magnitude and direction, the resultant pressures in the dam acting upon the bases of the blocks. Verticals are now drawn through the centres of gravity of the entire cross-sections corresponding with the several values of h—60 feet, 111 feet and 150 feet ; also, from the points situated in these verticals at heights $\frac{h}{3}$ above the corresponding bases, lines are drawn parallel to $p_1\ w_1$, $p_2\ w_2$, $p_3\ w_3$, respectively, to cut these bases.

The points in which these two sets of lines cut the bases, if joined as indicated by the dotted lines in *Fig. 47*, form the lines of resultant pressures, " reservoir full," and " reservoir empty."

It may be seen that, in this case, neither of the lines of resultant pressure falls outside of the middle third of the section ; nor do the resultant pressures cause a stress exceeding 10 tons per square foot at either face. Hence, the conditions of strength and stability are satisfactorily complied with; whilst the close adherence of the lines of resultant pressures to the boundaries of the middle third of the section, indicates that its form is economical in respect of the material of which it may be supposed to be constructed.

245. It will not have escaped notice that investigations relating to the stability of dams, must be affected by the elastic properties of the masonry of which they are constructed. For the purpose of applying such processes of calculation as are practicable, to this case, we have assumed a high degree of rigidity in the structure. We do not propose for acceptance the view that such rigidity is to be looked for in fact, in this or in other materials employed in engineering construction.

The object of the investigation is to arrive simply at an accurate determination of a dam-section, under certain premised conditions, which accord with those obtaining in existing structures of acknowledged strength. Whether,—as is assumed sometimes,—the plasticity of the materials of which dams are constructed leads to a yielding of the outer portions of their bases, and a consequent occurrence of maximum stress at some point considerably removed therefrom; or, as may be imagined from the analogy presented by the basin-pressures of aggregations of granular materials, the outer portions sustain by an arch-like action the bulk of the superincumbent mass, and the resulting pressures diminish towards the middle, — extended experimental knowledge of the internal stresses occurring in masonry, alone can form the basis of new laws and lead to advances in practice affecting the design of these structures.

ARCHED DAMS.

246. The examples of dams which depend for their stability upon the transmission of the water-thrust against

their convex faces to the sides of the valleys which form their abutments are not numerous.

Although many existing dams are curved in plan, there are but three well known structures of considerable magnitude having a section insufficient to satisfy the primary conditions of stability, without taking into account the effect of their curvature upon the distribution of the stresses transmitted through them. These are: the Zola dam,* near Aix, in Provence; the Sweetwater dam,† in San Diego, California; and the Bear Valley dam,‡ in San Bernardino, California.

The dimensions of the Californian dams are worthy of note:

	Date.	Height.	Radius at Top.	Breadth at Top.	Breadth at Base.
		feet.	feet.	feet.	feet.
Sweetwater dam . .	1888	90	222	12	46
Bear Valley dam . .	1885	64	335	2½	22

The latter is built of coursed rubble masonry, and we reproduce its central vertical section in *Fig. 50.*

Notwithstanding the fact that this type of dam is generally regarded with some disfavour, we propose to investigate it briefly; because, under some circumstances, it may be adopted with advantage.

247. Assuming that the thrust of the water, normal to the inner (convex) face of an arched dam, is, in every horizontal lamina of the structure, transmitted to the abutments, according to the principle of action of an arch; the question

---

* Ann. des Ponts et Chaussées, 1872, tome 3, p. 456.

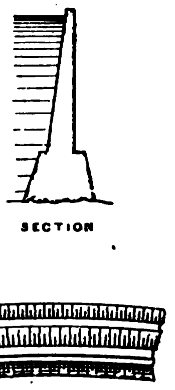
† Trans. Am. Soc. C.E., vol. xix. pp. 201 *et seq.*

‡ Ibid., pp. 221 *et seq.* Wilson, 'Irrigation Engineering,' p. 264—New York, 1893.

is freed from the composition of that thrust with the vertical pressure due to the weight of the masonry.

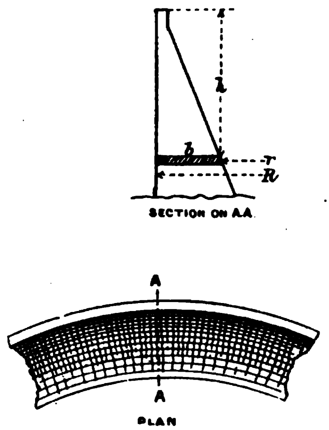
Consider any horizontal lamina of unit thickness, situated at a depth h below the crest, *Fig. 51* (assuming, as before, hydrostatic pressure throughout the entire depth); then the thrust transmitted through the lamina is everywhere perpendicular to the normal pressure of the water; and the curve of thrust, and therefore the structure in plan, must be circular.

Figs. 50.



BEAR VALLEY DAM.
Scale 1 inch = 60 feet.

Figs. 51.



TYPE OF ARCHED DAM.

Let R denote the radius of the inner face of the dam, and let w denote the weight of unit volume of water: then the horizontal thrust is, at every point of the curve, $R\,h\,w$.

The breadth of the lamina under consideration must be such as to transmit this thrust without exceeding the maximum permissible intensity of stress in the masonry in any part of the cross-section of the lamina. A difficulty arises here from our imperfect knowledge of the internal condition of an arch under stress; but the following method of treatment may be employed to obtain results suitable for practical application, based upon the hypotheses as to stress stated in § 222.

Let r_h denote the radius of the outer face of the lamina, which is situated at a depth h below the crest:

Then the ratio $\frac{\text{maximum stress-intensity}}{\text{average stress-intensity}}$ in the cross-section of the lamina is

$$\frac{2R}{R+r_h},^*$$

hence, if s_1 denotes the average intensity of stress in the cross-section, whilst s, as before, denotes the maximum permissible stress:

$$s_1 = s\,\frac{R+r_h}{2R}.$$

The breadth of the lamina required to transmit the stress $R\,h\,w$ is

$$\frac{R\,h\,w}{s_1},$$

which, by substituting the above value of s_1, may be written

$$\frac{2\,R^2\,h\,w}{s\,(R+r_h)}.$$

But the breadth b (*Fig. 51*) of the lamina is

$$R - r_h;$$

hence $$R - r_h = \frac{2\,R^2\,h\,w}{s\,(R+r_h)};$$

therefore $$r_h = R\sqrt{1 - \frac{2\,h\,w}{s}},$$

and $$b = R - r_h = R\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{2\,h\,w}{s}}\right). \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

---

[*] Rankine, 'Applied Mechanics,' 9th edition, Art. 273.

248. Equation (i.), § 247, gives the necessary breadth of the dam at any given depth h below the crest. This varies directly as R, and, in ordinary practice, will be found to be less than that required for a gravity dam, only when R is less than 250 feet—provided that the same maximum stress-intensity is adopted in both cases. Also, as may be seen by inspection of the equation, the breadth increases with the depth, until, when $h = \frac{s}{2w}$, it becomes equal to the radius.

It would appear, therefore, that the use of this type of structure must be very limited, unless a higher intensity of stress be permitted than that ordinarily contemplated in the design of dams. And this is found to be the case in practice. There are grounds for considering that the limiting stress may, under certain special circumstances, be placed higher than is usual in ordinary masonry structures. In the case of the Bear Valley dam alluded to above, it may be observed that, writing equation (i.), § 247,

$$s = \frac{2hw}{\frac{b}{R}\left(2 - \frac{b}{R}\right)}$$

we find that at 48 feet below the crest, where the breadth of the dam is 8·5 feet, the maximum stress in the cross-section is, according to the dimensions stated,

$$\frac{2 \times 48 \times \frac{1}{36}}{\frac{8 \cdot 5}{335}\left(2 - \frac{8 \cdot 5}{335}\right)} = 53 \text{ tons per square foot.}$$

249. It must not be overlooked that fracture of the wall from any accidental cause would probably be attended by immediate and total collapse; and any dams exhibiting such a high stress-intensity must be regarded as, in any

event, unsuitable for situations where the sudden release of the waters impounded by them would endanger life or valuable property.

For mining, irrigation, and other industrial works, where the economy resulting from the adoption of this type of dam is frequently an all-important consideration, it is deserving of attention.

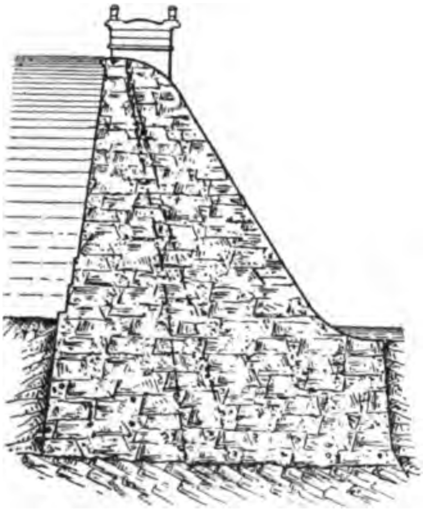
250. A third class of masonry dams may be noticed under the designation of "composite dams," that is to say, walls which, possessing sufficient strength and stability to act as gravity dams, are curved in plan with a view to endow them with a further factor of strength from their action as horizontal arches, the chief resulting advantage is that variations of temperature are less likely to cause cracks.

Although numerous examples of this class are found in practice, it is not recommended that credit should be taken for the shape by decreasing the cross-section. Generally speaking, if the radius of the inner face exceeds 500 feet, the operation of arch-thrust would give rise to stresses in masonry which are not warranted by experience, and the prolonged existence of those examples of arched dams of large radius must be ascribed to the fact that, owing to the elastic nature of the material used, the arch does not act at all—or acts in some unknown degree, producing slighter stresses than present theories would lead us to expect; and any resulting advantage is simply due to an increased elasticity arising from its curved form, which assists it in adapting itself to changes of temperature.

251. Turning to existing examples of gravity dams, we find that, notwithstanding the attention they have received from engineers during 300 years, these structures exhibit a variety of practice so great as to be inexplicable, except on the supposition that the mechanics of the subject have been often imperfectly realised. To those who desire

to refer to the history of the question, we commend the treatise of Mr. Edward Wegmann,* in which may be found diagrams and other information relating to numerous dams —including the famous dam of Furens, which, notwithstanding the elegance of its proportions, impose a maximum stress of only 6 tons per square foot upon its base; and the more recent Gileppe dam, the section of which exhibits a mass of masonry more than double that of the former.

Fig. 52.



VYRNWY DAM. Scale 1 inch = 60 feet.

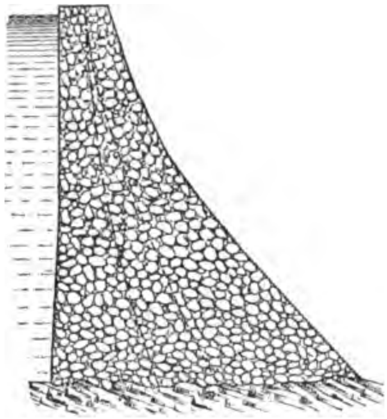
As examples of more recent practice, *Fig. 52* shows the section of the Vyrnwy dam of the Liverpool Waterworks, completed in 1889, and *Fig. 53* illustrates the Tansa dam of the Bombay Waterworks, completed in 1891. The former of these, built of "Cyclopean rubble" masonry, in Portland cement, develops a maximum intensity of stress amounting to 8·7 tons per square foot on the horizontal plane; although it should be observed that, under the conditions ordinarily prevailing, the maximum vertical stress-intensity does not exceed 6·6 tons per square foot.*

---

* Wegmann, 'The Design and Construction of Masonry Dams,' 4th edition —New York, 1889.

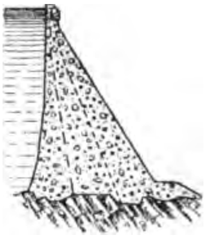
The Tansa dam, *Fig. 53*, is constructed of rubble masonry in hydraulic lime. Its maximum stress-intensity is 7·5 tons per square foot on the horizontal plane—occurring in the outer toe, reservoir full. This dam does not strictly comply with the primary condition (2); inasmuch as the line of resultant pressures, reservoir empty, falls outside the middle third of the section between the base and 60 feet below the crest—whence may be inferred the occurrence of tensile stress in the outer face of that portion of the dam. In section it occupies a mean position between that of the Vyrnwy dam and the Stony Creek dam of the Geelong Waterworks, erected in 1873, *Fig. 54*. This last-mentioned work is built of concrete; it is arched in plan with a radius of 300 feet at the crest; the top-breadth is only 2½ feet, although the structure itself, like that at the Vyrnwy, per-

Fig. 53.



TANSA DAM. Scale 1 inch = 60 feet.

Fig. 54.



STONY CREEK DAM.
Scale 1 inch = 60 feet.

---

* 'Report of Mr. G. F. Deacon as to the Vyrnwy Dam'—Liverpool, 1885.

forms the office of waste-weir, being coped with heavy stones.*

252. The Stony Creek dam is, however, only about one-half the height of the Tansa dam—the length of exposure or "fetch" being about half a mile. In both these particulars it much resembles the dam of the Abbeystead (compensation) reservoir of the Lancaster Waterworks,† completed in 1880 by Mr. James Mansergh. The Abbeystead dam affords an early, if not the earliest, example of this kind of work erected in Great Britain. Its top-breadth is 7½ feet; and it may be observed that, in the account of the Stony Creek dam referred to, the author of the paper prudently suggests that a greater top-breadth than 2½ feet would be desirable in other similar structures.

Attention is directed to this matter, as there is at present no generally accepted rule for the top-breadth of a dam. It has been sometimes proposed that this feature should vary with the height of the structure;‡ and cases have occurred where it has been settled merely by appearances. It should be governed by the local circumstances of "fetch," and the road-way requirements. Its importance is more considerable than might at first sight appear, because certain notions of symmetry, which frequently form an element in the design of these structures, are sometimes affected by the dimensions assigned to the feature in question, which thus indirectly governs the proportions of the entire work.

253. The Tytam dam at Hong Kong,§ built of concrete with ashlar faces, is 120 feet high, and presents the uncommon feature of a stepped outer profile, the steps being 10 feet in height. This dam and the aqueduct works

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lvi. pp. 113 and 114.

† Ibid., vol. lxviii. pp. 263 *et seq.*

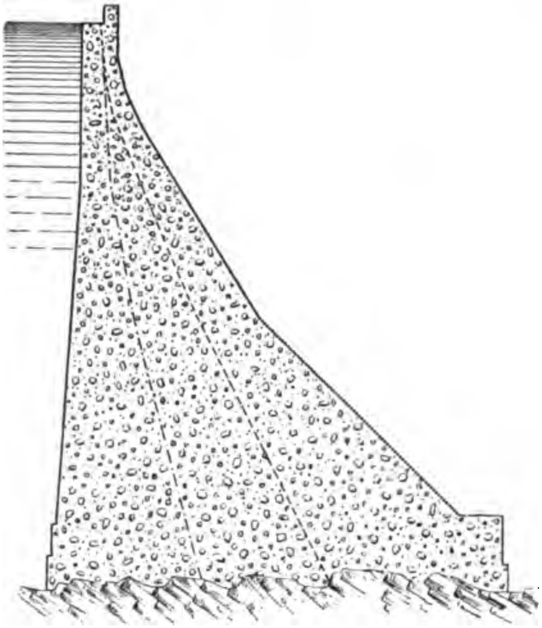
‡ Ibid., vol. lxxxv. p. 282.

§ Ibid., vol. c. p. 248.

in connection with it, visited by us shortly before their completion, form an ornament to the colony, and present some important constructional features due to Sir Robert Rawlinson.

254. The section of the Periyar dam, Madras, illustrated in *Fig. 55*, is interesting, as affording one of the most recent examples of design in this class of work, and showing a peculiarity in the form of the upper portion, which it shares with a few other dams, notably the Furens. It is constructed in hydraulic lime concrete, gauged five of aggregate to one of the matrix, under circumstances of exceptional difficulty in regard to the heavy floods in the river that traverses its site. The limiting stress-intensity

Fig. 55.



Periyar Dam. Scale 1 inch = 60 feet.

proposed in the design is stated to have been 8 tons per square foot on the horizontal plane.* Here, again, the primary conditions of strength and stability are not adhered to; and, in the case "reservoir empty," the resultant weight of the dam falls as much as two feet beyond the middle third of the base, which would induce tensile stress in the masonry at the lower part of the outer face; this tension is, however, reduced by the fact that the water rose behind the dam as the latter was built, and that the reservoir cannot be emptied. A slightly different disposition of the material would have obviated this, without increase of section.

255. In this connection we may mention that the empirical formulæ for determining the profiles of masonry dams, proposed in 1883 by Sir Guilford L. Molesworth, are the only concise equations with which we are acquainted applicable to this subject, involving rigid compliance with the primary conditions of stability. The element of the specific gravity of the masonry as a factor of the expressions is, however, omitted from them. These equations are, linear measurements being in feet:

$$y = \sqrt{\frac{0{\cdot}05\,x^3}{P + 0{\cdot}03\,x}} \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

and

$$z = \left(\frac{0{\cdot}09\,x}{P}\right)^4 \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

Where x denotes depths below the top water level in feet;

y denotes ordinates to the outer face from a vertical through the crest at depth x in feet;

z denotes ordinates to the inner face from the same vertical at same depth in feet;

---

* *Engineering*, vol. liv. p. 654; Buckley, 'Irrigation Works in India'—London, 1893.

and P denotes the maximum pressure on masonry in tons per square foot.

y has, as a minimum, the value $0 \cdot 6\, x$.

A rule is also given for finding the top-breadth of a dam, thus:

Let h denote the total height of the dam;

and a denote the value of y at $\frac{h}{4}$ below the top;

then the width at top water level is given as $0 \cdot 4\, a$.*

256. The construction of the vast masses of masonry or concrete of which dams are formed, is an art that requires the exercise of judgment in the selection of the materials used, close attention to their preparation, and watchfulness during the process of building. The question as to whether concrete or rubble masonry is, in any given case, the preferable building material, must largely depend upon the character of the rock available. The great tensile strength of Portland cement causes it to be in high favour as a matrix; but it is not entirely unexceptionable. Where a dam abuts, as is frequently the case, upon steep hill-sides, the rapid variation in height tends to produce an unequal settlement in the masonry or concrete as the structure is gradually raised. This settlement is resisted by the shear of the material transmitted from the comparatively unyielding rock abutments. It is not improbable that action of this kind has produced some of the fractures that have too often occurred in such dams. If this be so, it points to the prudence of building in a slow-setting hydraulic lime, thereby permitting free settlement of the mass before it sets rigidly. Otherwise it would appear that the dam

---

* It should be noticed that dams in India may be assumed to be free from the thrust of ice against their crests, a factor which in United States practice possesses considerable importance.

should be so designed that the intensity of the stresses in high sections may be less than that at the same levels in lower sections of the structure ; and consequently, that the strain at all parts may tend to vary inversely as the height of the dam at those places.

The settlement during construction of large masses of concrete, which may be regarded as bearing, beam-like, upon their extremities, must give rise to conditions of internal shearing-stress of indeterminate amount. In concrete work, such settlement is much reduced by the introduction of large blocks of stone and boulders into the work—a practice that possesses the advantages of adding to the coherence of the entire work, and, generally of effecting some economy in its cost.

It is highly important for the work to be homogeneous in composition and free from plane joints. Similar precautions to those used in the case of earthen embankments, must be taken to avoid the sealing of springs in the foundations ; and facility of escape at the outer face of the dam should be afforded to water percolating the mass.

257. The building of rubble masonry is an art that is hardly amenable to literary treatment. The all-important subject of the making and laying of concrete in engineering structures for hydraulic works, is too wide to be fully dealt with here; and we abstain from presenting an inadequate description of the numerous manipulative processes necessary for the production of good concrete-work, believing that a serviceable knowledge of the matter can be best gained by observation. The most important of the points to be observed are: the cement is to be thoroughly slaked by aëration before use; the material composing the aggregate is to be clean, and of such dimensions that it may form, with the cement, a compact con-

glomerate: the concrete is not to be re-assorted after the completion of the mixing process, as happens if it is either tipped into place from too great an elevation, or is unduly "punned" or beaten with a view to consolidate it; the quantity of water added in mixing the concrete is to be not only that required for the hydration of the cement but, in addition, sufficient to meet the loss by evaporation and by absorption into the materials and the adjacent bodies. The last-mentioned point is, perhaps, the most difficult of observance. It is undoubtedly improper to over-water concrete; but, at the same time, the practice of the testing-room must not be carried on to works, where a different set of conditions obtains. To obtain successful results, the ratio of water to cement must, in the manufacture of concrete for hydraulic work, be considerably higher than that employed in the production of cement briquettes of high tensile resistance. The same remark applies to cement mortar for masonry and brickwork. Finally, a condition of perfect quiescence must be ensured, in order that a mass of concrete may set well. In foundation work especially, it is far better for concrete to be actually laid in water, than for the water to be drawn away through or underneath the mass during the process of setting, as is sometimes done by heavy pumping. Although the best results may be obtained from concrete set in air, the damage wrought by the percolation of water through it before it has set, and the consequent removal of part of the cement, is irreparable.

258. Even when all possible care is exercised in the selection and the mixture of the materials that compose mortar, and in the laying of masonry, the question as to what stress it is permissible to impose upon a structure built of these materials is still far from being satisfactorily answered. The pressure required to crush small blocks of good concrete may be found to be as much as 150 tons

per square foot, and it might be thence inferred that a stress-intensity of 25 tons per square foot could be safely assigned to a mass of that material. On the other hand, experiment points to some diminution of the resistance to crushing offered by similar blocks of mortar and concrete, according as their diameters increase;[*] and it is probable that, as a rule, small selected samples of materials are comparatively so free from defects of composition as to yield relatively higher results under stress than do larger samples of similar figure. This, it is well known, was the origin of the fictitious strengths attributed by the earlier experimenters to wooden beams—their results being derived from tests of small, straight-grained, seasoned bars of timber; and caution must be used in applying to practical cases the results of laboratory crushing-tests of small cubes of stone and concrete, especially when they fail to indicate the point at which deformation of the samples first occurs.

Some valuable determinations of the resistance to crushing of concrete prisms cut out of the Vyrnwy dam were made by Messrs. David Kircaldy and Son in 1885, the lowest result obtained being 181 tons per square foot.[†] Among walls for impounding water, the Almanza dam, in Albacete, Spain, a structure of ancient date, bears a calculated intensity of stress equal to 12 tons per square foot; but a lower stress is observed in most modern dams. Still, with good materials and workmanship, there does not seem to be any reason why this, or even a somewhat higher stress, should not be adopted with perfect safety.

259. In two respects a masonry dam possesses a distinct advantage over an earthen embankment: (1) It can

---

[*] Gillmore, 'Notes on the Compressive Resistance of Freestones, &c.'—New York, 1888.

[†] 'Report on the Vyrnwy Masonry Dam,' by Major-General Sir Andrew Clarke--Liverpool, 1886.

form its own waste-weir, (2) the outlet works may be safely carried through the body of the structure. The dimensions of both the outlet and the waste-weir are determined by the same considerations as those treated in §§ 207, 216.

The top of the dam may be rounded to form the waste-weir, like that of the Vyrnwy, a proper apron being formed at the outer toe, to receive and check the velocity of the overflow; or the weirs may be formed at the ends, supplemented by stepped waste-water courses carried down the hill-sides.

The scour-valves may be placed in a culvert through the lower part of the dam, and be manipulated from a chamber overhead, and the draw-off valves may be situated in a stand-pipe or tower within the reservoir.

260. Among the important details connected with the completion of every large reservoir, is the protection of the banks in the neighbourhood of the (varying) water-line, from the erosive action of waves, by stone-pitching or by mattresses. Another important point is, especially in the case of reservoirs formed in valleys into which the tributary streams discharge with high velocity, to cut off such tributaries by means of rubble or timber screens, above the level of the reservoir, so as to form catch-pits to intercept the detritus borne down by torrents, and to prevent it from entering the reservoir, to the diminution of its capacity and the detriment of the impounded water. Such catch-pits are cleaned out from time to time, the intercepted material being formed into a spoil-bank in some convenient and out-of-the-way situation.

SERVICE-RESERVOIRS.

261. The requisite capacity of a service-reservoir depends upon the variation in the rate of daily consumption of water in the district supplied through the reservoir, and

upon the length of time during which it is deemed prudent that the water-service should be independent of the supply from the main source, to meet cases of accident, failure or abnormal draught (§§ 190–192).

Elevated situations, if such occur and are available in the immediate vicinity of the districts to be supplied, are naturally chosen as sites for service-reservoirs. It was formerly considered unnecessary to roof these reservoirs, which were often constructed as open pits, half sunk and half embanked, and pitched with stone over their inner slopes. Many examples of this kind remain in use at the present day. For the supply of water to towns however, experience has taught the superiority of covered reservoirs—excluding dust, and preventing the development of vegetable and animal life in the water, which is due to the action of heat and light.

The subject of the present practice in regard to the construction of service-reservoirs has been so exhaustively treated in an article published by the Institution of Civil Engineers,* that we cannot do better than refer the reader to that paper, and to the subsequent discussion thereupon.

262. The ordinary type consists of concrete or brickwork walls and floor, varying in thickness according to the depth of the reservoir; the walls, where they rise above the level of the natural ground, being supported by embankments of earth.

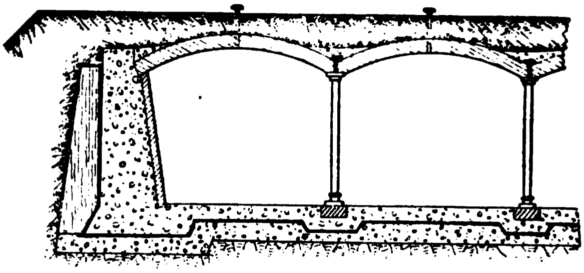
The earthen backing behind the walls, and the thrust of the floor and roof inside the reservoir, permit the employment of sections considerably lighter than would be required to resist the hydrostatic pressure of the full reservoir, or the unbalanced external pressure, acting upon simple walls; but in retentive soils, where heavy pressures may be expected, the walls and floor must be duly increased in thickness—a system of drains being first laid underneath the floor, so as to prevent the accumulation of land-water there, and consequent "up-lift." A series of brick or concrete arches carried on brick or iron pillars springing from the floor, support an earthen covering some 2 feet or 3 feet in thickness, *Fig. 56.*

---

* "Covered Service-Reservoirs," Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxiii.

It need scarcely be said that every service-reservoir or tank should, in addition to inlet- and outlet-pipes (the former provided if necessary with a reflux-valve (§ 355), and the latter with an automatic cut-off valve), be furnished with a scour-pipe and with an overflow having a discharging capacity at least equal to the delivery of the inlet-pipe.

Fig. 56.



263. Where puddle is used, all steps or footings at the back of a wall should be bevelled so that, in settling, the puddle may slide off them and not crack at the angle.

Fig. 56 shows a section of a service-reservoir wall of a type which has been used with satisfactory results. A layer of about 9 inches of concrete is first laid and finished off with a smooth upper surface; this is covered with asphalted felt with joints overlapping, the adjoining sheets being cemented together by heating the asphalt along the edges of the sheets; above this a thickness of 9 inches of fine concrete completes the floor. The asphalted felt is carried up behind the walls and may be protected by a layer of puddle behind it. The various precautions mentioned in § 201 must be observed in the preparation of the puddle; and where it is carried up in a thin sheet behind a wall, it is desirable to arrange the work so as to lay it as continuously as possible—thus avoiding many of the failures that occur from the occurrence of dry and dirty joints in puddle-walls. An important point in laying scour- or outlet-pipes through the base of a high wall, especially if this is backed by puddle, is to pass the pipes through ports left in the walls during construction, so that they may be free to move—the ports being subsequently plugged with cement around the pipes after all settlement of puddle, concrete, or masonry has ceased.

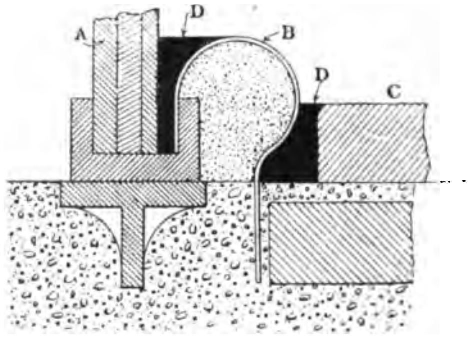
When the service-reservoir is emptied the operation should be allowed to take place slowly, so that any water, which has leaked through the concrete to the asphalted felt, may find its way back again before the weight of the water is taken off the floor.

In rendering service-reservoirs water-tight, good results have been frequently obtained from an asphalt sheet, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch to 1 inch thick, run whilst hot over the floor, and either into a cavity left in the walls, or laid upon the latter in successive coats by the brush. Precaution must of course be taken to prevent the occurrence of bad joints in the asphalt, which would happen if one coat were laid upon a cold under-layer.

264. Tanks, elevated considerably above the ground, are frequently employed to maintain steadily the pressure in the service-mains and distributing-pipes of a district under supply. Such tanks are generally constructed of iron, and rest upon brick or stone towers, or, more seldom, upon iron columns braced together by lattice-work. Sometimes, cast- or wrought-iron tanks of rectangular form,

stayed internally, are supported on girders, but more modern structures often consist of steel boiler-plate cylinders, resting upon a concrete or brick foundation—the bottom being formed of either metal carried on girder or arches, or, in cases where elevation of the tank above the ground-level is unnecessary, brickwork or concrete rendered with asphalt. The principal difficulty attending the construction of such tanks arises at the junction of the sides and floor—especially when these are made of different materials. Here a rigid joint is inadmissible, owing to the distortion that arises in the tank from changes of temperature; whilst water-tightness under considerable pressure is often required. A form of joint which has much to recommend it, and has given good results in practice, is illustrated in *Fig. 57*.*

Fig. 57.



A, shell of tank (iron); B, sheet-lead roll; C, floor of tank (brick); D D, asphalt.
Scale 1 inch = 1 foot.

265. By far the most novel and interesting type of service-reservoir—combining strength, economy and elegance—is presented by the spherical-bottomed tank, which, requiring neither internal stays nor supporting-girders, may be built upon a tower or upon a simple curb supported by

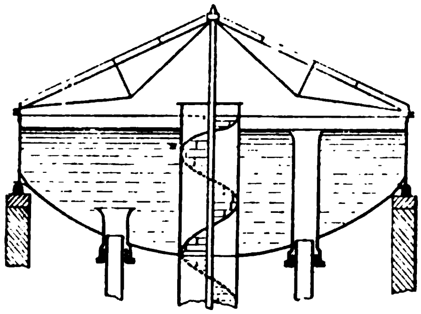
---

* Proc. Roy. Soc. of N.S.W., vol. xxv. p. 158.

columns or piers at any desired elevation. A section of a tank of this kind is shown in *Fig. 58.*

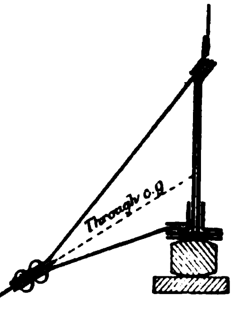
The central shaft contains a ladder or spiral stair, by which access is afforded to the top, and thence to the interior of the tank. The inlet- and overflow-pipes are shown on either side of the shaft, and are provided with expansion-joints, glands and packing, to meet the changes in the sag of the spherical bottom and expansion and contraction of the pipes. The valves are situated at the feet of these pipes. Sometimes, both inlet- and outlet-pipes are provided, to promote circulation of the water through the tank. The roof is double, with a view to secure equability of temperature, and is carried on radial steel principals. In hot climates the shell of the tank may be advantageously surrounded by wood-lagging, a few inches distant from it. The suitability of this form of reservoir for extremely cold climates is questionable. Among examples that are worthy of notice, are that at the Lynn Waterworks and that at Norton in Cheshire, belonging to the Liverpool Waterworks. The former, 26 feet in

Fig. 58.



Scale 1 inch = 20 feet.

Fig. 59.



Scale ¼ inch = 1 foot.

diameter and containing 55,000 gallons, constructed by Messrs. Easton and Anderson, of Erith, in 1875, is one of the earliest examples of the type in England; the latter, a later example, is 76 feet in diameter and has a capacity of 600,000 gallons.

The calculations of the strength of this form of tank are of a simple character. For the thickness of the cylindrical shell, at h feet below the top, we have

$$t = \frac{R\,h\,w}{12.s} + \frac{1}{4};$$

where t is the required thickness in inches at h feet below the top;
R is the radius of the tank in feet;
s is the working-stress of the metal in tons per square inch;
and w is the weight of 1 cubic foot of water expressed as a fraction of a ton, i.e. $= \frac{1}{36}$.

The thickness for the spherical bottom is arrived at by the application of the well-known theorem that the intensity of the tension in a spherical shell is one-half of that due to equal fluid-pressure within a cylindrical shell of the same radius.* Hence, using the same notation and putting r for the radius of the spherical bottom in feet, we have, treating the weight of metal as its equivalent head of water,

$$t = \frac{r\,h\,w}{24.s} + \frac{1}{4}.$$

The bottom plates have to be specially shaped in dies, but this introduces no insurmountable difficulty. Riveted lap-joints for the circular seams, and butt-joints and strips for the radial seams, are found to answer well for both the bottom and sides. The interior surface of the tank may be rendered with asphalt, the seams being first carefully caulked, and the plates freed from dust and dirt. The outside seams should also be carefully set up. One of the most important features of this type of tank is the compression-ring to which the bottom is attached. A form of section which possesses many advantages for this ring is shown in *Fig. 59* In it the rivets are, as far as possible, in shear, and the attachment of the bottom plates to the compression-ring presents little difficulty. The tangent at the edge of the spherical bottom passes through, if produced, the centre of gravity of the compression-ring, the latter being carried on the cast-iron curb, or bed-plate, by means of short iron rockers, shaped so as to lift the ring slightly in rolling, and tending to regain their normal position—a necessary provision against horizontal movements of the tank due to changes of temperature. The bed-plate must be capable of resisting the thrust so induced.

---

* Rankine, 'Applied Mechanics,' 9th edition, Art. 272.

266. In the United States, it is a common practice to form service-reservoirs of high cylindrical tanks of large diameter. As an example, that at Savannah, in Georgia, is 30 feet in diameter and 57 feet high, constructed of iron boiler-plate, and is carried by iron girders upon a brick tower 50 feet in height.* Many tanks of still greater height rest simply upon a prepared foundation on the ground, e.g. at St. Bernard, Ohio, there is a steel stand pipe 20 feet diameter and 115 feet high, the thickness varying from $\frac{13}{16}$ inch at the bottom to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch at the top.

Where such height is necessary, the upper portions only of the tank can be regarded as effective for the general purposes of a service-reservoir, and the lower portion may be conceived to act as a supporting column, operating through the medium of the circumferential tension in the shell, and providing, of course, in particular cases, a useful reserve of low-pressure water. There are doubtless good reasons for the popularity of this design in some localities abroad ; but it cannot be proposed as a suitable form of service-reservoir for erection in this country.

---

* 'Reports on the Water-power of the United States'—Washington, 1887.

267. We will now allude briefly to the subject of the storage of water on a small scale in houses. For manufacturing purposes, convenience and cost determine the position, size and material of internal cisterns and tanks. But when water has to be stored in cisterns, to be subsequently used for domestic purposes—which is often the case, even with constant supply ; owing to the excessive draught upon the service-pipes during the busiest hours of the day—the matter demands earnest attention. Too frequently house-cisterns are so large in relation to the domestic consumption, that the water they contain cannot, under the ordinary conditions of use, be entirely changed for many hours, perhaps days. They are commonly situated so near to the roof and to the hot-water apparatus, and in a chamber so devoid of facilities for ventilation, that the water contained in them is not kept at a temperature suitable for use ; and, in addition to this, they are often extremely difficult of access for cleaning.

Such a system of storing water for domestic purposes cannot fail to be injurious to the health of the consumers ; and, by it, the benefits of a pure and cool water supply, derived perhaps at great cost from some distant source, are, at the very latest stage, often largely annulled.

House-cisterns should be of such dimensions as to hold only 24 hours' supply of water in the case of intermittent service, and only a few hours' supply with constant service. They should be constructed of slate or of galvanised iron, and should be situated in an airy chamber, not too near the roof, and as far as is convenient from the hot water supply cistern or other heating-apparatus. Finally, they should be provided with ventilating covers and with plugs at the bottom, to permit of their being properly cleansed and scoured out from time to time. The circumstances that affect the purity of water under storage will be more fully considered as part of the general question of purification.

CHAPTER V.

THE PURIFICATION OF WATER.

268. WATER, collected in the condition in which it occurs in nature, with the exception of that derived from springs and wells must always be subjected to some treatment before it can be pronounced fit for domestic and industrial use; and even spring- and well-water, although generally free from organic pollution, is often impregnated with mineral solutions that injuriously affect its quality. The term "purification" here means the operation of rendering any natural water fit for distribution through mains and service-pipes to meet the requirements of consumers. This does not invariably mean improvement of the chemical purity of the water, although such is generally the case; in fact, purification, in the sense in which the waterworks engineer understands it, so far from being restricted to the removal of constituents foreign to chemically pure water, involves sometimes the addition of substances to it, in order to improve its dietetic properties, or to reduce its corrosive action upon the vessels in which it is contained.

Such a course has been taken, for example, at Dessau in Anhalt, where the water supply is very soft, containing much carbonic acid in solution, and was found to dissolve lead from the interior of the service-pipes in dangerous quantity. By the addition of powdered carbonate of lime, the excess of carbonic acid has been removed from the water, and its solvent action in the formation of lead carbonate prevented.

269. The impurities contained in water occur either as floating on its surface, in suspension, or in solution; and the removal of foreign matter in the first and second of these conditions, and to some extent also in the third, constitutes the purification that water most commonly undergoes.

(1) Floating matter may be removed by means of an overflow from a reservoir or other convenient chamber, whence such bodies are carried away by the escaping water; or they may be strained out of the water by causing it to pass through gratings or wire gauze.

(2) Matter in suspension, if not too minute, may be strained out by wire gauze; or, if of specific gravity higher than unity, it may be permitted to precipitate naturally by ensuring to the water a sufficient period of quiescence. All storage-reservoirs produce this very useful secondary effect upon their contents. Fish and other inhabitants of streams and ponds assist actively to absorb suspended organic matter, and to a certain extent also, that which floats upon the surface. Water that carries silt is clarified by natural subsidence in ponds, or by flow through shallow tanks at a rate slow enough to permit of the deposition of the solids upon the floors. If the silt is in a state of exceedingly fine division, its settlement is hastened by producing an artificial precipitate in the water. Thus, if turbid water contains bicarbonate of lime in solution, the addition of either cake-alum* or lime produces a heavy precipitate that rapidly carries the silt down with it to the bottom. The addition of the former compound causes a chemical action of double decomposition, resulting in the formation of aluminium hydrate which falls as a precipitate,

---

* Aluminium sulphate, not true alum.

of carbonic acid which escapes, and of calcium sulphate which remains dissolved in the water, thus,

$$3H_2O + 3CaCO_3 \,.\, CO_2 + Al_2\,3SO_4$$
$$= Al_2(HO)_6 + 6CO_2 + 3CaSO_4.$$

The action when the latter compound is added is to produce a precipitate of calcium carbonate, thus,

$$CaCO_3 \,.\, CO_2 + CaO = 2CaCO_3$$

as in Clark's "softening" process (§ 307).

In both cases, the sudden formation and settlement of the precipitate carries suspended silt down with it, and exercises a marked clarifying effect upon the turbid water.

After removing by subsidence such matters as readily settle, it is the usual practice to further purify water by filtration, which, in addition to removing turbidity, greatly reduces the quantity of micro-organisms present.

(3) Water may be freed from some substances in solution by aëration, or exposure to the action of the atmosphere—the rapidity of the operation being greatly promoted by agitation: e. g. if water containing dissolved sulphuretted hydrogen be caused to flow along an open channel the gas escapes; similar treatment applied to a more common impurity, carbonate of lime in solution, causes carbonic acid to be evolved and carbonate of lime to be deposited as a precipitate in the channel. As another special example, the water-supply of Königsberg* is notably rich in iron compounds, chiefly ferrous carbonate dissolved in excess of carbonic acid, which have been found to be favourable to the growth of *crenothrix*—an organism that is capable of rapid development even in

---

* Deutsche Vierteljahrsschrift für öffentliche Gesundheitspflege, 1888, p. 339.

dark situations—advantage was here taken of the fact that the line of the main is intersected by an ancient watercourse, into which the water is turned and permitted to flow down for a length of about five miles. The result is that carbonic acid escapes, ferric oxide is deposited in the channel, and the water issues at the lower end clear and bright, its tendency to promote organic growth being altogether lost.

270. On shipboard, and to a limited extent on the seacoast, in certain places where other sources of supply are wanting or inadequate, as at Aden, distillation of sea-water is resorted to as a means of ridding it of the excessive quantity of salts that render it unfit for domestic use. A good example of this process at Iquique, Peru, has been described by Mr. C. M. Johnson, R.N.*

The plant comprises a series of five cylindrical generators, a Root multitubular boiler and a surface-condenser, and is capable of supplying about 45,000 gallons of distilled water per day. There are two nests of wrought-iron tubes running through each generator placed on either side of the centre line. The steam from the boiler, at 140 lbs. pressure per square inch, enters the tubes of the first generator, causing the sea-water in it to evaporate. Part of the steam thus generated is led through the tubes of the second generator, heating the brine in it, and so on throughout the whole series. From the generators the bulk of the vapour is conducted through the surface-condenser into a fresh-water tank. When the brine becomes by this process concentrated to about three times the density of sea-water, it is discharged, part of its heat being abstracted by causing it to circulate about the feed pipes of the boiler and generators.

A more recent example is the distilling plant manufactured by the Mirrlees Watson Co., Glasgow, for Suakim, Egypt, which provides for a supply of 78,000 gallons of distilled water per 24 hours. The plant consists of two sextuple effet distillers, each provided with air and auxiliary pumps, a surface condenser and preliminary heaters. Part of the circulating water from the condensers is forced through the tubes of two preliminary heaters on its way to the lower set of tubes—the heating coils—in the lowest of a vertical set of six horizontal shells 3 feet 9 inches diameter, fitted with two sets of solid drawn brass tubes 3 inches external diameter and 17 feet 6 inches long, expanded into brass tube plates. Within the shell, outside of the tubes is the vapour generated from the effet nest above it. The salt water circulates through the lower set of tubes in each of the six effets, and after passing through that of the topmost one it flows through a lime catcher, heated by a coil supplied with steam from the boiler, and thence through the upper set of tubes—the evaporating coil—of the topmost effet. Inside the shell and round the tubes of the latter, steam at a pressure of 40 lbs. per square inch from the steam boiler is admitted, the condensed steam from the shell passing back to the boiler. The steam generated in the evaporating tubes of this effet and the remainder of the water then pass to the first separator, from which the steam or vapour is conducted into the shell of the effet below and the remaining water into the evaporating tubes of that effet, in which more of the water is evaporated by the latent heat given up by the vapour surrounding the tubes as the latter condenses. The water and vapour from this set of tubes is thence led to the second separator, the vapour being sent into the shell below, and the water into the evaporating tubes of that effet, and so on down to the lowest effet. The pressure in the shells gradually diminishes until in the last shell there is a vacuum of about 27 inches. All the vapour condensed in the different effets drains into the shell of the lowest one and thence the condensed water passes round the tubes of one of the preliminary heaters on its way to the condenser. The vapour from the separator of this effet passes into the shell of the other preliminary heater on its way to the condenser. The concentrated brine from the lowest effet is removed by a brine pump. The condensed water is pumped into tanks, where it is stored for use.

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxvii. p. 344.

The removal of compounds that are truly hydrated, or in chemical combination with water, hardly comes within the province of the engineer.

271. We proceed to consider in more detail the operation of purifying water for domestic and industrial purposes, and to notice the apparatus necessary in each particular case. The several important processes may be summarised as those of settlement, straining, filtration and precipitation. It seldom happens that all of these processes are applied to any one water, but only such as are most applicable to the individual case.

272. When surface-water is collected into a storage-reservoir or river-water is pumped into a tank, the subsidence of matter in suspension, if heavier than water, commences as soon as any portion of the water attains such a state of quiescence that the velocity of its internal whirls and eddies is no longer sufficient to buoy up the material in question. Floating bodies are partially removed by the overflow of the reservoir. As may be naturally inferred, all the conditions that conduce to stillness in the body of the water, favour such clarification; whilst on the other hand, commotion has an advantage in promoting purification by aëration.

As the internal whirls and eddies in the water die out, the suspended matter, if heavier than water and of sensible size, very soon falls to the bottom. But if it be in an extremely fine state of division, so that the ratio of the amount of surface of each individual particle to its volume is large, its downward velocity is very slow, and the resistance to its motion then varies as the velocity instead of with some higher power of it.

That is to say,

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -kv$$

where v is the downward velocity at the time t and k is a constant.

Then $\log \frac{v}{V} = -kt$, V being the velocity when $t = o$.

Therefore $v = V\epsilon^{-kt}$.

Integrating, $s = \frac{V}{k}(1 - \epsilon^{-kt})$.

This equation shows that if $t = \infty$, $s = \frac{V}{k}$; i.e. in an infinite time such a particle only settles a finite distance equal to $\frac{V}{k}$. From this it follows that water containing suspended matter of impalpable fineness would never become clear by settlement.

273. The draw-off works of a reservoir or the intake works of a river supply should be placed in such a situation as to command the clearest water. This necessitates their being removed from places where the entrance or confluence of streams causes commotion in the water, or where the nature of the beach is such that a turbid condition is liable to be produced by the action of the waves upon it. Before leaving the reservoir or entering the pump-well, as the case may be, previous to filtration water is passed through strainers of copper or brass wire-gauze. The size of the mesh employed varies

according to the impurities dealt with. That of the Glasgow Waterworks is $\frac{1}{40}$ inch; that of the Vartry works, Dublin, and of the Manchester Waterworks at Thirlemere is $\frac{1}{30}$ inch, whilst that introduced on the Liverpool Waterworks at Vyrnwy has 100 wires per lineal inch. For cleansing fine gauze strainers, some special process must be applied, such as the action of jets of water impinging on their inner surface. The straining-chamber is constructed either in the reservoir or river as a tower, or as a well in the adjacent ground. It is frequently circular in plan, the strainers being arranged in polygonal form concentric with the well; the inlet then communicates with the annular space thus formed, and the clear-water outlet is within the polygon formed by the strainers—sometimes, however, these latter are arranged as a diaphragm across the well, but, for large works, less effectively. The wire gauze supported by strong netting of large mesh, is stretched across the strainer-frames, which are best made of timber, as a galvanic action is liable to be set up between the copper gauze and iron. The frames, rectangular in shape, are made of a size convenient for being lifted and are in duplicate, balanced, sliding in vertical guides, and actuated by a rack and pinion arrangement or by winch and chain situated overhead. By this means, one set of strainers is always in action whilst the duplicate set is being cleansed.

Straining and settlement, agents of purification in almost every waterworks, were formerly the only processes adopted for the treatment of the Thames water used for the supply of London; until the increased demand necessitated the introduction of more expeditious methods, and wider knowledge led to more active measures being taken to purify water derived from previously polluted sources. Filtration, introduced by James Simpson, which is in the present day deemed to afford the best practical means of purifying water, whether polluted by the presence of inorganic or organic substances, is however greatly assisted and accelerated by the previous application of the processes of straining and settlement; and whilst it is cheaper to remove very fine suspended matter by filtration than by these processes, they afford in combination with filtration a more economical course of treatment than the latter alone. For, whilst the cost of constructing settling-ponds of sufficient size to permit the complete clarification of turbid water, would be frequently prohibitive; the rate at which filtration can be effectively performed is much increased, and the cost consequently reduced, by the removal of the grosser suspended matter in settling-ponds, as a preliminary step; and, as will be seen later (§ 292), the "life" of a filter, i.e. the period during which it can work without attention to the filtering medium, is the all-important factor of the cost of filtration.

274. In order to prevent the development of micro-organisms of nearly every kind in water, it is desirable that water should not stand in settling-ponds exposed to atmospheric influences too long; for, whilst a goodly number of microphytes are carried down by the falling sediment, they soon begin to disperse again through clear water and to multiply under the favourable conditions that generally obtain in such ponds. There are two methods of settlement in use—the intermittent and the continuous—and the design of settling-ponds depends upon which of the two it is proposed to adopt. In the first-named system, the pond is filled and when the suspended particles are precipitated, the clear water is drawn off to a depth depending upon the length of time allotted to the action, and the degree of clarification aimed at. In order to

maintain the delivery at a somewhat uniform rate, draw-off valves are advantageously situated at different levels and opened successively from the top as subsidence proceeds, or a decanting pipe may be used (§ 307). By intermittent settlement, however, the time occupied in filling is partially wasted owing to the commotion caused thereby, and to a certain extent that occupied in emptying. Also, it is necessary, in this system, to situate the lowest draw-off valve of the settling-pond at a higher level than that of the water-surface in the filters, which is sometimes inconvenient and almost always expensive.

275. Both of these objections are absent from the continuous-flow method, by which the top-water level is but little higher than that of the filters and filling proceeds simultaneously with the delivery from the outlet. One important aim of this system is to continually draw off the water that has been longest in the pond. In order to attain this end, experience shows that it is desirable to divide the settling-ponds by diaphragm walls into longitudinal galleries about 6 yards wide, the depth being between 2 yards and 3 yards. A special feature of certain continuous-flow settling-ponds, built at Frankfort and other places by Mr. W. H. Lindley, is a vertical diaphragm termed the "immersion-plate," sliding in grooves situated near to the outlet end, dividing the ponds into two parts. The plate is a little less in height than the depth of the water. In summer, the river-water which forms the supply is warmer than that in the pond, and, after entering, sinks as it gradually cools; the immersion-plate is then lifted so that its upper edge stands above the surface; consequently, the water from the neighbourhood of the bottom of the pond, which has been longest in it, is always being drawn off under the plate. In winter, on the other hand, the river-water is cooler than the pond-water, and consequently

sinks to the bottom immediately it is admitted; the immersion plate is therefore depressed, and the upper layers of water, which have been in the longest, are continuously discharged over it.

Between 15 and 20 hours are generally occupied in clarifying the water by this means, the longitudinal velocity being between $\frac{1}{14}$ inch and $\frac{1}{20}$ inch per second; whilst at Frankfort only six hours are occupied in removing 90 per cent. of the total suspended solids. The rate of working settling-ponds depends upon the degree of turbidity of the water dealt with, and also upon the fineness and specific gravity of the sediment. The water-supply of Yokohama carries in flood time a large quantity of heavy silt that settles so rapidly that clarification takes place at the rate of 1 foot vertically in 80 minutes when perfect quiescence is attained; and the flow through the settling-pond takes place at a velocity of $\frac{1}{3}$ inch per second. Notwithstanding the extra cost incurred in construction, the advantages attached to covered settling-ponds render the type worthy of consideration. Firstly, in covered ponds the water is protected from the action of the wind, and precipitation consequently proceeds more rapidly; secondly, the water is prevented from freezing in them in winter; and thirdly, the darkness and superior coolness are inimical to the development of *algæ* and other green plants which furnish food to animals, fungi and bacteria.

276. The construction of settling-ponds is such a simple matter that it scarcely calls for more than passing mention. The cheapest form is a sunk tank with sloping sides, the banks being formed with the spoil from the excavation of the floor. The inside of the pond may be lined with 6 inches or 9 inches of concrete, the floor being sloped longitudinally at about 1 in 30 and laterally, to a central longitudinal drain, at the same rate. The semi-fluid

sludge is then readily scoured off when the tank is not working, by means of a sludge-valve outlet at the lower end of the longitudinal drain. Circumstances will determine modifications of construction which it is unnecessary to deal with here—the general features as to draw-off valves, overflows, roofing, etc., being executed much on the same lines as those of service-reservoirs (§ 262), but the tanks are of much lighter construction, because shallower.

Of course, in cases where the water is unusually clear at the source, it is most properly merely strained and filtered without settlement.

277. Filtration takes place both naturally and artificially. The greatest and also the most efficient filters are the permeable strata of the earth's crust whence our spring waters are derived (§ 131). The water that percolates into both shallow and deep wells and all underground collecting-galleries is filtered during its passage through the rocks and sub-soil, to an extent that depends upon the compactness of the strata traversed and their freedom from faults and open beds and joints. In many cases the supplies to wells or collecting-chambers gradually decrease as the pores of the superincumbent formation become choked with the mud and other matters strained out of the water in its passage.

In the case of a deep well, such decrease is usually slow; for the water is filtered long before it arrives in the immediate vicinity of the well; and the wide area from which the supply is drawn renders any effect from this cause insensible, and the decrease ordinarily observed is due to other circumstances (§ 129). An exception to the rule may, however, occur where water in its passage to a well, percolates beds containing very soluble substances, and, after becoming impregnated with them, partially redeposits them in the pores of the rock around the well.

The most suitable situation for a collecting-gallery is parallel to the shore of a lake or river, on the side to which the principal subterranean drainage takes place. In such a position the gallery intercepts land-water percolating towards the lake or river, and naturally filtered through the earth. If not drawn from the collecting-gallery or well faster than it is supplied through the land, naturally-filtered sub-soil water is collected (§ 125). If, however, as is generally practised, the draught from the gallery exceeds this limit, water is drawn into it from the adjacent lake or river supposed to be at a higher level than the gallery-floor, and is, if the situation of the works is well chosen, effectively filtered in its passage through the intervening ground. When water is thus derived from rivers, if the strata constituting their beds are fairly compact, the mud filtered out is caught on the surface and is continually washed away by the current—thus a natural self-cleansing filter is established. A lake filter-gallery is without this advantage.

The quantity of water that may be derived in fairly pure condition from such collecting-galleries, can only be estimated approximately by trial borings and pumping: excessive draught means certain deterioration of the quality of the supply. The construction of filter-galleries is treated in § 125, and it is only necessary to point out the desirability of excluding surface-water by impervious sides and roof of rubble or other building-material, and of drawing the supply through the floor only.

When a portion of an aqueduct consists of tunnels, a considerable augmentation of the supply often takes place at these points, by the addition to the flow of the ground-water that drains into them. This, and the methods of collecting water by means of open canals or drain-pipes with open joints (§ 126), laid at a distance below the surface and surrounded by gravel or shells, afford other examples of natural filtration into artificial channels.

278. Notwithstanding its clearness and apparent purity, it is generally advisable that water collected from catchment-areas or pumped out of rivers should be artificially filtered before being used. Sand-filtration is the process usually adopted, although it is not infrequently supplemented by other methods of treatment. Water is filtered through sand by either allowing it to percolate downwards under gravity, or forcing it upwards through a bed of the material, which varies in different works between 1 foot and 6 feet in thickness. Such a range in the depth of the filtering layer may well call for comment, and would not be found were the action of this process of purification always clearly understood.

The system of downward filtration is that almost always practised, on account of the great facilities it affords for the cleansing of the filters—a proceeding that is greatly expedited if means are provided for forcing filtered water upwards through the sand at such a time; this provision is most desirable, as filter-basins should always be charged in this manner.

We may here observe that in every system of purification and especially in that of sand-filtration, the maintenance and cleansing of the apparatus employed is at once the most necessary and costly part of the entire proceeding; and true economy of design consists in devising the works so that their maintenance and the labour involved in their daily working may be as light as is consistent with efficiency.

A sand-filter consists essentially of a water-tight basin containing a number of layers of the filtering material, with arrangements for admitting water above the top-layer and for drawing it off when filtered from underneath the bottom-layer.

279. There are two ways of forming the basin, the most

suitable plan in any particular case depending upon the position and the nature of the foundation. Generally, the construction of filter-basins is very similar to that of service-reservoirs (§ 262) and settling-ponds (§ 276); and we therefore merely recapitulate here the leading features of this class of work. If the filter is sunk below the ground level, provision should be carefully made for draining away land-water from the outside, at any rate down to the level of the floor of the basin. The floor and sides are built of concrete, brickwork, or masonry, and may be made absolutely impervious, as follows: The floors may be constructed as described in the case of service-reservoirs by first spreading a layer of concrete about 6 inches thick, brought up to a smooth surface and covered with asphalted felt or similar material, the joints between overlapping sheets being made by heating the asphalt along the edge of the sheet, and finishing off with a 6-inch layer of water-tight concrete. The asphalted felt is carried up behind the side walls and is there protected by a layer of puddle. Where the basin is in cutting, the puddle behind the side-walls is supported by the solid ground; but where it is above the ground-level, the puddle must be backed with an embankment of earth sufficiently strong to resist the pressure of water due to the head inside the basin. The side-walls must be designed of ample strength to support the lateral pressure of the puddle and earth behind them. Owing to the comparatively small head of water to the pressure of which filter-basins are exposed, and the consequent slightness of the walls and floors, there are one or two points in the construction of these latter that call for special attention. In these long thin walls the upper portion may be so far affected by temperature as to expand considerably more than the lower portion, and may exhibit a tendency to arch itself upon the latter and to form horizontal cracks along the least adherent joints of the concrete. Gaps, also, must be studiously avoided in long walls, as liable to cause the development of horizontal cracks through actual shearing of the concrete by the lateral expansion of the walls into such gaps. Similarly, during construction, the floor of a filter-basin is apt to expand into the gap formed by the recessed main drain, if that form is used, and thus to produce fracture of the drain. These difficulties, however, only arise during the construction of the works. In hot weather, the walls may be kept in good order by screening them from the sun ; and, as soon as the last concrete is laid upon the floor, a few inches of water should be run over it, the great thermal capacity of the water effectively guarding the concrete against excessive variation of temperature.

If the basin is completely sunk below the ground, the sides are sometimes formed by battering the excavation to the requisite angle of repose of the earth and wet puddle, and covering the slopes so formed with squared stone pitching, closely packed by hand on the top of the puddle and not less than a foot in thickness. This construction, however, is better adapted to settling-ponds than to filter-basins. Of course, if the foundations happen to be in good clay the puddle may be omitted.

280. To prevent overflow during the process of charging the basins with water and regulating their rate of working, an overflow-pipe or weir may be provided at the top-water level; but the same result is frequently attained by situating the overflow as a branch on the inlet-pipe before it enters the basin, or at the distributing-well from which a series of filters are supplied, if there is one. It is convenient to fix a scour-pipe commanded by a valve at the level of the surface of the sand, for use during the cleansing of the bed, and this pipe may well be taken by a branch off the overflow-pipe. A second scour-pipe for completely emptying

the basin, drawing from the lowest point of the outlet-drain, may be provided as a branch off the overflow-pipe. The sand employed for filtering should be heavy, of uniformly fine granular nature, with sharp arrises, and about $\frac{1}{50}$ inch diameter. No sand of uniform granular size occurs in nature, and the attrition experienced by filtering-sand rounds its arrises and gradually comminutes it, until it is borne away in the washing process and lost. This waste has to be continually made good, and is a source of considerable expense in the working of sand filters. With such material, the effective straining of impurities out of the water takes place quite near the surface; and although, to a certain extent, oxidation of organic nitrites or ammonia may proceed during the passage of the water through the filter, it may be stated that generally a layer of sand 2 feet in thickness forms as effective a filtering medium as any greater thickness, if the collecting drains are properly arranged. With badly designed collecting drains a greater thickness of fine sand increases the regularity of filtration over the whole area of the filter, because the resistance of the sand is greater than that of the drains. The sand is carried on a thinner layer of fine gravel, which in turn rests upon one of coarser gravel, beneath which is either a bed of rubble-stone forming a collecting stratum, or a network of small drains connected with one or more channels forming the main outlet-drains, *Figs. 60* and *63*. Such channels are frequently recessed in the floors of the basins; but in order to avoid breaking the continuity of the floors the main collecting- or outlet-drains are sometimes formed as small arched culverts resting upon the floor, and pierced with holes, near the bottom, through which the water enters. If the drains as thus constructed project into the filtering-layer, their upper part must be built water-tight, in order to prevent partially-filtered water from entering them, due to the rate of filtration in their neighbourhood being increased after the filter has been cleansed, by the diminished thickness of sand and consequent resistance. From the ends of the main collecting-drains farthest removed from the outlet, small pipes are carried up inside the walls, communicating with the atmosphere immediately under the copings, for the purpose of facilitating the escape of air from the drains during charging of the filter. No pipes should be carried directly through the layer of filtering material.

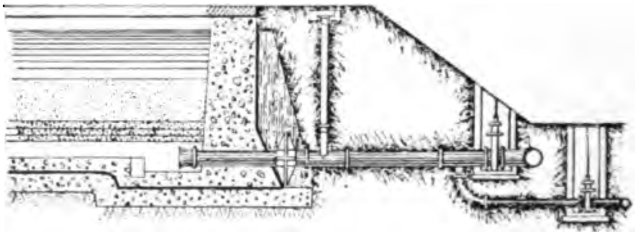
The inlet to the filter is arranged to deliver the yet unfiltered water at the level of the filtering-surface, the sand in the immediate neighbourhood being preserved from disturbance by stone pitching or flags set round the mouth of the inlet-pipe ; or, sometimes, the latter enters a small chamber built in the wall of the filter-basin, and from which the water overflows a metal or stone sill on to the sand. The depth of the water over this sill is kept steady by regulating a valve on the inlet-pipe, so that the quantity of water delivered to the filter may be maintained approximately constant. The water entering the filter may be conveniently and accurately gauged by a water-meter of the inferential recording type placed on the inlet-pipe. The Deacon meter (§ 111) is a very suitable appliance for use under such conditions. Sometimes, instead of the supply being measured at the inlet, the discharge is measured at the outlet of a filter ; but the former method is preferable, as the measurement can be generally effected there under a constant head.

281. The necessity for adjusting the inlet-valves continually, to maintain a constant delivery to filters, is avoided when the unfiltered water is supplied direct from reservoirs or settling-ponds, situated at an elevation sufficient to produce the required flow, and of sufficient area to prevent the surface-level from being materially

affected by variation in the supply from the sources. This is a convenient arrangement in pumping-works, where the reservoir, in addition to providing the necessary balance between the irregularities of pumping which frequently occur, is constructed so as to perform effectively the work of a settling-pond. But, it must be observed, that such a reservoir by no means fulfils the complete function of a service-reservoir (§ 192), which must be provided, even in such a case, between the filters and the consumers.

The constant delivery to, and discharge from, filters is necessitated by considerations of economy in the construction and maintenance of works of purification, in which it is essential that the rate of working contemplated shall be the average obtaining in the season of maximum supply; and the equalisation of this average to the fluctuations in the demands of consumption, must evidently be effected after purification has taken place.

Fig. 60.



Scale 1 inch = 10 feet.

282. The outlet-pipe, *Fig. 60*, is taken from the end of the main collecting-drain, and is provided with a stop-valve, and frequently with a small vertical branch on the filter side of this valve, containing a float by means of which may be ascertained the "head" under which the filter is working at any time, i. e. the difference in level between

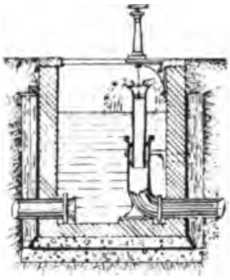
the water-surfaces in the basin and the vertical pipe. As the filter becomes fouled through the interception and retention, on the surface and in the instertices of the sand, of the impurities carried by the water, the head necessary to maintain its discharge constant increases gradually, and the valve on the outlet-pipe has to be correspondingly opened, in order to ensure this increase of head by reducing the pressure in the outlet. For, it may be here mentioned that, although not the invariable practice, it is best on every account to secure increased head by this means, and not by raising the water-level in the basin. The head is seldom, in good practice, allowed to exceed 2 feet as a maximum, depending upon the filtering medium. Before any such head as this is attained, it may be usually regarded as evidence that the sand needs to be cleaned, or its surface improved by the removal of the top-film.

A plan of controlling and regulating the filtering "head," superior to that of employing a throttle-valve on the outlet-pipe, is to carry the latter into a small well, which may form the converging points of the outlets of the entire series of filter-basins if at the same level. In this well, the outlet-pipes are turned up vertically, and provided with telescopic joints actuated by screws and hand-wheels overhead ; and here the upper portions of the telescopic pipes are depressed, as occasion requires, to maintain constant discharge from the filters by increasing the head as the sand becomes fouled and its resistance to percolation of the water increases. This is illustrated in *Fig. 61.*

By a still more refined method, this regulation is performed automatically. Thus, at Warsaw, the discharge from the filter passes through an outlet-well, in which the clear-water supply-pipe is turned up vertically and enclosed by a cylindrical telescopic can suspended from a float, and pierced by a number of holes near to its upper edge.

Whatever, then, may be the water-level in the outlet-well, the can maintains the same position relative to that level, and the clear-water discharge through the holes is constant, notwithstanding the increased head under which the filter is being worked. At length, when the head has so far increased that the depressed water-level of the outlet-well brings the holes in the can below the up-turned edge of the clear-water supply-pipe—a condition previously arranged in accordance with the intended maximum working "head" for the filter—the discharge practically ceases, indicating that the sand requires attention. A form of apparatus, somewhat similar to an ordinary reducing-valve, has been also applied to this purpose.

Fig. 61.



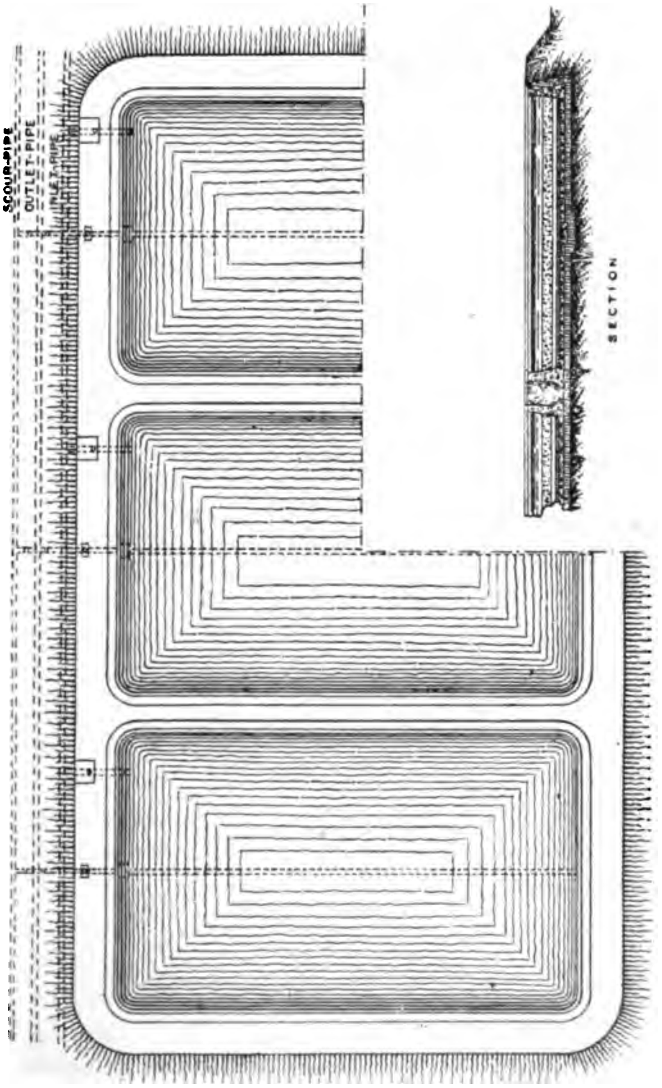
Scale 1 inch = 10 feet.

Figs. 62 show a general plan and section of the Yokohama filters, which were designed to treat 1,250,000 gallons per day, and were constructed in 1887.

283. From the filter-outlet or outlet-well, the clear water is conducted into a "clear-water tank," which should not be less than 1·5 feet deep, and is preferably roofed, as light and warmth are congenial to confervoid growth; and near large towns the presence of atmospheric impurities renders this course essential. The elevation of this tank should be such that its top-water level may be so far below that of the filter-basin, as to allow for the maximum filtering-head, together with that required for conveyance of the water from the outlet of the latter to it; and, if the distance between the two is small, the water in the clear-water tank may be often arranged to stand, when full, at a higher level than the sand in the filter: this is a most

serviceable arrangement in respect of charging the filter with clear water from below, after it has been emptied for cleansing purposes, whenever it can be adopted.

Figs. 62.



FILTER BASINS, YOKOHAMA WATERWORKS. Scale $\frac{1}{500}$.

Where the filters are situated near to the place of distribution, the clear-water tank may be built large enough to act as a service-reservoir; but if otherwise, it may be quite small, built like a balancing-tank on a gravitation main (§ 357), to contain 2 hours' flow, or thereabouts, of the clear water discharged into it from the filters.

Where a series of filter-basins are situated at different levels, they cannot conveniently discharge through one outlet-well, but must each be independently provided with an outlet-well, or be throttled at the outlet-valves so as to produce constant discharge through each. The former is the better system, especially when the regulation is performed automatically ; as the manipulation of the several sluice-valves is apt to prove both expensive and inefficient in practice.

284. Having described the construction of the filter-basin and its appurtenances, we proceed to discuss the preparation of the actual filtering-bed; because the consideration of this matter, although an essential preliminary to the design of the size and form of the basin and the arrangement of the collecting-drains, is in practice the last that claims attention, and further leads directly to the highly-important subject of the working of this system of water-purification.

In the first place, it will be readily understood that a desideratum of effective filtration, is the utmost attainable uniformity in the percolation of the water through every part of the filter. It is, however, impossible to cause the filtration throughout the whole area of a filter to be absolutely uniform, for the following reason :—

Assuming the resistance of the sand and gravel to be everywhere the same, if the percolation throughout the entire filter were perfectly uniform, the hydrostatic pressure in the drains underneath the filtering-material would be everywhere constant, and there could therefore be no flow through them.

In order that there may be flow through the drains, the pressure in them must decrease towards the outlet; and, in order to make the vertical flow through the sand as uniform as possible, the pressure at successive points along a drain towards its outlet should decrease uniformly. From this it follows that, since the pressure in the drains is less as the outlet is approached, the rate of filtration is greatest near to that point, and decreases with the distance away from it.

Therefore, in order to equalise the rate of filtration at all parts of the filter as far as possible: (1) the length of the drains should be small; (2) their area should be large; (3) they should be numerous; (4) the size of the main drains should be increased in accordance with the number of sub-drains discharging into them; (5) the thickness of the sand should be considerable; and (6) it should be fine in its granular structure.

The first three of these conditions would evidently reduce the fall in pressure between the remotest point of the drains and the outlet to a minimum. The fourth condition involves the fall in pressure being uniform. The fifth and sixth conditions, by increasing the resistance to the percolation of water through the sand, cause the retarding influence of the drains to be small in comparison; consequently, notwithstanding the varying pressure in the drains at different places, the flow of water through the sand would tend to uniformity.

From these considerations it appears that, with fixed dimensions of drains, filtration is generally more uniform in a small filter than in a large one; also, that it is more uniform the greater the thickness of the sand.

When, however, the drains are properly proportioned and arranged, the rise of pressure in them from the outlet to their remote parts is trifling in amount. The chief loss of head occurs as the water passes through the sand and the impurities which collect on its surface. But if the drains are too few and too small, it is possible that an unduly large part of the filtration may take place through that portion of the filter nearest to the outlet.

285. In filters in which the collecting-drains are formed of gravel or rubble this result undoubtedly obtains, to an extent depending on the size of the interstices of the material. The area of the drains in such cases does not increase with the increased quantity of water to be conveyed through them. Taking into consideration both cost of construction and economy of working, about 30,000 square feet is the best superficial area for filter-basins, when a large quantity of water has to be dealt with. Of course, if the total requisite filtering-area be less than this, it is necessary to proportion the size of the basin accordingly—building two filters of the required area in order that one may be cleaned and aërated when required, without interfering with the continuity of the clear-water supply. A square filter is economical in construction, because its perimeter is less than that of any other rectangular figure of equal area; but when hollow-brick drains are employed, it is desirable that filters should be oblong—the outlet being at the middle of one of the shorter sides—as the length of the collecting-drains is thus shortened and regularity of filtration is promoted. A filter, 200 feet by 150 feet on the floor, is of economical and serviceable proportions. When, from considerations of cheapness, broken stones or gravel are adopted for the primary collecting-drains of a filter, the friction caused by them may be compensated by the provision of drains in larger number, in order to render the flow through the sand at different parts as uniform as possible. In such a

case, for a filter 200 feet by 150 feet, four collecting-drains may be provided, into which the water from the gravel primarily enters. A main drain runs up the centre of the filter to intercept the water from the collecting drains, but that out of the gravel does not directly drain into it. In order to make the loss of head in the main drain as small as possible and so to reduce the difference of pressure at the ends of the collecting-drains, the outlet should be in the middle of the longer side. The area of the collecting-drains may be 1 square foot, and that of the main central drain such as to ensure uniform loss of pressure proceeding along it towards the outlet, i. e. in the formula (§ 66)

$$v = c\sqrt{m\,i},$$

i would be constant.

Now, $$\frac{Q}{A} = v;$$

therefore $$\frac{Q}{A} \propto \sqrt{m}.$$

Assuming the drain to be square, of area A and side d,

$$A = d^2,$$

also $$m = \frac{d}{4};$$

therefore $$Q \propto d^{\frac{5}{2}}.$$

Denoting by d_1, d_2, d_3, d_4, the dimension of the side of the main drain after it leaves each of the four collecting-drains, respectively,

then $d_1 = 2^{\frac{2}{5}}$; $d_2 = 4^{\frac{2}{5}}$; $d_3 = 6^{\frac{2}{5}}$; and $d_4 = 8^{\frac{2}{5}}$

foot $= 1·32$; foot $= 1·74$; feet $= 2·05$; feet $= 2·30$.

Of course, in practice, the dimensions actually employed would be the nearest to those found, that the materials used to build the drain would work to. If in concrete, the exact size is easily observed.

With this arrangement, the pressure in the main drain decreases uniformly towards the outlet, and there will therefore be a greater filtering-head near to the outlet than away from it.

286. A superior plan is to make the primary collecting-drains of bricks on edge covered with bricks on their sides, or, better still, of hollow bricks laid dry, through which the water can flow with as little resistance as it experiences in the main drains, as the following calculation shows: Taking a filter of the same size as that previously considered—200 feet by 150 feet, and supposing that it filters 10 feet of water vertically per day, i.e. 3·5 cubic feet per second; suppose the main drain, 2 feet square and 200 feet long, running along the middle of the filter, collects all the water and conveys it to the outlet; the velocity at the end of the drain is $\frac{3\cdot5}{4}$ or 0·88 foot per second. Denoting by x the distance of any point from the commencement of the drain, by v the velocity at that point, by h the loss of head to that point, and by d the side of the drain,

$$\frac{v}{0\cdot88} = \frac{200}{x},$$

or

$$v = 0\cdot0044\,x.$$

Now,

$$v = c\sqrt{d \times \frac{dh}{dx}};$$

therefore

$$\frac{dh}{dx} = \frac{v^2}{c^2 d} = \frac{(0\cdot0044)^2 x^2}{c^2 d}.$$

Integrating,

$$\int_0^h dh = \int_0^{200} \frac{(0\cdot0044)^2}{2c^2} \times x^2\,dx.$$

Therefore the loss of head,

$$h = \frac{(0\cdot0044)^2}{2\,c^2} \times \frac{(200)^3}{3}$$

$$= \frac{25\cdot8}{c^2}\ feet.$$

Instead of the main drain 2 feet square, suppose hollow bricks 4½ inches square with a 2½-inch round hole in each of them, laid end to end lengthwise along the filter-basin floor, and let the water flow through these instead of through a main drain. There would be across the filter $\frac{150 \times 12 \times 2}{9} = 400$ of these bricks; the flow through each would be $\frac{3\cdot5}{400}$ cubic foot; and the velocity at the lower end of each would be $\frac{3\cdot5}{400 \times 0\cdot034} = 0\cdot26$ foot per second.

Therefore $$\frac{v}{0\cdot26} = \frac{x}{200},$$

or $$v = 0\cdot0013\,x.$$

Now, $$v = c\sqrt{0\cdot21\frac{dh}{dx}};$$

therefore $$dh = \frac{(0\cdot0013)^2\,x^2\,dx}{0\cdot21\,c^2}.$$

Therefore the loss of head,

$$h = \frac{21\cdot5}{c^2}\ feet,$$

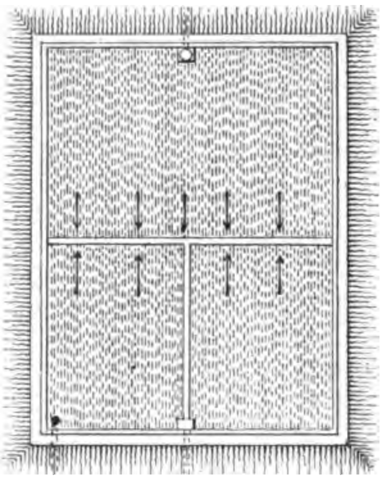
c being approximately the same as above, but rather smaller.

If the hollow bricks are placed side to side with a small space between them, the area of flow is still further increased. That is to say, the loss of head which occurs in forcing the water along a central main drain is about equal to the head that would force the same quantity of water through hollow-brick drains of the kind assumed.

To summarise the requirements for causing the filtering-head all over a filter to be as constant as possible, both the primary and the main collecting-drains should be short; and no water should be led away from the point where the last collecting-drain joins the main drain by a primary drain and brought towards it by a collecting-drain; also, collecting-drains present no advantage in conveyance over perforated brick drains.

After the last collecting-drain joins the main drain, the latter should be built water-tight. The head required to convey the water to the outlet from that point does not affect the uniformity of filtration.

Fig. 63.



287. The arrangement indicated in *Fig. 63* is designed to cause the least practicable difference of pressure in the drains; the water flows through primary hollow-brick drains from both ends to a central transverse collecting-drain. The main drain being built water-tight, the loss of head in conveying the water through it does not affect the uniformity of action of the filter.

The loss of head in the 2½-inch drains, from the above calculation, is $\frac{21{\cdot}5}{8c^2} = \frac{2{\cdot}69}{c^2}$ *feet;* and the loss of head in the collecting-drain is

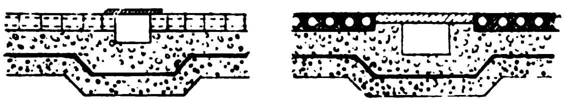
$$\left(\frac{8}{6}\right)^2 \times \left(\frac{3}{8}\right)^3 \times \frac{25 \cdot 8}{c^2}$$

$$= \frac{3}{32} \times \frac{25 \cdot 8}{c^2}$$

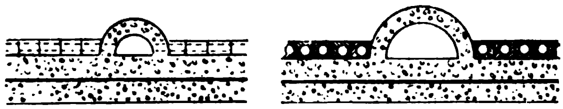
$$= \frac{2 \cdot 42}{c^2} \textit{ feet.}$$

Hence the maximum difference of head with this arrangement of drains is $\frac{5 \cdot 11}{c^2}$ *feet*, or about $\frac{1}{25}$ inch; with the central drain previously referred to, the difference of head is about $\frac{1}{5}$ inch. It is therefore evident that, by properly designing the drains, the loss of head from this cause is insignificant compared with the total head required to work the filter, which varies between 2 inches and 2 feet in good practice. In other words, the sand, and especially the impurities which collect on its surface and in its upper interstices, offer practically the whole of the resistance; and it may be said that, with properly designed drains, the head is uniform over the whole area of a filter.

Figs. 64.



Figs. 65.



COLLECTING-DRAINS. MAIN DRAINS.

288. Filter-drains are made of either of the two forms shown in *Figs.* 64 and 65.

The forms shown in *Fig. 65* possess the great advantage of not breaking the continuity of the filter-basin floor.

At the end of each collecting-drain the air-pipes previously alluded to are placed to permit the free escape of air from the drains whilst the filter is being charged with water, and to preserve the sand from being disturbed by air-" blows."

289. The rate at which percolation of the water through a filter may be permitted to take place concurrently with efficient purification is a question of the utmost importance; for upon this depends the filtering-area required and the consequent cost of the works both as regards construction and maintenance.

The greater the rate of filtration, the smaller the area required—in exact inverse ratio. It is at once clear that this rate must much depend upon the condition of the water to be treated; but means are taken by precipitation processes, accelerated, if need be, by such methods as those alluded to in § 269, to so far clarify water that, as a matter of actual practice, the rate may be between 6 feet and 12 feet per 24 hours.

Variations from this rule are to be found under special circumstances; but that expresses generally the vertical movement of ordinary water through a sand filter. Hence the actual filtering-area required for 1,000,000 gallons per 24 hours, lies between 13,000 square feet and 26,000 square feet. For such rates of filtration, a thickness of 2 feet of sand suffices. The sand employed should be angular and free from dust; its sharp facets will then extract the finer particles of mud out of the water as it slowly percolates through the bed; but the principal part of the straining-process is effected by the layer of fine sediment and organic scum which soon forms on the surface of the sand when the filter is put into work. The layers of gravel, usually about 6 inches thick, under-lying the sand and graduated of successively coarser quality, are introduced to prevent the finer materials of the bed from finding their way down into the filter-drains.

The normal depth of water over the surface of the sand should be merely sufficient to prevent it from being disturbed by the formation of ice in winter, and from being fouled by organic growths at other seasons—observing also that the surface of the clear-water tank may be often advantageously kept above the level of the filtering-sand Where filters are roofed, the two former considerations cease to have weight; but, in any case, 2 feet may be taken as the minimum depth of water over the sand in this country.

It seems ridiculous to have to state that this depth of water has not necessarily any effect upon the rate of filtration, which is entirely dependent upon the difference of the water-levels in the filter-basin, and in the outlet-well, and the cleanliness of the sand and the size and arrangement of the drains; we only do so because incorrect views on this subject sometimes find currency, and lead to improper work. The rate of filtration is, as explained in § 282, most properly governed at the outlet-well—the greatest permissible head being about 2 feet 6 inches; beyond which, the water may be expected to cease percolating uniformly through the filter.

290. In English and Continental practice, the area of filters for large supplies varies between 2000 square yards and 8000 square yards. Economy of construction is doubtless attained by relatively large filter-basins; but the more potent factor of cost of maintenance—facility in cleansing, and the fact that at least one bed must be constantly out of action for this purpose, imposes a limit beyond which it ceases to be economical to increase the

area of filter-basins. This limit is about 3500 square yards. It is a matter of considerable importance in designing a set of filters to arrange the basins so that the sand, as it becomes fouled, may be readily removed, washed and replaced. To reduce as far as possible carriage of the sand, the washing-machinery is sometimes placed within the basin itself: but the obvious drawback to this arrangement—that the filter has to be kept out of action whilst any portion of the sand is washed—is sufficient to prevent its general adoption. A better plan is to centralise the entire sand-washing machinery in one place, and to arrange the filter-basins symmetrically about it. The Lake Tegel filters of the Berlin waterworks, for example, are situated radially round such a space.

291. It has been already noticed (§ 284) that there is always an absence of perfect uniformity throughout a filter of the rate at which percolation through the sand proceeds, due to the diminished pressure in the drains as the outlet is approached. With a well-designed system of drains, however, this want of equality at different parts of the basin rapidly disappears as the filtering-head, in working, increases; the loss of head in the drains should always be but a small fraction of that due to the motion of the water through the sand; and when the latter is foul, that fraction becomes insensibly small.

The "life" of a filter is, of course, determined by the quality of the water treated, and may be found to vary between a week and two months. As soon as the head is observed to have attained the maximum prescribed limit, the basin is completely emptied of water, in order to give the sand an opportunity of becoming aërated, and a stratum of about half an inch in thickness is removed from the surface of the layer of sand in it. The same method of proceeding is employed each time that the filter requires to be cleaned, until the layer of sand is reduced to a thickness of 1 foot. When this occurs, all the sand that is discoloured, generally extending to a depth of about ⅓ foot, is removed, and the remaining thickness is then ploughed and furrowed in order to aërate it, and so to oxidise and destroy any small quantity of organic matter that may have been carried down into it. After this has been effected, the sand is made up to its original thickness by the addition of clean washed sand.

When the filter is ready for use, it should be filled from below with filtered water, which should be allowed to run away for a time off the surface of the sand. In commencing work again the rate of percolation should at first be exceedingly slow, and should be very gradually increased during a period of several days, until the normal rate of working is attained, and the water first filtered should be run to waste. The reason for these latter precautions is that the mud which is at first deposited on the facets of the sand, is readily detached, until after a thin scum has been formed on the surface, which then becomes the chief agent in straining out and collecting the fine matter that is suspended in the water.

292. This method of starting a filter is in effect equivalent to admitting muddy water upon the sand, and then letting the mud settle, with the outlet-valves closed ; after which the filter may be considered ready to start work. By this means, a very thin layer of a filtering medium is formed far finer than ordinary sand and capable of arresting even the minutest micro-organisms in its interstices. If the filter-basins are at the same level as the clear-water tank, the latter must be lowered considerably in order to empty any of the basins for cleaning purposes ; and, to charge a cleaned filter from below with filtered water, the level of the clear-water tank must be high.

There are thus difficulties both ways. But if the clear-water tank is also the service-reservoir, advantage may be taken of the increased consumption during the day and the decrease during the night, to effect these results.

In 10 working hours, a layer of sand ¾ inch thick can be removed from an area of about 3000 square yards by 20 men. The labour necessary can be considerably reduced by simply scraping the layer of sand into heaps, and instead of using barrows and plankways to remove it, to use a portable ejector with a 2½-inch hose-pipe on the supply side and a 3-inch hose-pipe on the delivery side. The sand from the heaps is thrown into the hopper attached to the injector and transported through the delivery pipe to the washer, where it arrives in a semi-washed condition. Such an injector can remove 7 cubic yards of dirty sand per hour. In 4 working days of 10 hours each, the same number of men can scrape off the discoloured sand, when the thickness of the layer has become reduced to the minimum allowed, furrow the remainder, and re-fill the basin with clean washed sand. Before washing the sand that has been taken off a filter, it is well to expose it as long as convenient to the action of the atmosphere in order to allow organic matter in it to oxidise.

A method of prolonging the life of a filter, before removing the top layer of sand for washing, especially in the summer-time when a confervoid scum is apt to form on the surface of the sand, is to run off the water from the basin and let the layer of mud dry in the sun, then to break it up with rakes and wash it away by a stream of water over the surface of the sand, and down the sluice-way that is situated at that level.

293. The ratio of reserve area required to the total filtering-area depends upon the number of filters. It varies from about 1 to 7 where there are numerous filters,

to about 1 to 3, in cases where there are fewer. Of course in the case of very small filtering-areas, where only two basins are constructed, it must be 1 to 2.

As an illustration, take the case of 7 filters, each needing to be cleaned once a-week; one filter would then have to be cleansed every day, and the reserve area required would be about 14 per cent.

Upon the approach of the hottest season of the year, it is desirable to have the layer of sand made up to its full thickness, in order that, during the period in which the filters are most severely taxed, it may not be necessary to replace the sand, as this takes much longer than merely scraping and removing its upper surface.

294. As a matter of economy in working and maintenance, filter-basins situated near to a town, or in a country subject to extreme variation of temperature, should be covered.

By this means, the absorption of noxious gases and impregnation with soot is largely prevented, and a more uniform temperature is maintained in the water; although, to attain the latter result, it is necessary to have, in addition to the roof, a covering of at least 2½ feet of earth. By the exclusion of light and the avoidance of high temperature, the development of *algæ* is prevented; consequently, the filter requires cleaning less frequently than it otherwise does. Again, in a country subject to severe winters, if the filter-basins are open, there must be provided a sufficient total filtering-area to avoid the necessity for cleansing the sand during the cold season; since, if the ice is removed from an open filter, and the basin is emptied during the prevalence of frost, the surface of the sand is at once frozen, and the whole apparatus is thereby rendered useless.

Thick ice must always be kept broken round the sides of filter-basins, as of all other such tanks, in order to prevent the serious injury to the walls that would otherwise be done by the great lateral thrust of the solid ice-sheets. The chief draw-back to covered filters is the want of continuity of the layer of sand caused by the columns that carry the roof. If these pillars are of rough brickwork or concrete, the only point to be urged against them is the difficulty of laying the sand evenly about them ; but when they are of iron, there is an additional disadvantage resulting from the tendency of the water to "creep," improperly filtered, between the sand and the smooth skin of the columns. This action may, however, be much reduced by the attachment of a collar, or diaphragm, to every column placed at about the level of the middle of the minimum layer of sand allowed in working.

The advantages of covered over open filter-basins, in point of efficiency of purification, cannot be said to have been, up to the present time, clearly demonstrated ; and are probably dependent upon the particular class of water treated. On the other hand, the advantages alluded to above are sufficient to warrant the use of covered basins in many waterworks—their cost being, roughly, 50 per cent. in excess of that of open basins of equal area.

295. Although in nearly all modern waterworks, the arrangement of sand filter-beds indicated in § 280 is followed, such is not invariably the case. Sometimes, the sand rests on but a single layer of fine gravel carried by a dry-brick floor ; the water being introduced into the bottom of the basin, is forced upwards through the filter, and flows off the surface of the sand into the clear-water tank. It is considered that, by this system, the particles strained out of the water do not penetrate so far into the sand as they do in downward-filtration systems ; it offers certain facilities for cleansing by reversed flow of the water, the inlet being closed and a scour-valve in the bottom of the basin being

opened ; but its chief merit, according to our view, is that it permits of the clear water being conveniently stored over the filter, in cases where the filtering-head is derived from a main under pressure and economy of space is necessary.

296. Sand, although generally sufficient, is not always alone effective in completely removing certain very finely-divided matter from water. Turbid water that cannot be clarified by filtration through sand, may, however, be effectively treated by passing it through powdered cinders or charcoal. Thus, the water of the river Plate which proved intractable by sand-filtration, was satisfactorily dealt with at Buenos Ayres, by passing it through a filter in which a 3-inch layer of powdered cinders was superposed upon 1 foot of sand—the rate of filtration through this medium being as high as 19 feet per 24 hours. The effect thus obtained is partly chemical, but is so largely mechanical that the filter may be properly considered here, as one in which a highly porous but more comminuted material than ordinary sand is the operative medium of clarification.

297. As has been already pointed out, the arrangements for the regular cleansing of filters, occupy a position quite as important as the construction of the works. The structural features to facilitate this operation have already been touched upon ; and we now proceed to describe briefly the processes in ordinary use for washing the fouled sand that is periodically removed from the filter-beds, as required by the exigencies of the condition of the water under treatment and its immediate influence upon the filtering-head.

A very rudimentary method, still in use to a certain extent, is to stir the sand about in a box, into which water enters at the bottom, overflowing at the top and carrying the light foul matters away with it.

Another rough method is to wash the sand down a series of shoots by streams of clean water. At the bottom of each shoot is a wire-gauze screen through which the water escapes with its burden of dirt, the sand being raked into the upper end of the next shoot, and so on successively through the whole series.

By a modification of the above methods, giving more satisfactory results, the dirty sand is placed in a box with a perforated false bottom, through which water is forced upwards and overflows at the top. The sand is stirred about by means of a horizontal revolving screw, which first turns in one direction until it has piled the sand up at one end of the box, and is then reversed, carrying the sand back again. These reversals are continued until the sand is clean. The method is open to the objection that it is not continuous in feed and delivery and is therefore costly in attendance.

An effective means of sand-washing is afforded by the revolving-drum process. The drum made of boiler-plate, 10 feet or 15 feet in length, generally cylindrical, but sometimes conical, is about 3 feet in diameter, and inclined at about 1 in 25 to the horizontal. It is fitted inside with a continuous or broken projecting spiral formed of angle-iron, making 9 to 12 complete turns in the total length. A jet of water is introduced at the upper end of the drum, or is supplied through perforations in the hollow shaft that forms its axis. The sand is supplied from a hopper at the lower end of the drum, and, as the latter rotates on its axis, is carried along towards its upper end by means of the angle-iron spiral, meeting the stream of water, which is cleaner the nearer the sand gets to the upper end of the drum. The machine is rotated at the rate of 6 or 7 revolutions per minute, delivering the washed sand continuously from its upper end. To obtain full advantage of the water, the sand is first loaded into a box, through the bottom of which the water discharged from the cylinder, enters. Thence the sand is lifted into the supply-hopper by means of a bucket- or band elevator. By this machine, between 3 and 4 cubic yards of sand may be washed per hour; the water used being about 1500 gallons per cubic yard of sand washed.

Each drum requires about 1·5 horse-power to drive it. If the sand is very fine in quality, or extremely dirty, either a longer drum must be used, or a second may be added to work in conjunction with the first.

The number of bacteria present in foul sand may be reduced as much as 99 per cent. by such washing, if properly performed. A less effective modification of the apparatus is that in which the drum is fixed, and the axle, armed with radial propeller-blades, revolves and carries the sand forward with it against the stream of water.

The cost of washing sand may be greatly reduced when motive-power for the washer can be obtained from the pressure in the inlet-pipes or from other hydraulic sources, instead of steam-power. It must, however, not be overlooked, that, when clean sand is plentiful and handy, as at Amsterdam, it may be cheaper to procure new sand than to employ washing-processes in cleansing that which has become fouled; but washed sand is found to have a hard gelatinous coat of organic matter adhering to it, which is more efficacious in collecting the fine particles from the water filtering through it, than is absolutely clean sand.

298. When space is limited, mechanical filters may be used, the filtering head and rate of filtration being in some cases considerably increased.

If the water is noticeably coloured, sulphate of ammonia —about 1 grain per gallon of water—may be used as a coagulent. After subsidence the water is passed through strainers and then admitted below the sand into the filters.

The latter are cleansed sometimes at as short intervals as 10 hours by first forcing air compressed to about 3 lbs. per square inch upwards through the sand to loosen it, and then passing upwards through it filtered water under a head of about 25 feet.

299. Although we have, thus far, considered only sand as the medium of filtration on the large scale, it is because we have endeavoured to deal with the subject by considering the methods of purification in order—beginning with the simpler and passing to the more complex processes.

Waters that contain not only silt, but considerable organic impurity also, in suspension or solution, are generally treated by being filtered through, or otherwise brought into close contact with, a granulated oxide of iron which has been reduced from a higher oxide; or with metallic iron that has been reduced from an oxide, and is thereby rendered in such a condition that it readily attracts oxygen to its surface, or occludes it within its mass. The two well-known typical substances of this class are Spencer's "magnetic carbide" and Bischof's "spongy iron"; both of which, although in the present day already somewhat antiquated in name, are essentially the prototypes of various purifying agents now used under some other designation.

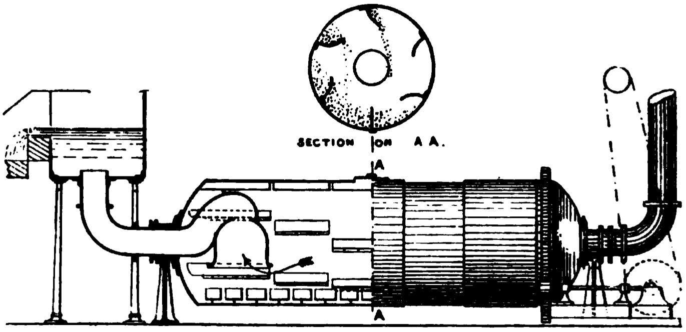
Spencer's "magnetic carbide" is magnetic oxide of iron (Fe_3O_4) in combination with carbon, and is prepared by roasting hæmatite iron ore with granulated charcoal at a dull red heat for a period of 12 to 16 hours. It is used in filters in a layer between 3 inches and 12 inches thick, according to the degree of impurity of the water under treatment; the grosser matter in suspension being filtered out by a 12-inch layer of sand above the magnetic carbide. The most important application of this medium of purification, is the well-known one at the Wakefield waterworks, where the impure water of the river Calder was purified with considerable success by its means.

Bischof's "spongy iron" is iron that has been reduced from the ore without undergoing complete fusion. It was first used on the large scale in 1880, at the Antwerp waterworks, to purify the supply derived from the river Nethe. The water was filtered through a bed consisting of a layer of spongy iron and gravel 3 feet thick, overlaid by 2 feet of sand, the normal rate of working being 22 feet vertically per 24 hours. The filtrate was subsequently aërated, filtered through sand to deprive it of ferric oxide, and then passed into the clear-water tanks. This treatment exercised a marked effect in reducing the organic nitrogen and the ammonia present in the river-water, in addition to the suspended impurities as in an ordinary sand filter.

300. Thus far, the process seemed to be most satisfactory; experience, however, soon showed that the very activity of the filtering medium was a serious obstacle to its continued efficiency; for, besides the film of intercepted mud on the surface of the filters, a second deposit took place in the iron layer of the bed, consisting principally of salts of lime and magnesia and organic impurities. These deposits clogged the filters, and the difficulties resulting therefrom led to an improved method of employing iron in the purification of water being devised by the late Sir William Anderson.

The apparatus, *Figs. 66*, consists of a hollow cylinder made of ⅜-inch steel plate, which is carried by hollow trunnions revolving in pedestal bearings at each end of the cylinder, with inlet- and outlet-pipes through which the water under treatment enters and leaves the cylinder-trunnions through stuffing-boxes. A rotary motion is given to the cylinder by means of a pinion geared into a cast-iron toothed wheel surrounding one end of the cylinder. The cylinder has five rows of short curved shelves fixed parallel to the axis of the cylinder, arranged in steps at equal intervals apart; whilst in the place of a sixth row of shelves, is a number of squares plates pivoted on spindles passing through the shell of the cylinder, and capable of being adjusted to any desired angle with the axis of the cylinder from the outside. Iron in a finely-divided state, sufficient to occupy one-tenth part of the cylinder, is introduced through a hand-hole; and, during the revolution of the apparatus, by means of the curved shelves, the iron is carried up to the top of the cylinder, and thence is showered down through the water; the object of the sixth row of flat shelves being to throw the iron back towards the inlet-end of the cylinder, and so to counteract the forward motion given to it by the current of water. A distributing-plate, facing the inlet, prevents the water from forming a stream along the axis of the cylinder. An inverted bell-mouth on the inner end of the outlet-pipe prevents the

Figs. 66.



ANDERSON'S REVOLVING PURIFIER.
Scale 1 inch = 10 feet.

finer particles of iron from being washed away. An air-cock at the top of the cylinder permits the escape of air during the process of charging, and also of that disengaged from the water during work. Care must be used to prevent as far as possible the ingress of air into the cylinder through the supply-pipe. The apparatus is made in various sizes—a cylinder 20 feet long and 5 feet in diameter, *Fig. 66*, requiring less than 1 horse-power to drive it, being capable of treating 1,000,000 gallons per 24 hours, allowing all the water to be in contact with the iron for 3½ minutes. If the water is very foul, the period of contact may be increased to 5 minutes or more, the rate of flow through the cylinder being controlled by a sluice-valve on the inlet-pipe. The water leaves the purifier charged with protosalts of iron, and is aërated either by flowing over weirs, by forcing air through it, or by causing it to flow vertically through small orifices with sufficient velocity to prevent the jets coalescing; the ferrous salts by this means become oxidised, the carbonic acid escapes, and the resulting ferric oxide is removed either by precipitation in settling-ponds, and subsequent filtration through sand at the rate of about 1 foot vertically per hour, or by the latter process alone.

The form of iron used in the cylinder depends upon local circumstances. Cast-iron borings are often employed—their loss in weight being at the rate of about ⅗ grain per gallon of water treated. Cast-iron balls or small "burrs" from punching-machines, though frequently more expensive than the former, lose only about ⅕ grain per gallon of water.* The particles of iron should not exceed ½ inch in diameter in any case. Its action in the purifier is one of reduction, the subsequent oxidation of the ferrous salt being dependent upon the efficiency of the process of aëration adopted. In addition to the water being softened and clarified, the objectionable organic impurities contained in it are precipitated with the ferric oxide, and only a very small portion of them is able to pass the upper surface of the filter. This method of purification has proved generally so effective and economical, that its extended employment may be expected in many cases where the water-supply is of questionable origin.

---

* Devonshire, 'Three Years' Experience of Water-purification by means of Iron'—London, 1888.

Iron may be also employed in this manner to remove from water certain earthy acids, such as crenic * and apocrenic acids, provided by the oxidation of decaying vegetable matter.† These are frequently present in peaty water, and in water that has percolated through a considerable depth of vegetable mould ; and, owing to their property of combining with such metals as calcium, magnesium and iron, they exercise a prejudicial influence on the animal constitution.

The effect of iron upon these acids is first to cause the formation of neutral salts soluble in water ; by exposure to the atmosphere, in a second stage, insoluble basic salts of iron are formed, and may be abstracted from the water by the ordinary method of settlement. The process of aëration and subsequent filtration through sand frees the water from any excess of iron that may have been added, in precisely the same manner as that already described in connection with the Antwerp filters and Anderson's revolving purifiers.

301. The desiderata of a good household filter are :—A coarse strainer that can easily be cleansed from the grosser impurities that it daily intercepts ; a porous but compact

---

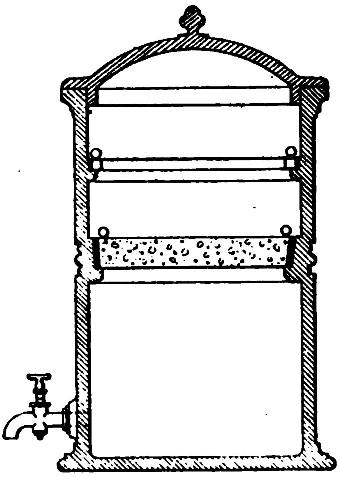
* (Κρήνη, *a well*) so termed because they are often found in well-water.

† Purification of water highly charged with vegetable matter, Chadwick and Blount, Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol, clvi.

mass of filtering material, that is easily removable but still makes a water-tight joint with the sides of the filter-frame; a slow rate of percolation through this material.

The simplest and most efficient filter may be thus constructed, *Fig. 67.* The vertical box or vessel that contains the apparatus is separated into three compartments by two internal projecting collars. Into the upper of these fits a frame covered with fine wire gauze and surrounded by an india-rubber band, so as to form a close joint with the collar. A block of charcoal, a few inches thick, is set in a similar frame and sits in the lower collar. Both frames are provided with rings by means of which they may be easily lifted out when required. The efficiency of the apparatus depends entirely upon the care bestowed upon its periodical cleansing. The strainer should be removed and washed daily, and the charcoal slab should be re-roasted, or replaced by a new piece, at least once a month. If, after filtration, the water is boiled for half-an-hour, the best possible result will be attained. A neglected filter becomes an incubator for microphytes, liable to damage good water if passed through it.

Fig. 67.



Scale 1 inch = 1 foot.

302. The principal effect of filtration through sand is to remove all suspended solids from the water. Nearly the whole of this matter is retained at or near the surface of the sand; although some of the minuter particles are

attracted by and adhere to the facets of the grains that lie immediately below the surface. A secondary effect, that takes place after the filter has been working for some little time, is to remove many of the micro-organisms from the water by means of the thin film or sheet of scum that collects on the surface of the sand, 99 per cent. of the organisms present can be thus removed—hence the advisability of running the first portion of the filtrate to waste if the best results are required, and of increasing the rate very gradually up to the normal, when a filter is first brought into operation. There is also frequently a slight beneficial action of the oxygen occluded in the interstices of the mass of sand, upon the organic impurities dissolved in the water.

This action is more vigorous when the filtering medium consists in part, or wholly, of carbon, which is an expensive but most valuable substance for use in small filters.

Treatment with iron, however, affords the best practicable means of abstracting the dissolved organic impurities from water; and besides the reduction of nitrogenous matter and ammonia effected thereby, the process leads to such a destruction of the bacteria present that its use must be commended, wherever there exists suspicion that the water-supply may be a vehicle for the conveyance and propagation of pathogenic organisms.

Whilst thus alluding to the iron-treatment as a convenient practical means of sterilising water, it may be not out of place to describe briefly the nature of the evidence that is adduced. when the purity of water is questioned on biological grounds.

303. The method of examination is that known as Koch's.[1]

A certain volume, usually 1 cubic centimetre, of the water in question is operated upon thus: It is first mixed with a sterile, nutritive liquid, such as extract of meat, and sufficient gelatine is added to cause the mixture to set in a few minutes when poured over a glass plate and kept cool. The plate is then placed over a glass cover and exposed for some days to a constant temperature between 70° F. and 80° F. At the end of 4 or 5 days "colonies" of bacteria are developed of such dimensions as to be easily counted with the aid of a microscope. Further than this the determination of the species present is, to a certain extent, practicable; and, the rapid strides now being made in this department of scientific enquiry, suggest the approach of a time when every important water-supply for dietetic purposes may be continually under inspection; in order that the processes of purification in use may be modified as occasion requires, and adapted to deal with the various forms of impurity that claim treatment at different times.

---

[1] Mittheilungen, Kaiserliches Gesundheitsamt, 1882.

Such water-examination, to be productive of really beneficial results, must be continuous and form part of the routine work of the department. It cannot prudently be regarded as a mere preliminary test of the quality of the source of supply, to be applied once for all.

304. We now proceed to the consideration, in more detail, of purification by the removal of impurities in solution from water.

As a particular case, the removal of dissolved iron from the Königsberg water-supply has been already noticed (§ 269). The ground-water of the North German Plains is frequently found to be highly impregnated with iron salts, from 90 per cent. of which it is expeditiously freed by a simple process of aëration. The water is caused to fall in a fine spray upon the surface of a mass of coke broken into pieces of about 3 inches in diameter. Ferric oxide is deposited on the coke, and the water after being passed rapidly through a coarse sand filter, is found to be satisfactorily purified.

In this, as in some other important processes of purification, the expulsion of an excess of carbonic acid from the water is the primary means by which the desired result is attained. Indeed, it may be said that the oxidation of nitrogenous organic matter in filters adapted to produce that result, is the only other method in extensive use, by which impurities are removed from solution in water.

The absorption, in a convenient form, of an excess of carbonic acid, forms the principle of the important process of "softening" water.

Spring-water, well-water, and that obtained from streams flowing through calcareous formation, even if comparatively free from suspended impurities, often contain dissolved mineral matter in considerable quantity, consisting of carbonates of lime, magnesia, iron and manganese, held in solution by an excess of carbonic acid, sulphates of calcium and magnesium, also alkaline carbonates, chlorides, sulphates, silicates and nitrates.

The salts of lime and magnesia occur most commonly, and their presence is said to impart "hardness" to water, the amount of which property is of the gravest consequence in water used for dietetic purposes, as well as regards its economical value for industrial use. Carbonates of lime and magnesia are almost insoluble in pure water, but if it contains carbonic acid soluble bicarbonates are formed. Spring-water, and that drawn from deep wells, generally contains carbonic acid derived from the large stores of that substance which exist deep down in the earth-crust, where, owing to the great pressure, it is readily dissolved by the water.

305. In order to form a numerical estimate of "hardness" advantage is taken of the fact, that in the presence

of salts of lime or magnesia, soap added to water does not form a lather, but curdles, owing to the production of insoluble lime and magnesia salts of the stearic acids in the soap. The method of measurement generally practised is that due to Dr. Thomas Clark, of Aberdeen. A standard solution of soap is made in the following manner :—Water of a known degree of hardness is prepared by first adding soap to one gallon of distilled water, until it froths on being well shaken, and then dissolving in it one grain of carbonate of lime. Instead of the gallon and grain it is in practice generally convenient to employ as measures 70 cubic centimetres and 1 milligram of the substances respectively. To render the carbonate soluble it is treated with hydrochloric acid, the solution being subsequently evaporated to dryness so as to get rid of the excess of acid; thus the calcium carbonate is converted into neutral calcium chloride. When this has been dissolved in the water, there is present the equivalent of 1 grain of carbonate of lime per gallon of water.

A solution of pure Castile soap in dilute alcohol is then prepared, of which an ascertained measure is neutralised by the addition of a certain chosen volume, say 70 c.c. of the above prepared water. The point of neutralisation is indicated by the formation of a creamy froth when the mixture is violently shaken.

The hardness of any water may be then denoted by the number of the above measures of the standard soap-solution that must be added to a volume of the water equal to that already chosen, 70 c.c., in order to produce the formation of froth after the mixture has been shaken, then

Number of Measures of soap $-\ 1 =$ *degree of hardness.*

The unit is subtracted because one measure of soap-solution is required to make the given volume of distilled water froth after shaking.

306. When hardness is due to the presence of carbonates of lime or magnesia, it is termed "temporary," because those salts are only kept in solution by the adventitious presence of carbonic acid. But when due to calcium or magnesium sulphates, chlorides or nitrates, hardness is called "permanent" because owing to their solubility, the latter compounds are most difficult of separation from water. In all cases, whatever particular salts may be the cause of either kind of hardness, its degree is estimated in the manner explained above; and in this country, is expressed as so many "degrees on Clark's scale."

Temporary hardness may be removed by aëration, by boiling, or by Clark's process of adding milk of lime to the water:—

(1) By exposure to the atmosphere in cascades, or by other ways of promoting agitation, the loosely combined carbonic acid escapes and the almost insoluble carbonate of lime is precipitated.

(2) By boiling the water, precisely the same effect as that just described is produced.

(3) By adding milk of lime, the additional molecule of carbonic acid is abstracted from the bicarbonate, and combines with the lime to form carbonate, thus—

$$CaCO_3CO_2 + CaO = 2CaCO_3 \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

$$MgCO_3 . CO_2 + CaO = MgCO_3 + CaCO_3 \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

Permanent hardness.—The sulphates cannot be easily removed, but the inconvenience arising from their deposit in boilers may be avoided, by converting them into the extremely soluble sulphate of soda, which does not precipitate even when highly concentrated, and whose presence, therefore, does not preclude the use of water containing it for steam-generating purposes. This result is effected by adding a small quantity of soda to the water, thereby causing an exchange of acid between the calcium sulphate and the sodium carbonate; calcium carbonate being precipitated and sodium sulphate remaining in solution, thus—

$$CaSO_4 + Na_2CO_3 = CaCO_3 + Na_2SO_4.$$

A little alum is added to expedite the precipitation of any suspended matter and of the carbonate of lime.

The quantity of lime necessary to soften a given water of known temporary hardness, is readily estimated from equation (i.) above: e.g. 70,000 gallons of water, the temporary hardness of which is 10°, would require $\frac{700,000 \times 14}{7000 \times 25} = 56$ lbs. of lime added to it, to effect softening. In practice, a certain additional quantity of lime would be added, to cover loss by waste in manipulation, &c.

As an example of the removal of permanent hardness, the water-softening works of the Taff Vale Railway Company, at Penarth Dock Station, near Cardiff,* treats 50,000 gallons of water per day, the reduction of total hardness being from 18° to 6°, with a consumption of 112 lbs. of lime, 25 lbs. of soda, and 5 lbs. of alum,

Water is ordinarily called "hard" when it possesses more than 5° of hardness. By the application of Clark's softening-process, the total hardness of water may often be reduced by as much as 15°; the residual or "permanent" hardness consisting of sulphates and other soluble salts that are exceedingly difficult of removal.

307. In Clark's process the cream of lime produced by agitating the lime with a small quantity of water in a

---

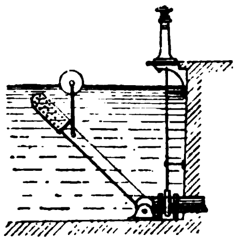
* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. xcvii. p. 363.

mixer or churn, is caused to enter settling-ponds along with the hard water; here the deposition of calcium carbonate takes place, and, after the necessary interval of time, the clear water is decanted.

The process of precipitation is quickened by adding, in addition to the cream of lime, some of the precipitate from water already softened, which, being in a flaking state, in settling down carries the calcium carbonate with it.

A valuable accessory, especially applicable to settling-ponds in which a chemically-produced precipitate is dealt with, is a decanting-pipe, which consists generally of a pipe pivoted at its lower end, below the lowest draw-off level, so that its other end is capable of a considerable range of vertical motion, and furnished with a strainer, and a float to keep the inlet at a definite depth below the surface of the water in the pond, *Fig. 68.* The use of this apparatus for the draw-off ensures the clearest water being decanted during the entire period of emptying the pond.

Fig. 68.

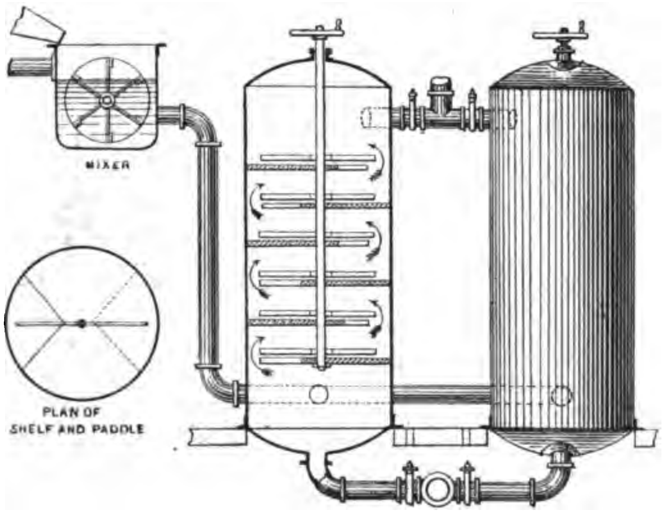


Scale 1 inch = 20 feet.

The cost of settling-ponds is in a great measure avoided by Mr. J. H. Porter's modified process, in which the settlement takes place in a high cylindrical vessel, provided with sector-shaped shelves, arranged so as to catch the sediment as it falls. and to allow as little of it as possible to reach the bottom, *Fig. 69.* The milk of lime, and, if necessary, the soda and alum solutions also, are admitted with the hard water at the bottom of the cylinder, and the chemical action proceeds and much of the precipitate settles as the water rises through it. A tank 20 feet high and 7 feet in diameter has been found capable of thus treating 30,000 gallons per 24 hours.

When the shelves require to be cleaned, a vertical shaft in the axis of the cylinder, armed with paddles fixed horizontally just above the level of the several shelves, is caused to revolve. The paddles sweep the sediment into the water which is then run to waste. When the available space is so limited that the employment of settling-ponds in the final stage of the process is out of the question, filter-presses, of the kind now so commonly used in sewage-disposal works, are introduced instead, to effect complete clarification of the water after it has been softened; such filter-presses are, however, much relieved if there is provided a small depositing-tank into which the water and the softening substance may enter after mixture before passing to the filters.

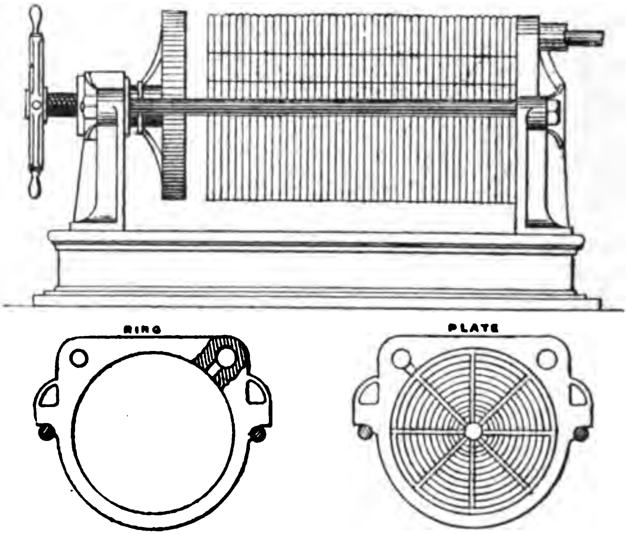
Fig. 69.



SOFTENING-PLANT—ELEVATION.
Scale $\frac{1}{60}$.

The filter-press, originally invented by Mr. J. H. Porter, consists essentially of a number of parallel cast-iron plates and of rings arranged alternately in a strong frame, being carried by their projecting shoulders on a pair of horizontal rods, *Fig. 70*. Each plate is channelled circumferentially and radially on both faces, and the channels are connected with the outlet- or clear-water pipe, that is generally formed by a series of holes in the plates and rings, which can be forced into close contact by means of a screw at one end of the frame.

Fig. 70.



Filter-Press.

Scale $\frac{1}{30}$.

The feed-pipe is formed by a similar series of holes connected with each of the rings. Over each plate, and, therefore, hanging between the plates and rings, filtering-cloths of stout twilled cotton, having holes in them corresponding with the feed- and clear-water openings, are placed. The softened water is fed through the filters under a pressure of two or three atmospheres, a pneumatic pressure-pump being often used for the purpose; the carbonate of lime is retained in the ring-spaces, and the clear water passes off through the cloths and along the chanelled faces of the plates, into the outlet-pipe. When the rings become filled with sediment, the screw is slackened and they are cleaned out. The cloths, especially after being in use for some time, become efficient filtering media, and as much as 30 gallons of water per hour per square foot of their active surfaces may be passed through them with good results. Many additions to and modifications of the Porter filter-press have been made for treating sewage.

308. Both large and small supplies of water are satisfactorily dealt with according to these methods, and the practice of softening is one that is daily gaining ground. Sundry specially-contrived forms of softening-apparatus and ingredients are in use, but they hardly merit description here as their principle of action is essentially that already indicated.

Beyond the immediate value attaching to water deprived by this means of an excess of the salts that produce hardness, a condition which for industrial purposes is generally desirable and often absolutely necessary, its quality as a dietetic is much improved by this, as by other processes in which a heavy but finely-divided precipitate is developed in the water. Indeed, it has been stated by Dr. Percy Frankland [*] that the application of these processes of softening water may effect biological purification to such an extent that the number of micro-organisms present in water may, with care in manipulation, be reduced by 98 per cent.

309. Next in importance to purifying water, is the question of maintaining the condition of purity arrived at, during the interval of time that must necessarily elapse between its treatment and its supply to consumers.

---

[*] Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxxxv. p. 210.

It seems obvious that the shorter this interval the better; and hence we have a strong argument in favour of locating purification-works as near to centres of distribution as may be convenient, notwithstanding the economical advantage to be derived from passing only pure water through long supply-mains, which rather gives weight to the situation of such works nearer to the intake or source of the supply. It is important that naturally-filtered ground-water should be protected from the light until it is supplied to the consumers. With surface-water, this appears to be of less consequence; but it is in the highest degree essential for every kind of water intended for dietetic use, to be maintained at a low and equable temperature after it has been brought into a pure condition. We will not here anticipitate the question of the storage of water in house-cisterns, and its consequent deterioration. A certain amount of unavoidable organic development takes place in the service-pipes of distribution systems, favoured by the presence of iron; and the only available safeguard against the consequences of such pollution consists in the employment and proper maintenance of domestic filters. Experience of their management in ordinary households is, perhaps, hardly favourable to their more extended use; but, if properly constructed and systematically attended to, they may be safely advocated.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CONVEYANCE OF WATER.

310. THE construction of aqueducts has formed in every age an attractive object for the exercise of the hydraulic engineer's art. And, although the Imperial monuments reared by Caligula and Claudius in the Campagna * do not appeal to the observer's eye more forcibly than do some modern structures designed for similar purposes—advance in the mechanical arts enables engineers now frequently to substitute comparatively cheap siphons of iron, hidden underground, for the imposing but costly colonnades of the ancients ; whilst, by the accurate observance of hydraulic laws, the dimensions and declivity of every portion of the aqueducts are adjusted to the conditions which the physical circumstances of the locality may impose.

311. The cheapest type of aqueduct is a trench or ditch cut in the earth, following the contour of the ground with a proper declivity. Such a channel, rendered water-tight, if need be, with clay-puddle, may satisfy the requirements of a conduit for the supply of water for industrial purposes —that is, where no shorter route, traversed it may be by a more expensive aqueduct, offers advantages in point of economy. The conditions, are however, totally different in the conveyance of water for domestic use, which, once collected, must be strictly preserved from all contaminating influences. Conduits for this purpose should be impervious,

---

* Parker, 'The Aqueducts of Rome'—Oxford, 1876.

and covered. An aqueduct pursuing the contour of the natural ground is doubtless constructed cheaply; but its course may be so circuitous as to deprive it of advantage over a tunnel following a shorter line; although the latter is generally the most expensive kind of work for the conveyance of water. In every case, the alignment of the route to be taken, and the class of works most suitable to that route, can only be satisfactorily arrived at by due consideration of an exhaustive survey of the locality, made for the puposes of the special object in view. Precipitate selection of routes, and hasty decision as to the types of aqueduct to be employed, are characteristic of immature hydraulicians, and form a fruitful source of wasteful expenditure of money. The three principal classes of aqueduct are:—artificial channels or conduits, pipes, and tunnels; and there are few works of magnitude that do not comprise a combination of all of these types.

When the available fall is limited, it may be desirable to employ a conduit of considerable cross-sectional area, which, in general, may be constructed along the hill-sides with a far less inclination than that necessary for a pipe of equal cost and capacity for conveying water. Circuitous routes may be avoided by crossing valleys with pipe siphons, or by piercing hills with tunnels, according to circumstances. The combination of these and other structures appropriate to any given aqueduct route, so as to form an efficient and economical system, constitutes the work of the engineer; who must, therefore, unite a knowledge of hydraulics to experience of that class of construction.

312. It has been already explained (§ 66) that the flow of water under the action of gravity is determined by the Chezy formula

$$v = c\sqrt{m i}\,;$$

where v is the mean velocity of the stream,

m is the hydraulic mean depth of the stream,

i is the sine of the surface-declivity of the stream,

and c is a coefficient.

If the surface-declivity is constant, it appears from the above expression, that the greater the hydraulic mean depth, the more favourable will be the conditions of flow. Geometry teaches that the figure which possesses the greatest area for given perimeter, is the circle; hence remembering that

$$\textit{Hydraulic mean depth} = \frac{\textit{Area of stream}}{\textit{Perimeter of channel}},$$

a circle would seem to be the best form of channel to convey a stream of water entirely filling it. Under the same conditions of full flow, a semicircular channel uncovered at the top, possesses equal advantages to the circular channel of the same diameter, in point of maximum hydraulic mean depth for the amount of material required to form it.

A circular channel flowing not quite full, has, however, a delivering capacity greater than that possessed by the same channel flowing full. Using the notation of § 66; let A denote the area of the stream in the circular channel;

p „ „ perimeter of that portion of the channel bounding the stream, termed its "wetted perimeter";

Q „ „ the actual delivery or quantity of water conveyed by the channel at a given time.

We have, then,

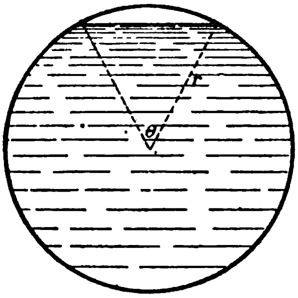
$$\begin{aligned} Q &= vA \\ &= Ac\sqrt{\frac{A}{p}i}; \end{aligned}$$

therefore

$$Q \propto \sqrt{\frac{A^3}{p}},\ i \text{ being assumed constant.}$$

When the channel is not flowing full, let θ be the angle subtended at the centre of the circle, whose radius is r, by the upper surface of the stream, *Fig. 71*; Then

Fig. 71.



$$A = \frac{r^2}{2}\left(\overline{2\pi - \theta} + \sin\theta\right),$$

$$\text{and} \qquad p = r(2\pi - \theta);$$

substituting these values of A and p in the expression for Q, above, it is evident that Q has a maximum value when

$$\frac{(\overline{2\pi - \theta} + \sin\theta)^3}{2\pi - \theta}$$

is a maximum. By the ordinary rule for maxima and minima, this is found to occur when $\theta = 51^\circ{\cdot}8$.

Hence, the maximum delivery of a circular culvert or pipe of radius r, not under pressure, occurs when the depth of the stream, in the middle, is

$$r(1 + \cos 25^\circ 54')$$
$$= 1{\cdot}899\, r.$$

313. Not only in channels of circular section, but in all other forms, there is a certain depth of flow at which the quantity of water conveyed is a maximum, assuming the hydraulic gradient to be parallel to the axis of the stream. Owing to practical considerations, it is generally necessary to contemplate the occurrence of full flow under pressure

in channels, at such time as their maximum conveying capacity is required to be exercised; and, under these circumstances, the circular form of conduit is the best possible.

This condition, however, is seldom found in practice to obtain constantly. Indeed, in one class of conduits, viz. sewers, the fluctuations in the volume of flow are so great that it becomes necessary, in order to secure efficiency of working at all times, to so design the section of the channel as to give a greater hydraulic mean depth when the flow happens to be small, than that which would be afforded by a circular section of the diameter required to convey the maximum flow when running full. This suggests for consideration the form of section to be assigned to a channel in order that there may be maintained in it a constant mean velocity for varying depths of stream, the surface-declivity being constant. Such a condition must be of some consequence, if it can be realised satisfactorily in practice, in all channels that are subject to a variable flow; but, in the case of sewers, in which the burden of solid matter held in suspension is large, it is highly important for the velocity to be fairly maintained when the flow is small and the surface-level of the stream correspondingly low.

314. With a given surface-declivity, the mean velocity of a stream varies as the square root of the hydraulic mean depth; and it is therefore evident that, if such a form be given to the channel that its hydraulic mean depth is constant at all levels of the water-surface, the mean velocity will also be constant under all conditions of flow, assuming, of course, that the value of the coefficient c (§ 312) does not alter sensibly; which, under ordinary conditions, may be allowed.

The fundamental equation

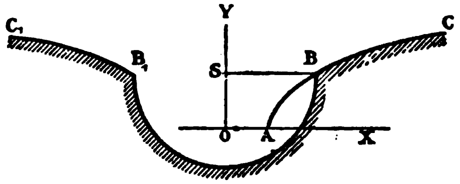
$$v = c\sqrt{m\,i}$$

may be written, since $m = \frac{A}{p}$,

$$\frac{A}{p} = \frac{v^2}{c^2\,i}. \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

Taking the axis of Y vertically through the middle of the cross-section of the stream, *Fig. 72*, and considering the half on the right of the figure,

Fig. 72.



$$\frac{A}{2} = \int x\,dy,$$

and

$$\frac{p}{2} = \int\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2}\,dy + \text{O A};$$

therefore

$$\int x\,dy = \frac{v^2}{c^2\,i}\left(\int\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dx}{ay}\right)^2}\,dy + \text{O A}\right).$$

Differentiating, and writing $\frac{1}{k}$ for $\frac{v^2}{c^2\,i}$, (i.) above,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k^2\,x^2 - 1}}.$$

From this it may be seen that when $x = \frac{1}{k}, \frac{dy}{dx} = \infty$, and the curve is perpendicular to the axis of X at the point A.

Integrating, therefore, between the values $\frac{1}{k}$ and x,

$$\int_0^y dy = \int_{\frac{1}{k}}^x \frac{dx}{\sqrt{k^2 x^2 - 1}};$$

therefore $\quad y = \frac{1}{k} \log_e (k x + \sqrt{k^2 x^2 - 1}),$

and $\quad x = \frac{1}{2k} (e^{yk} + e^{-yk}). \qquad$ (ii.)

From equation (ii.), values of x, corresponding with all values of y, may be found; also the figure is symmetrical about the axis of Y.

For example, to find the cross-section of a brick channel of uniform inclination $\frac{1}{1500}$, such that a constant mean velocity of 3 feet per second may obtain in it, whatever be the depth of the stream: taking dimensions in feet,

let $\quad c = 100$; then $k = \frac{10{,}000}{9 \times 1500} = 0 \cdot 74$;

When $y = 0, \quad x = \frac{1}{k} = 1 \cdot 35$ foot

„ $y = 1, \quad x = \quad 1 \cdot 75$ „

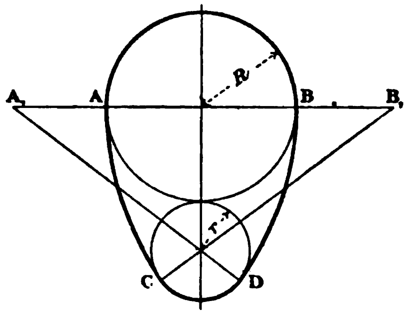
„ $y = 2, \quad x = \quad 3 \cdot 10$ feet

„ $y = 3, \quad x = \quad 6 \cdot 30$ „

The curve A B C, *Fig. 72*, represents the profile thus calculated; and if from the point S in the axis of Y, where the abscissa $\overline{\text{S B}} = 2 \, \overline{\text{O A}}$, an inverted semicircle of radius $\frac{2}{k}$ be described from B to B₁, the form of the channel at and above $B\ B_1$ will satisfy the required condition—the level $B\ B_1$ being, in this case, that of the lowest flow contemplated.

315. Although it possesses some features of interest such a cross-section for a sewer could hardly be realised in practice: nor would there be, under ordinary circumstances, any advantage in adopting it; because far higher velocities may be permitted without risk of injury to the walls, than can be ordinarily secured for a shallow flow in the invert of the channel. Consequently, in practice, the invert is formed to a small radius, so as to secure a good hydraulic mean depth relatively to the minimum flow contemplated, whilst the upper portion of the sewer is made wider, so as to accommodate the maximum delivery.

Fig. 73.



$A_1 B = A B_1 = A_1 D = B_1 C = 2\,(R + r)$ and $r = \frac{R}{2}$.

In this way originated the ordinary oval section, *Fig. 73*; the general form of which possesses several practical advantages over the circular section. One of the most important of these is the facility of access for repairs afforded by it. It must be observed that the typical section illustrated in *Fig. 73*, although almost always adopted, is in reality only rationally applicable to one particular relation between maximum and minimum delivery for any given sewer. A strict observance of the principles which led to its design originally, would require the diameters of the upper and lower inscribed circles, as well as the distance between their centres, to be determined by the local circumstances of the sewage-flow. Various economical reasons make it desirable, however, to observe a similarity of section throughout any one system of sewers.

316. For ordinary aqueducts, one of the simple forms of section shown in *Figs. 74, 75* and *76*, is generally employed. Irrigation aqueducts are usually of trapezoidal section—the best form being one in which the sides are tangential to a circle the centre of which is situated in the water-line, if the nature of the ground allows it to stand at such a slope. If constructed of concrete, the semicircular form may be conveniently adopted.

Fig. 74.

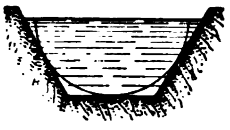


Fig. 75.

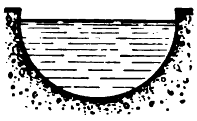
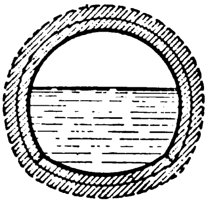


Fig. 76.



The calculation of the dimensions and fall required for such channels to convey a given supply of water is a simple matter.

For example, consider a channel of the semi-hexagonal form illustrated in *Fig. 74*. If r is the radius of the inscribed semicircle, the area of the semi-hexagon is $\sqrt{3}\,r^2$, the wetted perimeter of the full channel is $2\sqrt{3}\,r$, and the hydraulic mean depth is therefore $\frac{r}{2}$—the same as for the semicircle.

Let v denote the mean velocity of the stream, which, for masonry or brickwork channels, may be 4 feet or 5 feet per second, but for concrete should not exceed 3 feet and for earth 1·5 foot per second. Let Q denote the delivery of the stream in cubic feet per second, and let c be the coefficient proper to the case (§ 67).

The required sectional area of the stream is

$$\frac{Q}{v} = \sqrt{3}\,r^2;$$

from which r is found.

To find the surface-declivity;

since $$v = c\sqrt{m\,i}, \text{ and } m = \frac{r}{2},$$

$$i = \frac{2\,v^2}{c^2\,r};$$

that is $$i = \frac{2\,v^2}{c^2\,r} \times 5280 \text{ feet per mile.}$$

317. It happens frequently that the ground which has to be traversed by the conduit limits the surface declivity of the stream, and we require the dimensions of the channel, which, with that declivity, will convey the desired supply of water. Since the hydraulic mean depth of the channel, which is a factor of the value c appropriate to this case in the fundamental equation, is unknown, the question cannot be solved directly. The following example will show the method of treating this case, more clearly than a general explanation of it.

Example.—Required the dimensions of a rubble masonry channel to convey 2 cubic feet of water per second, the maximum available declivity being $\frac{1}{2500}$, and the geometrical form of the cross-section being a semi-hexagon.

Let the desired mean velocity in the channel be 1 foot per second, whence A is found to be 2 feet. Assume a value of c,—say, 80.

By (i.), § 314, $$\frac{A}{p} = \frac{2500}{6400};$$

substituting the above value of A,

$$p = \frac{128}{25} = 2\sqrt{3}\,r;$$

therefore $$r = 1{\cdot}48 \text{ foot},$$

and $$m = 0{\cdot}74.$$

Introducing this value of m into the equation § 67, we obtain, see Table of values of c,

$$c = 81.$$

Hence, as a second approximation,

$$p = \frac{131}{25}\,2\sqrt{3}\,r.$$

Therefore the radius of the inscribed circle of the required channel is, for practical purposes, 1·5 foot.

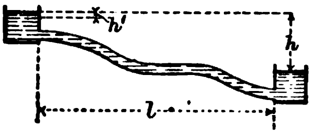
318. The foregoing considerations are in general equally applicable to all kinds of aqueducts—whether open channels, pipes, tunnels or culverts. Every aqueduct must be designed to suit the hydraulic gradient that obtains naturally between its extremities. This gradient, in all ordinary practice, comprises two principal elements: (1) the head of water employed initially at the commencement of the aqueduct, to produce the required mean velocity of flow in it; and

(2) the head employed in overcoming the frictional resistance opposed by the surface of the channel in contact with the stream to the motion of the latter, throughout its entire length.

In the study of the pure science of hydraulics, a third element is considered: viz. the head lost at the entrance of the conduit by those internal motions of the water which result in the formation of *vena contracta.* In good practice such loss is rendered insensible by the employment of curved or trumpet-mouthed inlets, and need not be considered here.

Both of the former elements are important, especially where a considerable portion of the total head is applied to give motion to the water, at points of the aqueduct at which its flow has been checked or temporarily stopped by the interference of wells or weirs.

Fig. 77.



If h denotes the total fall in an aqueduct of length l, h' the head required to produce the initial velocity v, and h'' that necessary to overcome the frictional retardation of the flow, throughout its entire length, *Fig. 77*: The declivity or hydraulic inclination is

$$\frac{h - h'}{l},$$

and since $$v = c\sqrt{m\,i},$$

therefore $$v^2 = c^2\,m\,\frac{h - h'}{l}; \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

also $$h' = \frac{v^2}{2g}.$$

Let n be the number of times that the flow is started from a condition of rest, in the length l considered; then $\frac{n v^2}{2 g}$ may be written for h' in equation (i.);

therefore,
$$v = c \sqrt{\frac{m h}{l + \frac{n c^2 m}{2 g}}}. \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

This expression (ii.), into which the value of c appropriate to the circumstances (§ 68) is introduced, is generally applicable to all kinds of aqueduct, of which the length, total available fall, and form of the cross-section are known.

319. In addition to the simple ditch cut in the earth, puddle-lined, or it may be hand-pitched with stone, as required by circumstances, and the various more or less elaborate structures of masonry, brickwork or concrete, conduits are, in some special cases, constructed of iron, e.g. the Pont-Cysylltau near Ruabon, built by Telford in 1803, or of timber, as is a common practice in the United States at the present day. Some of the timber "flumes," or troughs, used for irrigation purposes in that country, are of extraordinary magnitude, one of the high-level trestle-work conduits of the Platte Canal measuring 1000 feet in length, and 30 feet by 7 feet in cross-section. These flumes are frequently carried for great distances upon shelves or benchings cut in the hill-sides—a form of construction which is found, where timber is plentiful, to be cheaper than stone- or concrete-lined ditches. It is desirable for a long aqueduct to have sluice-doors, with waste-weirs on their up-stream sides, at intervals throughout its length, so that, in the event of accident, or need arising to examine any section of the work, the water may be cut off above that portion and run to waste over a weir

into some convenient water-course. A simple iron or wooden shutter, sliding in vertical grooves, and actuated by a rack and pinion, forms an effective sluice for ordinary conduits. Large sluices for use in rivers and canals require a very different kind of construction, but are hardly within the scope of this work.

320. Although aqueducts such as those alluded to in the preceding sections, frequently afford favourable means for the conveyance of water, as witness the conduits on the line of the Glasgow water-supply from Loch Katrine, and that contouring the hill-sides of Grasmere and Rydal on the route of the Thirlmere water-supply to Manchester, also a considerable portion of the aqueduct to convey the water from the sources of the Wye to Birmingham; by far the most generally serviceable means of conveyance, if circumstances permit its adoption, is the iron pipe. Being competent to withstand high internal pressure, a strong iron pipe may pursue a direct line across the country, following the natural undulation of the ground, provided that it nowhere rises above the hydraulic gradient. In this country, water-mains are usually made of cast-iron; but, in new countries, the exigencies of bad roads and indifferent means of locomotion frequently cause the introduction of wrought-iron or steel tubes, or, in some cases where suitable timber abounds, of wooden stave pipes. Pipes of wrought-iron or steel, although of less weight, are more expensive in substance and workmanship than those made of cast-iron, and, usually, but little gain in point of cost can result from their employment. They cannot be laid in positions where they may be subject to the passage of heavy weights over them, and they must, if carried above ground, be shielded from sun and frost by timber or earthen covering. On the other hand, the rigidity of cast-iron pipes allows of their being laid underground, where atmospheric influences cannot

affect them, and, where opportunities offer, cast-iron mains may be thus situated at the side of the public highways. This is sometimes an important advantage, because by it, many questions of damage and severance, incidental to the construction of a pipe-line through private property, are avoided.

321. Where large supplies of water have to be conveyed the question arises whether one large main, or two or more of smaller size, should be used. If the question were one of prime cost only, it would generally be decided in favour of the former plan. With a given inclination, the delivery of pipes varies approximately as the fifth power of the square root of the diameters, whereas the weight and consequently the cost of the main varies as the square of the diameter. Hence, the delivery, which varies simply as the total cost, when a number of similar mains are employed, bears a higher relation to the cost when a single large main, of conveying-capacity equal to the aggregate of these latter, is used. Other questions, such as the damage resulting from the bursting of a large main, the size and strength of the valves required, and the inconvenience arising from temporary cessation of the supply during repairs to any part of the pipe or apparatus, exercise in an important degree the judgment of an engineer in deciding this matter. Cast-iron mains of 50, and even 60, inches diameter have been successfully manufactured and used under pressure; but present practice does not favour the employment of mains much exceeding 40 inches in diameter for ordinary purposes.

In deciding what size of pipe to adopt, the important question generally arises—what capacity should the pipe have, in order to meet future increased demands for water to a suitable extent, without laying an inequitable burden of cost upon the present undertakers of the works? It is evident that the answer to this question must be largely given by individual opinion; but it is clear that the accumulated interest of any capital outlay upon such parts of the works as are only partially used during a long period of time, should not exceed the additional cost of equivalent new works, if constructed when the need for their actual employment arises. In great water-supplies it is customary to lay a series of mains side by side, at such times as the increasing demand for water requires it; but for small supplies, the propriety of this course must depend to a considerable extent upon the length of the main in question and other practical and fiscal conditions.

322. When the daily rate of supply to be provided for is known, and the route of the pipe-line has been selected, the design of a main is a simple matter. The velocity permissible in the largest class of pipes is about 3 feet per second; though, for very short lengths of pipe, this may be considerably exceeded. In service-pipes of 2 inches or 3 inches, a mean velocity of 10 feet per second may be allowed if proper precautions are taken to prevent sudden arrest of the motion. Between these limits, the velocity may be safely taken varying inversely as the square root of the diameter of the pipe.

To find the diameter or the declivity of a main when either of them is given: Let v denote the mean velocity in the pipe in feet per second; divide 4 times the supply, reduced to cubic feet per second, by πv—then the square root of this quantity gives the diameter of the pipe in feet.

Thus, if Q denotes the supply in cubic feet per second,
and D „ the diameter of the pipe in feet,

$$Q = \pi \frac{D^2}{4} v;$$

therefore,

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{4Q}{\pi v}}.$$

As the hydraulic mean depth of a pipe flowing full is $\frac{D}{4}$, we obtain, by transposition of the fundamental equation $v = c\sqrt{mi}$ (the values of c being those given in § 72, for pipes over 1 foot in diameter) :—

$$D = \frac{v^2}{3000\,i} \text{ for new iron pipes,} \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

and

$$D = \frac{v^2}{1500\,i} \text{ for rusted iron pipes ;} \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

or

$$i = \frac{v^2}{3000\,D} \text{ for new iron pipes ;} \qquad \text{(i. } a\text{)}$$

and

$$i = \frac{v^2}{1500\,D} \text{ for rusted iron pipes.} \qquad \text{(ii. } a\text{)}$$

From these equations, the required diameter of the pipe, or the hydraulic inclination, as the case may be, can be found. In this calculation, it is necessary to observe that engineers have generally to contemplate the conveying-capacity of mains when it has become reduced by fouling and incrustation, to which, notwithstanding all precautions, every iron pipe is in the course of time liable.

It is desirable therefore to use the expressions (ii.) and (ii. *a*), and, further, to increase the diameters assigned by calculation to pipes, by an allowance for incrustation. The amount of this allowance depends largely upon the quality of the water to be conveyed, and is, of course, equal to the incrustation that it is in contemplation to permit, before scraping or otherwise cleaning the mains. This precaution, too often neglected—especially in small pipes, which are naturally subject to a vastly more rapid relative diminution of area from this cause, than are those of larger diameter—will prevent much of the disappointment that is sometimes experienced in small waterworks designed by unskilful persons.

It should be almost unnecessary to point out, that the probable future demand for water must receive the most earnest attention, when the diameter and declivity of a supply-main are under consideration; for the carrying-capacity of a water-pipe, unlike that of a railway or a road, cannot, when once laid to meet certain definite requirements, ever be safely augmented by increasing the velocity of transit, even where facilities for effecting this occur. The matter is one upon which no sound judgment can be formed without experience.

323. The thickness of a water-pipe, regarded as a thin cylindrical shell, to resist internal pressure, is arrived at thus:

Let p denote the intensity of the internal pressure to which it is exposed,

s „ „ working intensity of stress of the metal,

t „ „ required thickness;

then $$t = \frac{pD}{2s},$$

where D is the diameter of the pipe; or, denoting by w the weight of unit-volume of water, and by h the total head on the pipe in question,

$$t = \frac{hwD}{2s}.$$

If, as is customary, t is measured in inches, D and h in feet, w in tons, and s in tons per square inch—

$$t = \frac{hD}{2 \times 12 \times 36 \times s}$$

$$= \frac{hD}{864\,s}. \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

But if the value of t, thus found by (i.) for any pipe, is less than a certain amount, shown by experience to be necessary for the production of a sound casting and the preservation of rigidity under the usage to which the pipe is subjected in work—especially the external pressure brought to bear upon it by the earth when it is laid—its thickness is increased up to that amount, which may be determined by the empirical rule

$$t = \frac{\sqrt{D}}{2}.$$

Example.—If a cast-iron pipe, 3 feet in diameter, under a head of 250 feet of water, is 1 inch in thickness, the additional thickness t' of metal required to enable it to withstand a head of 300 feet, would be—assuming a working strength of 1 ton per square inch in the iron—

$$t' = \frac{50 \times 3}{864}$$

$$= 0 \cdot 17 \text{ inch};$$

that is, the pipe would have to be made 1·17 inch thick.

Owing to the practical impossibility of obtaining perfectly cylindrical and concentric pipe-barrels, it is proper to add to the thickness found above an amount ranging from $\frac{1}{16}$ inch for small pipes to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch for those of larger size—this being the maximum deviation from the specified thickness to be permitted in manufacture.

Every portion of a main under pressure must be calculated with respect to the maximum pressure that it will have to sustain, in order to attain an economical result. The pipes comprised in a long main are grouped in classes, and generally vary by $\frac{1}{8}$ inch to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch in thickness—by the results of the calculations.

The external diameter in each class is constant throughout, and the "steps" in the thickness of the barrel are effected by varying its internal diameter. By this plan, equality of the joints is secured, with a uniform size of socket; and the number of "taper-pipe" specials is reduced. If the main possesses a wide range in the thickness of the pipe-barrels, a taper-pipe should be introduced at every fourth step, in order to avoid too great variation of the internal diameter. In connection with this part of the subject, it may be remarked that no little attention is required in the practical operation of laying the main, to ensure the proper position of each class of pipes being duly observed.

324. In the supply of high-pressure water for hydraulic power, the forces dealt with are so considerable—frequently pressures exceeding 700 lbs. per square inch—that the thickness of the pipes employed bears a high ratio to the diameter, and the barrel cannot be treated as a thin shell in computing its strength.

Analysis of the conditions obtaining in a thick hollow cylinder subject to internal fluid-pressure leads to the equation

$$\frac{p_0}{q_0} = \frac{R^2 + r^2}{R^2 - r^2},^*$$

where R, r, are the outer and inner radii, respectively,

p_0 is the maximum hoop-tension, say, one-eighth of the ultimate tenacity of the metal,

q_0 is the radial pressure on the inner surface of the cylinder;

$$R = r\sqrt{\frac{p_0 + q_0}{p_0 - q_0}}. \qquad \text{(i.)}$$

From (i.) r, p_0 and q_0 being known, R is found; and from this $(R - r)$, the thickness of the barrel of the pipe, is determined.

---

* Rankine, 'Applied Mechanics,' 9th edition, Art. 273.

Thus,
$$t = r\left(\sqrt{\frac{p_0 + q_0}{p_0 - q_0}} - \quad\right). \qquad \text{(ii.)}$$

Example.—Taking dimensions in inches, and stresses in lbs. per square inch, a high-pressure main, 6 inches in diameter, worked at 6000 lbs. per square inch, must have—assuming as the maximum working stress in the metal, 2200 lbs. per square inch—the thickness of

$$3\left(\sqrt{\frac{2200 + 600}{2200 - 600}} - 1\right) = 0 \cdot 96 \textit{ inch.}$$

Adding the amount necessary to cover defects of figure in casting, the pipe-barrel should be 1 inch thick.

325. In the conveyance of water for power purposes, it is important, at the outset, to know how far the mechanical efficiency of the apparatus to be employed for the transmission of power whether electric, pneumatic or of any other kind, is greater or less than that of the aqueduct in which the water is to be conveyed. In other words, will less head be absorbed in conveying the water, or in transmitting the corresponding power, in the form of electric, pneumatic or other energy? The answer to this question must influence in an important degree the situation of the works where the transformation from water-power to the desired form of energy, is effected—whether near to the source of supply, or at the place where the power is to be utilised, if these are some distance apart.

With regard to the size of pipe to be used (we do not here speak of the transmission of hydraulic power from a generating-station throughout a district of supply) to convey water from a natural source of supply to a place where its potential energy is to be converted into, say, electric current, the question arises, is it cheaper to employ a large pipe and a comparatively low pressure or a smaller high-pressure main conveying equal energy?

Approximately (§ 323) the weight of a pipe, and therefore its cost, varies as its diameter and the pressure to which it is subjected; then, for a given expenditure upon a pipe, the pressure under which it may be worked varies inversely as its diameter.

Its capacity for conveying water with a given loss of head varies as it $(\text{diameter})^{\frac{5}{2}}$.

The water-power that can be conveyed by it is the product of its conveying-capacity and the pressure, and therefore varies as

$$\frac{\mathit{diameter}^{\frac{5}{2}}}{\mathit{diameter}} = (\mathit{diameter})^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

From this it appears that the water-power that can be conveyed by a main varies at a higher rate than its diameter, *ceteris paribus*; and, therefore, where the efficiency of the water-motors is no greater at high than at low pressures, it is economical to convey water at low pressure with a correspondingly large diameter of pipe—assuming that the quantity of water available is such as to permit this disposition of the matter, within the limits imposed by the mechanical conditions that govern the efficiency of water-motors.

The case is, however, entirely different for the distribution of hydraulic power from a pumping-station throughout a neighbouring district. Here the cost of the development of the power is so considerable in relation to that of its conveyance, as to affect in an important degree the question of the most suitable pressure for the water-mains. The experience of the great hydraulic-power installations of London and Liverpool is sufficient to prove that the high-pressure system is absolutely the best under such circumstances.

326. The joints of cast-iron pipes are formed in several ways:

Figs. 78 and *79* show ordinary forms of " lead " joint—the annular space between the spigot of one pipe and the socket or " faucet " of its fellow, into which it is introduced to a depth of about 4 inches, containing a ring of lead tightly caulked in round the face. The lead-space is slightly coned towards the face of the joint. "Turned-and-bored" joints are illustrated in *Figs. 80* and *81*—the joint being formed by the adhesion of the turned surface of the spigot of one pipe against the bored interior of the socket of the next one. The prototype of this joint is to be found in the ancient wooden water-pipes made of tree-trunks pointed at one end to a spigot-shape and bored out—the bore being enlarged to form a faucet at the other end. Large numbers of such pipes are still used in districts where economy recommends them before other considerations. For example, in Detroit, Mich., 87 miles of these timber pipes might have been found a few years ago, some of them laid so recently as 1880.*

Fig. 78.

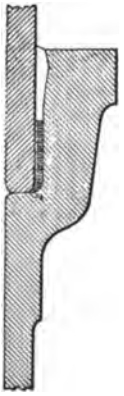


Fig. 79.

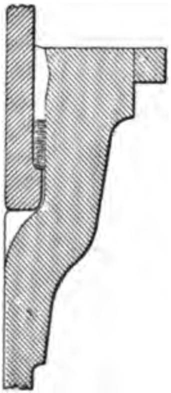


Fig. 80.

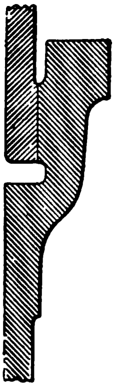
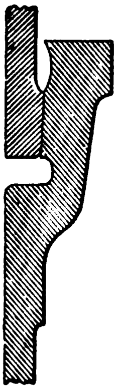


Fig. 81.



Scale ⅛.

Figs. 82 and *83* give " flange "-joints ; the actual joint being formed by insertion between the planed fillets 1½ inch wide that project about ¼ inch beyond the flanges, and are drawn together by the tension of the bolts. The fillets are sometimes omitted, and the faces of the flanges are planed right across, in this case a sheet of thick canvas, cut out to fit the flanges and bolt holes and dipped in a mixture of red lead and linseed oil of the consistency of paint, is bolted up between the flanges to make the joint.

---

* Report on the Water-Power of the U.S.—Washington, 1887.

The joint, *Fig. 84*, has proved effective in high-pressure water-mains. It is of a form introduced a few years ago by Mr. E. B. Ellington, which has successfully overcome the difficulties attending the application of great pressure in drawing the flanges together.

The actual joint is formed by the indiarubber ring which is forced into the recess on the extremity of one pipe by the fillet on the extremity of that next to it.

Fig. 82.

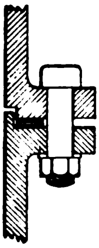


Fig. 83.

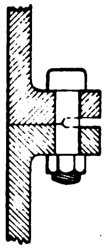
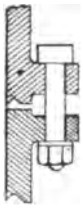


Fig. 84.



Scale 1 inch = 1 foot.

Flexible pipe-joints are alluded to in § 345.

The depth of "lead" joints depends upon the pressure to which they are to be subjected ; but the lead ring is seldom less than 2 inches, or more than 2½ inches broad, and has a thickness of ¼ inch. The thickness may, however, range up to ⅝ inch in wide-socket pipes, employed sometimes for laying mains round curves. The total depth of the socket is about as much again as that of the lead in the joint, the space behind which is filled with either spun-yarn or lead-wire, jammed hard against the back of the socket before the molten lead is poured into the joint.

Large pipes are sometimes furnished with half a dozen equidistant lugs cast on the back of the sockets, inside, to provide a bearing for the spigots of those following them; but these lugs have generally to be hand-dressed, or cut off altogether when the pipes are working round a curve. Still, they are useful in preventing, to a certain extent, the sockets from being burst by the application of too much force in driving the spigots home. The foregoing remarks apply both to ordinary straight pipes and to the numerous special pipes: Bends, collars, branches, taper-pipes, double-socket, double-spigot, flange-and-socket, and all pipes necessary for the introduction of valves and other appurtenances of water-mains.

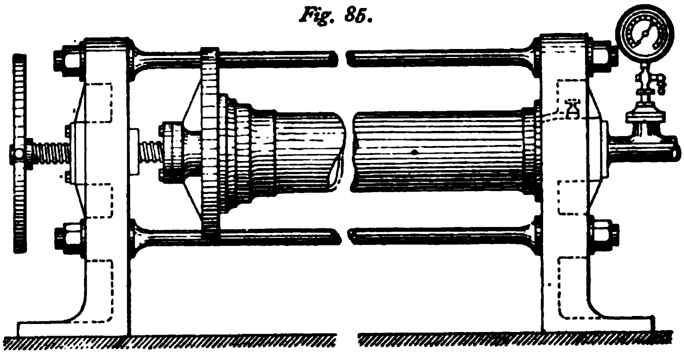
Straight pipes are usually, if less than 1 foot in internal diameter, cast in 9-foot lengths; above that size they are cast in 12-foot lengths. Special pipes may, with advantage, be made one-half of these lengths, as their cost per ton is higher.

327. In the best English practice, pipes are made of mine-pig iron, re-melted in a cupola, and are cast vertically socket downwards, if they are of spigot-and-socket type, with a head of 1 foot of metal which is afterwards cut off in the lathe. In planing the flanges of those pipes that possess them, care must be taken that the faces are truly at right angles to the axis of the pipe. The usual requirements for the production of sound castings are to be specified in contracts for manfacturing them. Their cylindrical shape is proved by rolling them on an iron gauntree, and their straightness and concentric figure by callipers and straight-edges. The spigots and sockets are tested as to dimensions and form by circular steel template-rings.

328. The tests applied to metal used for the manufacture of cast-iron pipes are various, and are not always consistent with one another: one proof of strength which has been applied to many thousands of tons of iron for pipes within our experience, with satisfactory results, is

that a bar of metal, 40 inches long, 2 inches deep, and 1 inch wide, the weight of which must not exceed 21 lbs., shall, when supported on edge at points 36 inches apart, sustain a load of 3000 lbs. applied at the middle of its bearing for 1 hour, and shall under this load deflect at least ⅜ inch at the middle. An additional test of tensile strength, which has much to recommend it, is that a bar of the metal, 8 inches long and 1 inch square in section, shall sustain a load of 8 tons (tensile stress) for 1 hour. As an alternative, the transverse stress may be slightly reduced and the longitudinal test be somewhat increased. After they have been examined, the pipes are proved with oil in a testing-machine, *Fig. 85*.

Fig. 86.



The ordinary form of this apparatus consists of two vertical iron shields, between which the pipe is placed horizontally and in one of which is an inlet for the oil furnished with a pressure gauge. One of the shields is fixed and the other is movable, the latter being forced against the pipe by either hydraulic- or screw-pressure—the joints being made with leather or indiarubber rings. The pipe is then fully charged with oil, and the proof-pressure, which is generally double the working-pressure, is applied by a force-pump and is maintained for 2 or 3 minutes—the barrel of the pipe being meanwhile repeatedly struck with a light hammer and closely examined for any trace of leakage. If proved sound, the pipe is at once re-heated in a stove to a temperature of 600° F., and is then dipped into a solution of pitch, asphalt, resin and linseed oil, at a temperature of 300° F., in accordance with the process invented by the late Dr. Angus Smith of Aberdeen. The film of varnish thus laid on, rapidly hardens, and is, if applied to clean metal, possessed of remarkably adhesive and durable properties—preserving the iron from corrosion for many years. The pitch must be as free as possible from such hydrocarbons as either volatilize or dissolve by long exposure to flowing water. The coating is much more effective if after the first coat has cooled, the pipe is again dipped, taking care that the first coat is not melted in the operation. But if, as too frequently happens, the castings are exposed to the atmosphere before being coated, and so become oxidised, the whole process is useless and might as well be dispensed with. Coating pipes with gas-tar or other similar substances is also a futile operation.

Fig. 86.

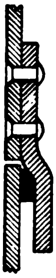
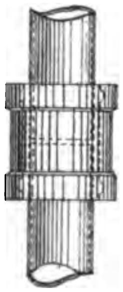


Fig. 87.



Scale 1 inch = 1 foot.

329. With regard to wrought-iron or steel pipes, the smaller sizes are drawn or welded, and those of larger diameter are riveted. The joints are flanged and bolted, jammed spigot-and-socket-wise, or collared with single or double lead-joints, *Figs. 86*, *87*.

The joints illustrated in these figures possess the advantage of allowing for the natural expansion and contraction of the main; and it may be observed that, where flanged, or turned and bored, or any other rigid joints are used for a cast-iron main, it is desirable to make, say, every tenth joint of lead on this account.

A preservative coating, consisting of several coats of good red lead and linseed oil paint, may be advantageously applied to wrought-iron and steel pipes, which must, however, be scraped perfectly clean before being painted. A wash of Portland cement forms a cheaper coating, and is found to answer fairly well. After the pipes have been coated and dried, they are weighed—their weights affording an important check upon the section of the metal in the barrels. It is customary to specify a minimum weight for every class of pipe, in addition to the specification of the normal thickness and permitted deviation therefrom (§ 323); also a maximum weight, beyond which any excess of metal is not paid for.

330. The most minute attention must be paid to the manufacture of water-pipes, during every stage of their progress from the foundry to the trench in which they are finally laid. Without regular and intelligent inspection, good results are unattainable. After the pipes have left the manufacturer's hands, they are often exposed to severe vibration and to rough usage, in the course of their transit to the works. Blows or pressure are apt to produce fine cracks in the skin of the metal, which are frequently so minute as to escape observation ; but which will be to a certainty developed by vibration or by variation of temperature, and may lead to fracture of the pipes in which they occur, when the latter are exposed to the water-pressure. Striking the castings with a hammer, when slung in the chains over the trench, will not indicate the presence of cracks that only extend slightly below the surface of the metal. We have repeatedly observed such small cracks extend right through strong hooped sockets by the expansion due to the mere warmth arising from the process of " running " the lead joint.

As a precaution against fracture of the spigots, which are the weakest portion of pipes, during transit, wrought-iron rings are often shrunk on them ; and these have in our experience proved effective—especially in cases of the carriage of pipes by sea, where, from the rolling of vessels, they are exposed to greater risks of damage than in perhaps any other kind of transit. In large pipes, wrought-iron hoops are sometimes shrunk on the sockets, to add strength to enable them to withstand the somewhat severe tensile stress caused in them by the caulking of the joint.

Nothing, however, short of expert inspection at the trench-side, and rigid adherence to the rule of not passing a single flaw, can be relied upon to ensure a sound main. It is not too much to say that, were this practice invariably adhered to, the "prevention of waste" would play a much less important part in the maintenance of waterworks than is the case at present.

When pipes are fractured at the ends, they may be cut to shorter lengths, and so rendered serviceable. They are best cut by forming a chase round them with a diamond-pointed chisel, and then driving, simultaneously, sharp steel wedges through the barrel at three equidistant points in its circumference. By this method, the pipe is separated into two parts with a clean cut following the line of the chase.

In some cases, single small air-holes may be drilled out, and if the barrel appears to be otherwise sound, a thread may be formed in the hole, when a brass or gun-metal plug is inserted. Such patching as this is only permissible with the express sanction of the engineer, and under his inspection; and, in any case, the pipes so treated should be subsequently proved under pressure before use.

Cast-iron pipes are manufactured of sizes varying between the maximum limit of, say, 50 inches in diameter down to a minimum of about 1½ inch. Owing, however, to the difficulties of varnishing small pipes internally, and the rapid diminution of their area with but little corrosion, such pipes of less diameter than 3 inches cannot be recommended for use in ordinary cases.

A wooden stave pipe must be strong enough to resist the internal pressure, but thin enough to allow complete saturation and to readily bend so as to adapt itself to the curves. With a head of 150 feet, an 18-inch diameter pipe may be built of yellow pine from 6 inches by 2 inches battens, 12 to 24 feet long, free from knots and shaped to the circle. Along one radial face is a bead to crush into its neighbour. Tongues of band steel are used to make the butt joints. Round steel bands $\frac{7}{16}$ of an inch diameter and 2⅝ inches apart, hold the pipe together.

331. The subject of house-service pipes demands a brief notice. The material of which they are made is either wrought iron or lead—the former kind being the stronger and cheaper, but the latter the more durable, because less liable to rapid corrosion. They are generally specified to be of a certain weight per lineal yard; depending upon their diameter and the pressure to which they will be exposed in use.

The following table indicates the ruling practice.

WEIGHTS OF PIPES FOR HOUSE-SERVICE.

Drawn Wrought-iron Pipes.

Diameter of bore.	Head.	Weight per lineal yard.
¾ inch	150 feet	3½ lbs.
1 ,,	,,	5½ ,,
1¼ ,,	,,	7 ,,
1½ ,,	,,	9 ,,

Lead Pipes.

Diameter of bore.	Head.	Weight per lineal yard.	Head.	Weight per lineal yard.
⅜ inch	150 feet	4¼ lbs.	300 feet.	5 lbs.
½ ,,	,,	6 ,,	,,	7 ,,
⅝ ,,	,,	7 ,,	,,	9 ,,
¾ ,,	,,	8 ,,	,,	11 ,,
1 ,,	,,	12 ,,	,,	15 ,,
1¼ ,,	,,	14 ,,	,,	20 ,,
1½ ,,	,,	18 ,,	,,	26 ,,

332. The joints of iron service-pipes are best formed by short couplings, threaded internally and screwed over the ends of the pipes to be united. The thread on the pipe-ends is cut so as to leave them slightly conical; so that when they are forced hard into the coupling, with a smearing of red lead on them, a tight joint is ensured.

There are several kinds of joint suitable for lead pipes. The wiped solder joint is perhaps the most reliable. To form this, the end of one of the pipes is widened with a turn-pin, so as to allow the introduction of the filed down end of the other pipe, to which it is to be united. Hot solder is then poured on to the joint, and, whilst in a pasty condition, is wiped around it with a cloth or wisp of tow. This manipulation requires the skill of an experienced plumber.

Another plan, which demands less skill, is to widen the ends of the two pipes so as to receive a short brass ferrule. The joint is then enclosed in an iron mould, and hot solder is run in until the space round the ferrule between the ends of the pipes is completely filled with metal fused into the lead of the pipes. The mould is then removed, and a clean, strong, but inflexible joint, *Fig. 88* results.

The ordinary "union" joint, *Fig. 89*, hardly requires description. The ends of the pipes, slightly up-set, are drawn tightly together with a leather washer between them by screwing up the nut.

333. For small aqueducts, stoneware pipes are often found useful, especially for conduits that follow the contour of the ground with a slight fall; they can only sustain light pressures. By employing them, a watercourse may be formed that is both cheap and free from all risk of pollution, and is superior to open ditches or conduits, inasmuch as it may be siphoned across small depressions in the ground—thus frequently effecting considerable saving in distance and in fall. Such an aqueduct must, however, be always kept running freely; or it must be provided with balancing-tanks (§ 357) at such intervals as may be necessary to prevent the occurrence, at any point, of a hydrostatic pressure greater than that due to about 20 feet head of water.

Fig. 88.

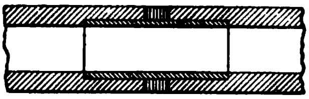
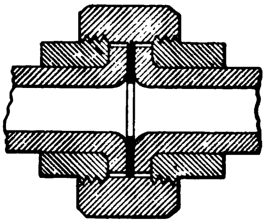


Fig. 89.



Stoneware pipes for this work are made from finely-ground clay, washed, tempered and pugged, and baked to formed a tough, vitreous, homogeneous mass. They must be perfectly straight, true in circular section, uniform in thickness, and ought to exhibit a finely-glazed surface free from cracks and other flaws.

The joints are generally of the ordinary spigot-and-socket form, and are made by forcing stiff Portland cement mortar hard into the annular spaces between the sockets and corresponding spigots, when the pipes are laid. It is essential that the cement be used in a stiff pasty condition and be well rammed into the joints. Soft mortar merely applied with the trowel does not give a satisfactory result. During the process of jointing, care must be used to prevent any cement that may be forced past the back of the sockets, from being left in the pipes; where it would form a serious obstruction to the flow of the water, and would probably become the nucleus of a complete stoppage in the future.

A more reliable joint is made by first caulking spun yarn into the sockets, and then running with a mixture of equal parts of flour of sulphur and fine sand heated together at a temperature of 230° F.

It is only by unremitting attention to such details of execution as this, that aqueducts can be made to fulfil in practice the conditions contemplated in their design; and a systematic consideration of the special operations belonging to this class of work, is quite as important as the elaboration of the hydraulic principles involved in it.

334. The construction of those aqueducts that are mere channels lined with clay, concrete, brick or stone, is a matter that requires the exercise of so little special art as to render it superfluous to dwell thereon in a treatise pretending to discuss operations belonging peculiarly to hydraulic engineering. Even timber and iron, or steel, conduits seldom involve in their construction any features distinct from those met with in every-day mechanical work. The building-materials used for this purpose must not be porous, friable, or liable to erosion by the action of the atmosphere or of running water to any considerable extent; and, in all mason- or brick-work, hydraulic lime or cement must be employed.

The formation of aqueducts may involve the erection of such vast structures as that which carries the Marseilles canal across the valley of the river Arc, at Roquefavour; but it cannot be said that there is anything appertaining particularly to waterworks construction in any part of that magnificent pile of masonry, beyond the channel it supports. Again, the piercing of aqueduct-tunnels differs in no respect from tunnelling for any other engineering purpose; except that the inverts, up to the water-line, must be rendered impervious to moisture, and must be of the proper section for the efficient conveyance of the water through them.

Both tunnels and conduits must of course follow the hydraulic gradient, which, in the case of uniform flow, traverses the surface of the current; angles and sharp curves in the route should be avoided; and, in the case of unlined tunnels, a sufficient increment of sectional area should be provided, to counteract the great retardation of flow caused by the ragged surface of the rock; waste-weirs and sluices are placed at the entrances of tunnels and of long culverts, as well as at the upper ends of siphons and at other convenient places along the line of aqueduct (§ 319). The work involved in all this is generally of a simple character, common to almost every class of engineering building.

335. But when we turn to the wider subject of the conveyance of water under pressure in metal pipes; there is much to be said that is specially applicable to that matter. The assembling, laying and jointing of the pipes and their accessories, which are comprised in a large water-main, is a work that requires great labour and considerable manipulative skill. And when these operations are conducted in a rough country, where roads, if they exist, are often unserviceable, the work may well rank in point of difficulty

with other classes of constructive engineering which produce a more imposing result.

The weight of a single cast-iron pipe, 40 inches in diameter, ranges between 2½ tons and 5 tons; and these heavy but fragile masses of iron have to be conveyed with the utmost care, often for long distances across hilly country, to their final destination. Where roads are available, they are used as far as possible—the pipes being carried by specially contrived vehicles from the railway-station or the wharf to the nearest point of the pipe-line. If the roads are smooth and level, and the loads are not too heavy, two-wheeled "whims," from the arched axles of which the pipe is suspended in sling-chains, are found useful. A loading crane is thereby dispensed with—the pipes being raised in slings off the ground by means of capstan-headed screws working in the crown of the arched axles of the whims, and being lowered again by the same means at the place of their deposit.

For heavy pipes, a four-wheeled carriage is the best, and few contrivances for transporting pipes by road, serve the object better than a short timber-carriage, upon the raised bolsters of which the pipe rests in blocks hollowed to fit the curvature of its barrel. For crossing soft ground, broad-wheeled vehicles are necessary; but even with these, the ground alongside of a pipe-trench becomes so cut up that, in wet weather, it would often be impassable for any ordinary wheeled conveyance. On this account, a tramway is not infrequently laid beside the pipe-track, along which the pipes and other materials are expeditiously transported on trolleys, with a minimum haulage-effort. Moreover, this tramway may also carry the crane that is employed for laying the pipes in the trench—a method found to answer well in practice. A 3-foot gauge tramway, of 30-lb. or 40-lb. flat-footed rails spiked to wooden sleepers will answer for the heavier classes of pipes; whilst a light 18-inch tramway, on the Decauville or some similar system, suits smaller sizes of main, less than, say, 2 feet in diameter.

336. In describing briefly the operations of pipe-laying, we allude particularly to mains of large diameter; but the description, with slight modification, is equally applicable to all classes of pipes.

The pipe-trench is excavated with vertical sides to such a depth as will give a minimum cover, in this country, of 2½ feet of earth over the main, when laid, and of such a width as to allow 6 inches or 9 inches clearance between the pipes and the sides of the trench.

For lead-jointed or flanged pipes, chambers are excavated opposite every joint, in order to facilitate the work of "caulking" or bolting up. These joint-holes are recessed 10 inches to 12 inches into the sides and bottom of the trench. Care must be taken to set them out from the actual net measurements of the pipes about to be laid; otherwise the apparently insignificant differences in the lengths, are found to produce, in the aggregate, a considerable error in work; and the joint-holes, if excavated in wrong positions, have to be either extended or recut. This cannot be done without seriously impairing the soundness of the pipe-beds. In wet, or otherwise bad ground, where close timbering is required, it is well to excavate the entire trench of sufficient width to allow the jointers to work in it. Where the excavation is in rock, the trench should be sunk sufficiently low to admit of a 6-inch bed of earth being laid on the bottom for the pipes to rest upon. In soft or boggy ground, the main must be supported upon piles or piers carried down far enough to obtain a solid bearing. The bottom of the trench must be set out and carefully dressed to the proper profile of the pipe-line, so that the pipes may rest upon a fair bed throughout their bearing, without packing. Joint-holes are not required for turned-and-bored pipes—a decided advantage, for they are always troublesome to construct, and they interfere with the bedding of the main.

337. The operation of laying the pipes in the trench is accomplished by either shear-legs or travelling cranes. When the former apparatus is employed, the pipe to be laid is rolled upon a couple of timber balks laid across the pipe-trench; the shear-legs, one pair of which are united together and carry a double-purchase winch, and the other two straddle across the trench, are moved forward over the pipe; a sling-chain is passed round the pipe-barrel and attached to overhead chain-tackle, carried by the legs and worked from the winch. The pipe is then raised, its soundness tested, the balks which supported it moved away, and it is lowered into position in the trench—the spigot being directed by the pipe-layer into the socket of the last-laid pipe—being first of all, however, used as a " ram " or " mall " to gently force it home into the one that precedes it. In this operation care must be exercised to avoid splitting sockets or doing other injury; for which reason a plank is interposed between the swinging pipe and the socket of the one that is to be driven. The spigot of one pipe should not be forced so far into that preceding it, as to bear hard against the back of its socket. In the case of pipes of large diameter, copper or lead distance-strips should be inserted in order to prevent such an occurrence, and removed before the joints are made.

When laying a turned-and-bored main, the pipes are generally driven home with a swinging wooden mall.

Where a tramway is laid alongside the pipe-trench, a steam-travelling-crane, using one of the tramway rails and a temporary rail set to a wider gauge, may be employed for pipe-laying with advantage. The labour of rolling the pipes and moving the balks is saved by the jibbing-action of the crane, and the speed of working is greatly accelerated. Even where a tramway is not laid, a few lengths of metal secured to cross-sleepers may carry a locomotive crane, which, moving its own road forward in sections, will be found to save time, labour and expense. In hilly and rough country, such a machine, weighing, perhaps, 12 tons or 15 tons, may prove sometimes to be a troublesome piece of apparatus to move about; and it should therefore be designed with a view to its being readily dismantled and re-erected when occasion requires it.

In laying small pipes, it is usual to joint a number together on the side of the trench, and then, passing slings under them—carefully avoiding any deflection at the joints—to lift and place them in the trench by manual labour. This saves the expense of making many joint-holes, and ensures better work than can be easily obtained in the inconvenient positions required for caulking joints in small trenches.

As soon as the pipes are laid and adjusted to their positions, they are firmly held by being packed with a little earth on each side of the barrels, and are then ready to be jointed.

338. In making a lead joint, the first operation is to force two or three laps of spun-yarn or soft lead wire to the back of the annular space between the spigot and faucet—a uniform thickness being maintained by steel wedges driven into the joint where necessary and kept there until the resistance of the yarn or lead wire holds the spigot in place. If lead wire is used, it permits the adoption of a shallower socket than does yarn—thereby reducing the weight of metal in the pipe.

The yarning-iron, *Figs. 90*, is marked to indicate when the proper depth for the lead joint is obtained. The face of the joint is then closed by an iron or steel ring, *Fig. 91*, hinged at the bottom and drawn together at the top, within 4 inches, by a bolt and nut, and formed so as to leave a triangular space all round its inner edge. The ring is greased and made tight against the pipe by clay luting round its edges—the open space at the top being formed into a small cup by a piece of clay. The lead-pot, containing a sufficient quantity of molten lead to completely fill the joint, is then set on a saddle placed across the pipe, and is tilted by the handles on the ends of its trunnions so as to pour the molten metal into the cup, whence it flows into and around the joint, completely filling it. The ring may be then removed and the joint is ready to be "caulked" or "set up." In order to avoid the occurrence of air-holes and other flaws in the joint, both the spigot and the socket must be perfectly dry and clean, and the "running" or pouring of the lead must be rapid and continuous; the joint of a large pipe can be run in 15 seconds. With a view to facilitate the complete escape of air during this process, a small hole has sometimes been drilled through the back of every socket—a precaution involving some practical difficulties in laying the pipes, and, according to

Fig. 91.

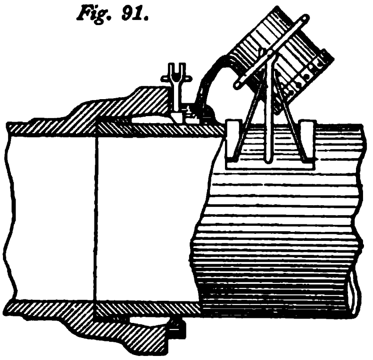
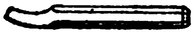
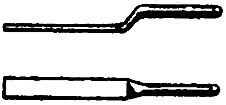


Fig. 92.



Figs. 90.



our experience, unnecessary. It is, however, desirable that the pipes should not be laid with the sockets facing downhill on gradients steeper than 1 in 24; and the best practice is, wherever possible, to lay up-hill from the scour-valves (§ 351).

The lead used must be pure, but not too soft. Highly de-silverised lead may often be improved for use in joints by the addition of a little tin to harden it. The temperature of the molten metal requires attention; if too cold, it may fail to run round the joint, and if too hot, it is apt to set hard and become liable to fracture under the application of the caulking-set.

After the jointing-ring has been removed, the "git" or solid contents of the cup into which the lead is poured, is cut off with a sharp chisel; with which tool also, the edge of the lead fillet left by the jointing-ring is gently loosened from the pipe-barrel. The jointer then proceeds to caulk the lead into the joint, in three successive operations, with an equal number of properly-proportioned "sets," *Fig. 92.*

339. The caulking-sets should be ⅛ inch, $\frac{3}{16}$ inch, and ¼ inch thick at the face, respectively, and ¾ inch or 1 inch broad, according to the size of the pipes they are used upon. They are directed by the jointer, and are struck with a double-handed hammer of 5 lbs. weight by his mate. Each stage of the caulking-operation should be proceeded with continuously round the joint; the surplus of the fillet of lead which is not forced into it, being gradually squeezed up in a complete ring, until it is sheared away from it by the sharp edge of the inner periphery of the socket. With small pipes, a clay rope may be substituted for the jointing-ring, and the caulking is usually performed entirely by the jointer with a single-handed hammer. During the process of jointing, and subsequently

until the pipes are covered with earth, they should be screened from powerful solar rays, which are apt to produce distortion and drawing of the joints, especially in the case of mains of large diameter.

Two jointers can yarn and run 25 joints of pipes, 42 inches diameter, in 10 hours, and they can caulk 8 such joints in the same time.

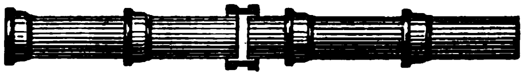
340. The quantity of lead used in forming joints is very variable, with a tendency to excess unless strict supervision is exercised over the work. As it forms an important item in the cost of mains we give the undermentioned weights of lead joints, 2½ inches deep, ascertained by weighing large numbers of them of ordinary thickness:

Diameter of pipe ..	36 inches.	18 inches.	9 inches.	4 inches.
Lead in the joint ..	50 lbs.	21 lbs.	10 lbs.	5 lbs.

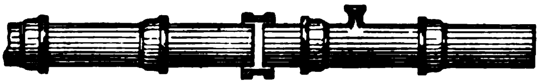
Much, of course, depends upon the thickness assigned to the joints and the accuracy observed in casting the pipes; but these weights may serve to indicate what is found in ordinary practice.

341. Two methods of uniting adjacent lengths of main may be noticed: (1) by the insertion of one or two double-spigot pipes, *Figs.* 93, cut so that the spigots may be about 6 inches apart, with a collar-joint. The collar, or "thimble" as it is sometimes termed, is passed on to the first-laid spigot, and is subsequently slid over the opening, when a

Figs. 93.



SOCKETS FOLLOWING



SOCKETS MEETING

lead joint is made at each end of it. (2) A method, that is only applicable to small pipes, is to cut the spigot end of the last pipe to be laid to such a length that it will just fit in its place ; then to raise several pipes on each side of the junction into an arch-form, so as to allow of the introduction of the middle spigot into its corresponding socket; after which the pipes are again lowered on to their beds and the union is completed by the jointers.

342. The joints of turned-and-bored pipes are very simply made. The socket of the last-laid pipe is heated, generally by a fire-basket suspended within it, to a temperature of about 250° F.; the turned portion of the spigot of the pipe to be next laid, is brushed over with hot asphalt or with cement, a few laps of twine being sometimes added, and is thrust into the hot socket and driven firmly home by a few blows from the swinging mall.

343. Flange-joints, if accurately machine-faced, are made with red-lead putty, a fine strand of hemp laid once or twice round the joint being sometimes a serviceable addition to it, and are drawn firmly and evenly together by the bolts and nuts. An excellent joint, requiring less accuracy of workmanship than the former, may, if the flanges are planed right across, be made by inserting a canvas disk with the inside cut away so as to fit the flange, and properly formed for the bolts to pass through it, and soaked in a thick mixture of red lead and boiled oil, between the meeting faces, which are then duly drawn up. Unplaned flanged joints may be made with a complete ring of $\frac{3}{8}$-inch lead-wire inserted within the line of the bolt-holes and squeezed flat between the flanges by the pressure of the bolts.

344. The final operation of filling-in the pipe-trench is more important than might appear at first sight. The excavated earth is restored and carefully packed in thin

layers round the pipe, in such a manner as to afford it a firm bearing throughout its length. The upper part of the trench is then filled, and well trodden or "punned" with beaters during that operation—the surface being restored as nearly as may be to its original condition; for which purpose the mould or road-material, as the case may be, is preserved separately at the time of excavation.

In dealing with mains that are lighter than the water they displace, care must be used to ensure a dry trench whilst the pipes are being laid, and the filling-in must proceed down-hill, so as not to impound water in any part of the pipe-trench. A pipe, 40 inches in diameter and 1 inch thick weighs 46 cwt., and displaces 66 cwt. of water. If closed at the ends and immersed in water, or even in semi-fluid earth (slurry), every 12-foot length would need to be loaded with at least 1 ton to prevent it from floating. This is precisely the condition of a portion of an empty water-main, when the pipe-trench has been filled-in at two points and water is impounded between them.

345. Turned-and-bored joints produce an inflexible main. Where lead-jointed pipe-lines follow a slight curve, ordinary straight pipes may be used; but their permissible curvature is limited by the depth of their sockets and the thickness of the joints. Lead joints properly coned or swelled in section, *Figs. 78, 79,* will permit without failure, a slight curvature of the main to take place after it has been completed, such as that which sometimes arises from unequal settlement of the pipe-beds. This does not, however, apply when the curvature is considerable. In situations where the curvature of a main is considerable, irregular, and liable to alteration, special flexible-jointed pipes are introduced. *Figs. 94* and *95* illustrate two kinds of these joints; the former has been used on several works in passing mains through soft ground, and the latter was

recently employed successfully in crossing the bed of the river Mersey.

In large mains, the normal thickness of joint may be taken at $\frac{5}{16}$ inch, and the minimum at $\frac{3}{16}$ inch—the depth of the socket being 5 inches. The maximum deviation of one pipe from the axial line of its fellow is, therefore, $\frac{AB}{OA} = \frac{1}{8}$ inch in 5 inches, *Fig.* *96*, i. e. 0·3 foot in a 12-foot pipe. The chords of the curve round which the pipes are laid with this deviation, are 12 feet long; and the curve is therefore circular, and its diameter B C, *Fig.* *97*, is

Fig. 94.

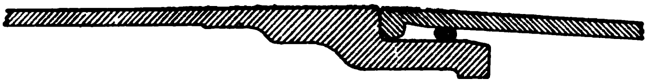
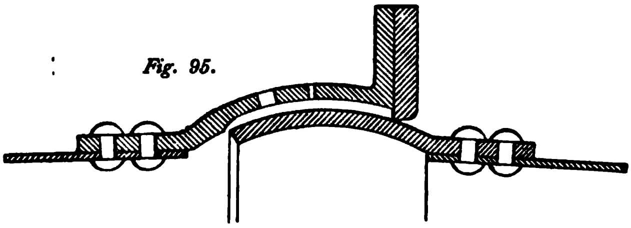


Fig. 95.



Scale 1 inch = 1 foot.

$$\frac{AO.AA_1}{AB} = \frac{12 \times 24}{0{\cdot}3} = 960 \text{ feet.}$$

The minimum radius at which ordinary straight pipes may, under the conditions above stated, be laid, is then 480 feet. If a curve of less radius than this must be followed, shorter lengths, or specially-curved pipes are used in good work; although it is notorious that straight pipes are often forced round curves to which they are quite inapplicable, with the inevitable result of bad joints.

346. Bend-pipes are specified according to the situation

they are designed to occupy, as of certain radius and length, or of certain angular deviation—the latter description being generally applied to those bends of small radius which are often required in pipe-lines that follow highways and other narrow routes. When a main is charged with water there must always be a certain hydrostatic pressure tending to force the joints of a bend. This pressure is due to the greater pressure on the larger surface of the outside portion of the bend compared with that on the smaller inside portion and is equal to the resultant of two equal forces, acting normally to the planes of the joints at the ends of the bend, equal to the product of the sectional area of the pipe into the hydrostatic pressure; because if the two ends of the bend were closed, it would be in equilibrium under internal pressure.

Fig. 96.

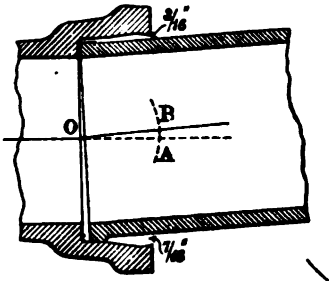
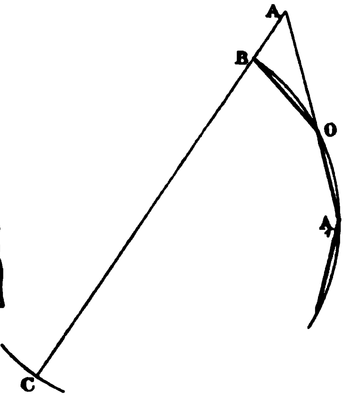


Fig. 97.

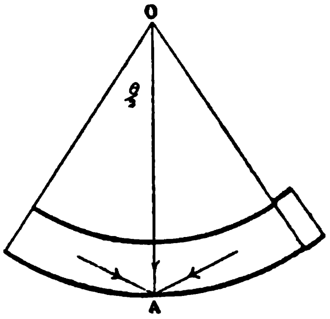


For example, in a 15-inch main, the static thrust on a 60°-bend, acting in the direction of its middle radius, is if the pressure be, say, 200 lbs. per square inch,

$$2 \times 176 \times \cos 60^\circ \times 200$$
$$= 35{,}200 \text{ lbs.}$$

It is evident that this pressure, exceeding 15 tons, must be opposed by some artificial resistance superior to that afforded by the rigidity of the joints and the soft earth-filling of the pipe-trench. The bend is consequently backed by a mass of concrete, bearing solidly against the side of the trench, which effectually prevents the joints from being drawn by a forward movement of the pipe.

Fig. 98.



In addition to hydrostatic pressure, bends are subject to a radial thrust, due to the motion of water through them. Its amount is in general small, as the following investigation indicates:

Consider the case of steady laminar flow through a circular bend of radius r and sectional area A, the angle at the centre of which is θ, *Fig. 98.*

Let v, as usual, denote the velocity of the flow of any stream-line, and w the weight of unit-volume of water. The resistance to the impact of the water upon an elementary ring of the pipe situated at a distance $r\phi$ from A along the bend (ϕ being a variable angle), in a direction parallel to the line O A, which bisects the angle θ, measured by its centripetal force, i.e. the force necessary to cause it to move in a circle, radius r, is

$$\frac{A\,w\,v^2\,r\,d\phi}{g\,r}\cos\phi.$$

The total resultant thrust exerted upon the bend in the direction O A, is

$$\frac{A\,w\,v^2}{g}\int_{-\frac{\theta}{2}}^{+\frac{\theta}{2}}\cos\phi\,d\phi,$$

$$= \frac{2 A w v^2}{g} \sin \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

This may be of importance when v is great; but in mains in which the velocity is small, it is comparatively insignificant compared with the hydrostatic pressure.

No rational data exist by which the head lost at bends may be computed precisely. There is no doubt that the eddies developed in the flow round a pipe-bend, or a bend in any kind of aqueduct, do absorb hydraulic energy to a certain extent; but from observation and experience we do not consider that the head so lost at bends appreciably affects the total loss of head in long mains. Experiments seem to show that the total loss of head in diverting the line of pipes through a certain angle is less with bends of comparatively small radius, because then the length over which the increased resistance comes in is kept small.

347. The effects of impact arising from the sudden arrest of the motion of the column of water conveyed in a long main, are well worthy of consideration, and might be expected to influence, in an important degree, the design of pipes. The momentum thus lost by the water is expended partly in distending the main and partly in effecting compression of its own bulk.* Here again, we must confess our inability to state in statical measure the amount of the forces thus developed, from a knowledge of the facts as they are ordinarily ascertained. Expressions, indeed, have been put forward, derived by certain mathematical pro-

---

* The difficulty of separating the compression of water from that of the vessel containing it, forms an obstacle to its precise determination. For practical purposes, the compressibility of water, as determined by experiments in which the envelope was of copper, may be stated. It is 0·000047709 (approximately $\frac{1}{21000}$) per standard atmosphere (760 mm.).

Regnault, 'Relation des expériences enterprises pour déterminer les principales lois et les données numériques qui entrent dans le calcul des machines à vapeur,' tome i. p. 455—Paris, 1847.

cesses, pretending to give the force of impact, or "water-ram" as it is sometimes called, resulting from the rapid closing of a valve on a long water-main. But, as a matter of fact, such forces can only be expressed in statical measure if the time-rate of the process of arrest is accurately known; and this element being, from the circumstances of the case, impossible to observe—the problem is not amenable to mathematical treatment. A better notion of what may be expected to occur can be derived from considering the results of some actual experience.

In 1884, Mr. E. B. Weston described a series of elaborate experiments made by him at Providence, R.I., to determine the increase of pressure in a water-pipe consequent upon the rapid checking of the flow through it.* The trials were conducted upon a length of 30 yards of 6-inch pipe, branching off a 24-inch main, followed by 22 yards of 4-inch, 1 yard of 2½-inch, 2 yards of 1¼-inch and 2 yards of 1-inch pipe. The water was caused to flow through this system of piping, its mean velocity in each section being computed from the measured delivery; and the flow was then checked by closing an outlet-tap provided for the purpose—an operation that occupied 0·16 second. The water-pressures developed by thus abruptly stopping the current, were measured by a Richards steam-indicator, which was tested both before and after use. The following are sufficient to exemplify the results obtained:

Diameter of pipe.	Velocity, feet per sec.	Ram, lbs. per sq. inch.	Velocity, feet per sec.	Ram, lbs. per sq. inch.
1 inch	10·02	106·3	20·94	177·5
1¼ „	4·45	81·8	9·31	121·5
2½ „	1·60	52·0	3·35	99·0
6 „	0·28	15·8	0·58	36·8

---

* Trans. American Soc. C.E., vol. xiv. p. 238.

In an experiment published by Sir Alexander R. Binnie, in 1887,* a ¾-inch pipe 114 feet long branching off a supply-main was furnished at the end with a plug-cock, the effective waterway of which was 0·152 square inch.

The following pressures were indicated by gauges:

	At the branch. Lbs. per sq. inch.	At the cock. Lbs. per sq. inch.
Cock not open	125	125
„ open	120	20
„ shut quickly	220	550

These pressures are astonishing, but although highly suggestive, we cannot, in the absence of a statement of the velocities, deduce exact rules from them.

Mr. Weston's experiments point to two definite conclusions: (1) that the pressures due to hydraulic impact vary with a lower power than the square of the velocity; (2) that, with the same velocity the intensity of pressure developed is higher in large than in small pipes. Although the data here presented are insufficient to lead to the construction of a general law applicable to the subject, it is evident by analogy from all these observations, that, under similar circumstances, exceedingly heavy blows might be expected in large mains; and that the ample margin of strength adopted for water-pipes is entirely justified by the extraordinary pressures that may be expected to occur sometimes in practice.

In order to avoid water-ram in large pipes, when it is necessary to stop the flow, a valve is shut as near to the upper end of the works as may be, consistently with its situation being such that no portion of the main on its lower side is above the level of the reservoir next below it. Moreover, all valves are constructed so that rapid closing is impossible; and, as a further safeguard, relief-valves (§ 354) are placed in proper positions upon the main.

---

* 'Lectures on Water-Supply'—Chatham.

348. In constructing a pipe-siphon across a steep-sided valley, the inclination of the main may be so high, that its natural adhesion to the ground becomes insufficient to prevent a considerable longitudinal stress from being transmitted from pipe to pipe, to the risk of fracturing the sockets. This stress may be so great as to make it advisable to support some of the pipes in such a manner as to transmit the thrust they receive from those above them, directly to the ground. Where the work is in rock, this may be effected by building the sockets of such pipes into a solid mass of concrete, keyed into the walls and floor of the pipe-trench. But if the sides of the valley do not lend themselves to this method of tying down the pipes, masonry or concrete anchors are built at some depth below the surface of the ground; and through them are passed steel rods, attached at one end behind the sockets of the pipes to be supported, and at the other end made fast by cotters to iron plates bearing against the anchors. In any such case, suitable bearings inside the sockets are necessary to provide an even bearing for the spigot that rests upon them. A bearing-ring of hard lead is sometimes inserted between the bottom of socket and the spigot.

349. When pipes are laid through deep trenches, the great vertical load imposed by the settlement of the earth, and the slight lateral support to the barrel that can be afforded by the filled-in earth, must be noticed. This does not apply to cases of tubes carried through semi-fluid earth which transmits a considerable lateral pressure, and does not produce the distorting effects that are caused by a load of dry earth. A cast-iron pipe 40 inches in diameter and

1 inch thick, laid in a hard-bottomed trench filled-in with dry material, will not carry more than 12 feet depth of earth without distorting, no matter how well the barrel may be supported by ordinary earth-packing at the sides. With twice that depth of superincumbent soil, the distortion of such pipes has, within our experience, amounted to as much as $\frac{5}{8}$ inch of vertical diminution and horizontal increase of diameter—an amount that approaches the maximum distortion the pipes can suffer without fracture.

No reliable rule can be given for designing the dimensions of pipes under conditions like these. A judgment based upon the observed effects of similar phenomena is the most trustworthy guide.

From the foregoing allusions to some of the practical difficulties that beset the construction of a water-main, we pass to a brief review of the auxiliary apparatus employed therein.

350. A water-pipe, following the natural undulation of the country it traverses, must be provided at every summit with means for the escape of air that is enclosed in it previous to its being charged, and is continually disengaged from the water.

If this provision were omitted, charging fully would be almost impossible ; and, even if accomplished, the summit-portion of the main, *a b*, *Fig. 99*, would gradually become filled with air—the point *b* being situated at such a level with respect to the reservoir B, that the pneumatic pressure there would be sufficient to cause a certain definite flow of water through the lower part of the pipe into the reservoir B—that water being supplied by overflow at the summit *a*.

The precise amount of the flow is determined by an imaginary hydraulic gradient from A to the point *a*, where

$a a_1 = b b_1$ is the head of water equivalent to the pneumatic pressure obtaining at the summit of the main, and b_1 B is parallel to A a_1.

Serious diminution of the flow would take place long before the extreme condition illustrated by the diagram

Fig. 99.

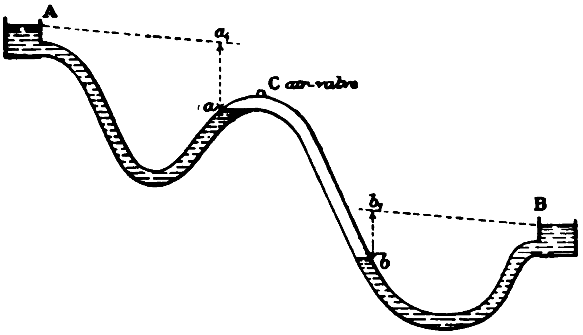
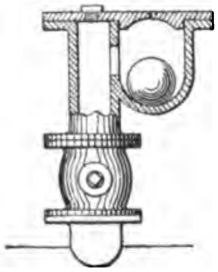


Fig. 99, was reached; but the action may be entirely prevented by inserting an air-valve at C, which will permit the escape of air, though not that of water, out of the main.

Fig. 100.



Scale $\frac{1}{8}$.

Fig. 100 shows a type of automatic air-valve in common use. An indiarubber ball rests in the position indicated, if there is air in the pipe, and remains there until all of it has escaped through the small orifice above it. As soon as the water which has expelled the air, completely occupies its place, the ball floats and is pressed against a dished seat, thus closing the orifice. There are other valves in use for this purpose, though none, perhaps, simpler and more effective. The indiarubber balls require to be renewed from time to time.

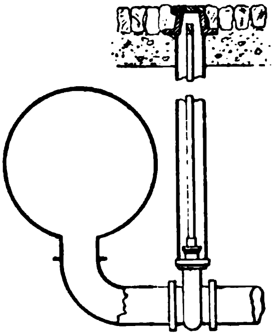
The size of the orifices in air-valves is an important feature. If they are too large, the escape of air during the process of charging the main, may be so rapid as to give rise to dangerous concussion of the water in the pipes; whereas, if they are very small, the charging, after the main has been emptied at any time for repair, may be unduly prolonged. Their diameters generally range between $\frac{1}{8}$ inch and $\frac{3}{8}$ inch.

It is useful to have a gun-metal screw-plug of comparatively large diameter in the flanged cover of the valve; this may be taken out whilst the main is being charged and is replaced as soon as water begins to issue through the hole. The automatic valve may, in that case, conveniently have a fine orifice, for regulating the subsequent discharge of air disengaged from the water during ordinary working. The air-valve casting is attached to the flange of the special branch-pipe; a plug-cock being inserted between the two, in order that the water may be shut off from the air-valve when it is necessary to open it for inspection or repair. As mains are in general laid up-hill, two sections ordinarily meet at a summit, where an air-valve special is introduced and union of the two is effected by means of a double-spigot pipe and collar, as illustrated in the lower of *Figs. 93*.

351. At the bottom of every hollow in the water-main, a scour-valve should be provided, both for scouring out, when necessary, the sediment that is invariably deposited at those points, and for emptying the main. As a general rule, the scour-valve may be made with a diameter one-fourth part of that of the main it serves. In construction it is similar to the stop-valves described hereafter. It is generally necessary to lay a few lengths of pipe from the scour-valves to convey the flush of water into the nearest available water-course; and, sometimes, these waste-pipes are of considerable length. The scour-valve is bolted, like

the air-valve, to a branch on a special pipe. In this case, however, the special is a double-socket pipe; from which as a starting-point, the main is laid in opposite directions. *Fig. 101* illustrates diagrammatically a scour-valve attached to a main by a flanged bend.

Fig. 101.



The bolts connecting such bends and the scour-valve to the main pipe, must be designed to sustain tension equal to the pressure in the main upon the area of the scour-branch.

Sometimes, and very conveniently in the case of small pipes, the branch is brought tangentially from the bottom of the main; so as to empty it completely, and, at the same time, to keep the level of the waste-pipe as high as possible.

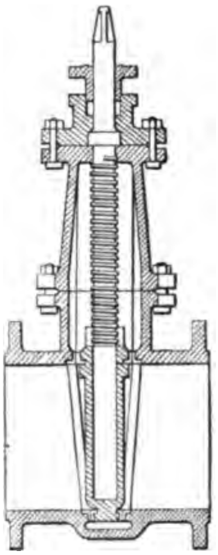
Another plan by which depth may be saved, is to incline the branch at about 30° with the vertical, adding a 60°-bend to bring the scour-valve and waste-pipe horizontal.

This is often of importance in flat country, where the absence of a water-course at a convenient level, though it may not prevent the scouring of the main under pressure, makes it sometimes necessary to empty the lower portion of it, when required, by pumping.

352. At certain points along the pipe-line, stop-valves are placed to regulate the rate of supply, and so that the sections of main between them may be isolated for repair.

The former object is best effected as near as possible to the outlet of any portion of the main, i. e. where it delivers into a reservoir; but for the latter purpose, such stop-valves if situated at depressions in the pipe-line are provided with a scour-valve on each side of them, and if at a summit with an air-valve on either side. The mechanical details of these valves are not within the scope of this treatise; but a general idea of the apparatus is presented by *Fig. 102*, which illustrates an ordinary type of double-faced valve. The shutter is actuated by a powerful screw of fine pitch. All the working parts, faces, glands and bearings are of gun-metal. It is customary to reduce the area of the waterway of stop-valves upon large mains considerably below that of the pipes commanded by them — the diminished thrust against the valve-shutter when closed, and the consequent ease of opening it, being gained without sensible loss of head in the main when the valve is fully open. A small rider-valve is also provided, which being opened before, and closed after, the main valve, renders the manipulation of the latter comparatively easy; its effect being to prevent excessive difference of pressure upon the two faces of the main shutter when the flow is checked, and to charge and equalise the pressure in a section that has been emptied, when it is required to put the pipe in train with that on the other side of the stop-valve.

Fig. 102.



Scale $\frac{1}{24}$.

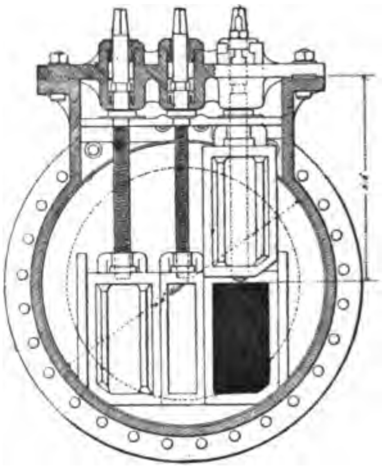
Fig. 103 shows a view of a 44-inch stop-valve with three shutters, made for the Liverpool waterworks. In this valve, the middle shutter closes the rider-valve and is much smaller than those on each side of it.

The fracture of mains that have been working for some time, is almost invariably due to hasty closing of stop- or sluice-valves. And the necessity for operating them very gradually, particularly towards the end of their stroke, cannot be too forcibly impressed upon those whose duty it is to manipulate them.

353. Automatic stop-valves are provided where serious damage or inconvenience would attend the discharge of water due to accidental fracture of the main.

They are placed, if it is feasible, under comparatively light pressure—being often situated a little below the hydraulic gradient, on the verge of deep depressions in the pipe-line, where serious fractures are chiefly to be apprehended. *Fig. 104* shows in outline the ordinary form of these valves. A pendulum, dotted in the *Fig.*, carries a small disk within the pipe, normal to its axis, and is balanced by a weight and adjusted so as to hang vertically when the velocity in the main is normal. Should it, however, increase abnormally, as it would in the event of a fracture on the lower side of the valve, the additional

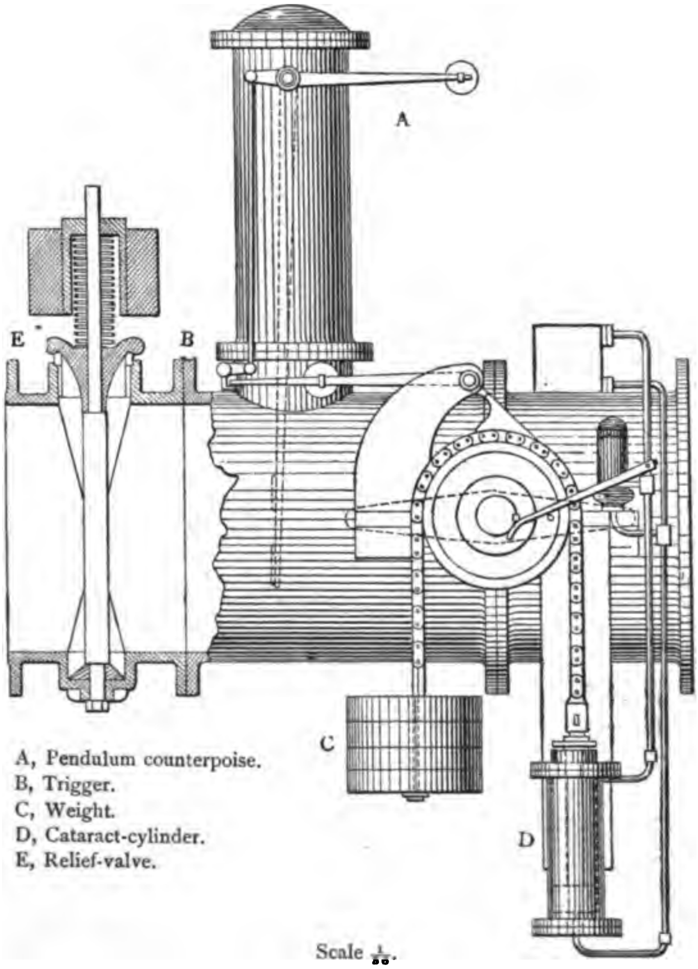
Fig. 103.



Scale $\frac{1}{36}$.

pressure of the water against the disk deflects the pendulum, releasing, by a trigger-action, a heavy weight which

Fig. 104.



A, Pendulum counterpoise.
B, Trigger.
C, Weight.
D, Cataract-cylinder.
E, Relief-valve.

Scale $\frac{1}{30}$.

closes the main throttle-valve (the outline of which is dotted in the figure) by a chain passing round the periphery of the valve-wheel. The rate at which the throttle-valve closes, is governed by a cataract-action; and, in a large main, the operation should occupy not less than 10 minutes—the latter part of it being effected at a gradually diminishing rate.

This is ensured by automatic throttling of the cataract supply-pipe, which takes place through the medium of a cam and lever as the main valve closes. A force-pump is provided for the purpose of setting the valve in position, by means of which also it may be worked through a small range occasionally to prevent it from sticking. All the working parts and bearings of the apparatus are gun-metal.

354. On the upper side of the main, in front of the self-closing valve, an equilibrium relief-valve, *Fig. 104*, is placed.

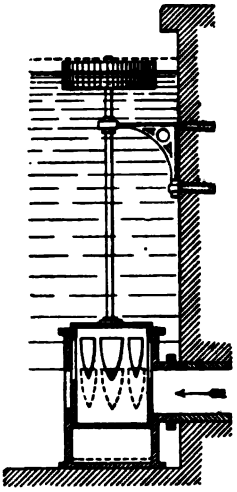
This valve is kept closed against the normal pressure of the main by a powerful helical spring loaded with a weight. The inertia of the weight and the stiffness of the spring prevent the valve from lifting under ordinary conditions; but any sudden increase of pressure in the main lifts the valve, compressing the spring, the inertia of which is slight, and permits the escape of a little water, thus relieving the pipes from concussion. By the so-called " equilibrium " method of suspension, a considerable area of discharge around the large valve-disk is afforded by a slight lift of the latter; and the action of the valve, being dependent upon the difference of the areas of the upper and lower discs, may be made very sensitive under the highest pressures.

This form of safety-valve forms an important adjunct to any apparatus the action of which may give rise to rapid arrest of the motion of the water in a main.

The need for automatic throttle-valves of the kind described is sometimes avoided, by arranging that one walks-man shall be always on duty in the neighbourhood of a stop-valve, upon which a pressure-recorder is fixed. In the event of the main bursting, the pressure-recorder falls and rings a bell, attracting the attention of the walks-man, who closes the stop-valve with due caution.

355. In addition to machinery for preventing water from running to waste in the normal direction of flow—the effect of which would ordinarily be to merely cause the waste to take place by over-flow at the service-reservoir or balancing-tank next above it—apparatus is provided to automatically cut off the supply to such reservoirs when the over-flow level is attained by the water in them. A simple self-closing valve in common use for this purpose is illustrated in *Fig. 105*. On the up-turned inlet-pipe is bolted an iron cylinder having a number of vertical equidistant slots in it. Inside the cylinder slides a hollow trunk or thimble, in which are holes corresponding in position with the vertical slots, the lower part being plain so as to cover the slots when it is raised sufficiently.

Fig. 105.

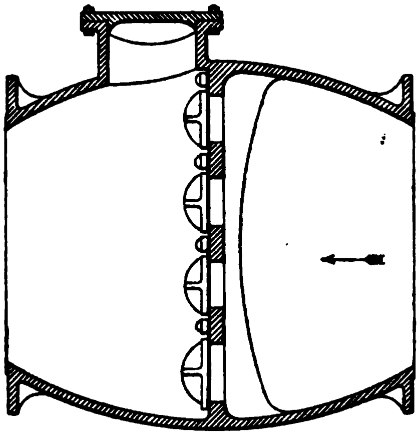


Scale $\frac{1}{100}$.

A vertical spindle attaches the thimble to a float. When the reservoir is empty, and until the water rises up to the stop that supports the float under these conditions, the thimble is in its lowest position and the valve is full open; but as the water-level rises higher, the float is lifted, and with it the thimble, until, at the top-water or over-flow level, the valve is completely shut.

Further, to provide against the discharge of water backwards through the main, in the event of fracture occurring in a siphon below the level of the reservoir into which it delivers, or at some other place where a leak might establish a reverse flow in the main, and lead to the loss of a large quantity of water, "re-flux" valves are introduced at such points as the inlets to reservoirs or towards the "delivery" sides of deep depressions in the pipe-line, which may be regarded as offering a certain menace to the works in the respect mentioned. The reflux-valve, *Fig. 106*, consists simply of a bulb-shaped pipe, across which there is a strong diaphragm perforated by valve-openings, the collective area of which equals that of the ordinary pipe. These openings are furnished with flap-valves lifting in the direction of normal flow, which automatically close in the event of reversal of the current in the pipe.

Fig. 106.



Scale $\frac{1}{24}$.

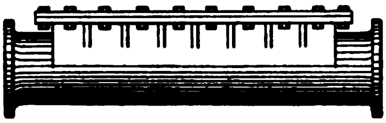
Absolute water-tightness is not essential in these valves, but strength and durability are of the highest importance;

it is therefore desirable to make the flaps and the valve-seats entirely of gun-metal.

356. Man-hole pipes, or hatch-boxes, the access-holes being furnished with covers secured by bolts and nuts, *Fig. 107*, are provided at intervals on all mains; suitable situations for them being on each side of stop-valves and at sharp bends.

The hatch-ways must be of sufficient size to permit the introduction and withdrawal of pipe-scrapers (§ 381) through them. In large mains, the hatch-box illustrated in the figure is replaced by a short cylinder, connected at each end to the main pipe by means of collars that are bolted together and can be readily removed when requisite.

Fig. 107.



Scale $\frac{1}{24}$.

Main valves and manhole-pipes should be set in brick or masonry chambers, covered either with a flag or with a locked iron surface-box.

357. The last accessory to a gravitation-main which we propose to describe here, is the system of "balancing-tanks" and "relieving-reservoirs."

The operation of the former, analogous to that of stand-pipes on pumping-mains (§ 150), is to permit the maintenance of a definite maximum head of water on the section of the main upon its lower, or outlet, side—whilst preventing any increase of that head, by discharging surplus water received into it, through a waste pipe or over a weir, as the case may be. Suppose, for example, that a supply of water is derived from a source situated at an elevation of 500 feet above the place of distribution, and a head of 250 feet is required for the purposes of that distribution, whilst a 250-foot head is absorbed by friction in the supply-main under normal conditions of flow. In order to avoid the expense of unnecessarily heavy pipes, and the contingent disadvantages of the inordinately high pressure to which the distribution-system of pipes would be subject when there was little or no draught of water from them; a "balancing-tank" provided with an overflow would be placed at an elevation of 250 feet. This tank would both act as a service-reservoir if one were needed there, and would, by discharging surplus supply from the source until such time as all the valves were properly regulated, prevent any increase of head beyond the assigned limit of 250 feet on the lower portion of the main and the distribution-pipes.

The "relieving-reservoirs," the effect of which is analogous to that of a reducing-valve (§ 362) in a distribution-system, is applied where the available head on a main is so greatly in excess of that required for the conveyance and distribution of the supply, that it is desirable to cause a rupture of the flow, either by a cataract or by throttling the main at its inlet into the reservoir. The relieving-reservoir is in the latter case, in effect, a balancing-tank with the inlet-valve partly closed. The question may naturally arise, why not design the main above the reservoir of such dimensions as to absorb the surplus head by friction in pipes of smaller diameter, and therefore of less cost?

One reason for this is that the diameter of a main is limited by the (generally small) permissible velocity of flow through it; and, further, circumstances may arise in which the hydraulic gradient must, from the configuration of the ground between the points of supply and delivery of a main, be considerably less than would be ordinarily inferred from the difference in level of those points—and the lower part of the main would not run full, unless the inlet to the reservoir were throttled.

The dimensions and style of construction of such tanks and reservoirs vary with the magnitude of the supply and local conditions. They may be small brick or concrete wells, iron or steel tanks, or walled or embanked reservoirs. The general principles of their design and construction are identical with those applicable to the several classes of reservoir treated under "the storage of water," Chapter IV.

358. In concluding this chapter, we will allude to one or two of the many special works incidental to the construction of aqueducts of considerable magnitude.

Railways are crossed overhead or underneath according to their situation in deep cutting or otherwise. Where a main is carried overhead, and the span does not exceed 30 or 40 feet, cast-iron flanged pipes may be used, forming a girder and an aqueduct combined; but if the span is larger, up to, say, 100 feet for a 42-inch main, a riveted steel or iron tube is to be preferred. In either case, the pipe springs off saddles resting upon brick or masonry piers. A slight upward camber is frequently given to such self-supporting built tubes; but experience shows that it is not necessary to introduce the arch-action into them.

An expansion-joint is provided at one end if the pipe exceeds 50 feet in length; and, unless of very large diameter, it is lapped with felt or other non-conducting material surrounded by wood-lagging, as a protection against frost.

Mains laid under a railway are generally carried through a brick or masonry culvert, of sufficient size to admit of access for inspection and repair; so that fracture of the pipes may not endanger the stability of the line, When the aqueduct consists of a culvert at such a place, it may, nevertheless, be carried under the railway by a pipe within a culvert; by which means certain risks attending settlement or other distortion of brick or masonry watercourses may be avoided, and inspection of the works is facilitated.

A stop-valve should be inserted at each side of the crossing, with a scour-valve between them so that the pipe may be isolated and emptied rapidly if necessary. Crossings of canals and rivulets are similarly dealt with; except that, when these are of insignificant size, the main is frequently laid in a trench excavated in their beds, and is protected by an apron of concrete over them extending a few yards on each side of the pipe-line.

359. An idea of the magnitude and difficulty of the works, sometimes necessary where large rivers are crossed, may be conveyed by an account of the aqueduct-crossing of the river Mersey, in connection with the Vyrnwy water-supply to Liverpool. This aqueduct-tunnel is built of cast iron, as also are the shafts. Its length from centre to centre of the shafts is 800 feet, and the depths of the shafts to the invert-level on the Cheshire and Lancashire shores of the river are 46 feet and 52 feet respectively. The external diameter of the tunnel is 10 feet and that of the shafts is 10 feet 9 inches, widened at the bottom to 15 feet. The fall in the tunnel from the Cheshire to the Lancashire shaft is 6 feet, and a sump is provided at its lower end.

The minimum height of the river-bed above the tunnel is 20 feet.

The shafts are built of flanged cast-iron rings, 4 feet deep, varying in thickness between 1 inch and $1\frac{1}{16}$ inch down to the widened-out part, which is built of smaller segments.

The tunnel is built of rings in segments 18 inches long. In each ring are 10 segments, 3 feet by 1 foot 6 inches and

$1\frac{11}{16}$ inch thick, weighing 4 cwt. each, and a key-segment 1 foot by 1 foot 6 inches, weighing 1 cwt. The shafts were sunk by weighting the cylinders and excavating with a grab in the ordinary way. The strata through which the tunnel was driven consisted of layers of clay, sand and gravel of ever-varying thickness. The driving of the tunnel was effected, under air-pressure of about 20 lbs. per square inch, by means of a shield which surrounded the segmental rings, leaving a space of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch clear all round them. This space was filled with clay as the shield advanced, in order to prevent escape of the compressed air. The shield was provided with a steel cutting-edge armed with teeth. At a distance of 2 feet 6 inches from the cutting-edge, a diaphragm was inserted across the shield, the lower middle portion of which was removed. Behind this lower portion of the diaphragm and attached to it round the edges, was fixed a pocket, open at the top, in which the workmen stood to excavate the material that was traversed by the shield.

The lip of the pocket was 6 inches above the centre of the shield. It thus formed a water-trap, so that, in case the water should come into it, the pressure of the air in the tunnel would prevent it from rising higher than the level of the centre of the shield.

Round the diaphragm and close to the skin of the shield, were fixed 10 hydraulic rams 7 inches in diameter, working up to 2500 lbs. per square inch; which, abutting on the ring of the tunnel last fixed, were employed to force the shield forward a sufficient distance, 18 inches, for the next ring to be built in. The shield was long enough when so pushed forward to lap over the last segment built.

As a rule, the ground under the influence of the air-pressure was dry and the men excavated it standing either in the pocket or, when it was very firm, in front of the diaphragm. In the former case, the pressure was kept on the rams continuously, and, as each spadeful of material was removed, the shield gradually crept forward; in the latter case, the pressure was not put on the rams until 18 inches of material had been excavated in front of the diaphragm; after which the shield was driven forward into the space so prepared. The next ring of segments was then fixed ready for the excavation to be resumed as before. Under favourable circumstances, 5 rings of segments were fixed in a day of 20 hours. The spaces between the flanges of the segments were caulked with Portland cement. Through the tunnel, for the first instalment of the supply, a steel pipe 32 inches in diameter was laid, carried on greenheart beams in the tunnel and supported by trunnions resting upon girders in the shafts. Hydraulic pumps were furnished for the sump at the bottom of the Lancashire shaft, worked by water from the main pipe, to deal with any leakage that might occur in the tunnel and shafts.*

---

* For a fuller account of the tunnelling operations, *vide* British Assoc. Report, 1892, p. 532.

CHAPTER VII.

THE DISTRIBUTION OF WATER.

360. AMONG the numerous requirements for the efficient distribution of water, are primarily :—Due appropriation of the total quantity supplied among the consumers, according to their needs; the maintenance of sufficient pressure at the places where the water is delivered, to meet the objects of its use, whether for trade, power, or domestic purposes; and continuous circulation through the pipes of the entire supply-system.

361. The first step, then, in planning the distribution of water, is to ascertain precisely the quantity likely to be, in the future, required by consumers at every point of the district to be supplied. The anticipated future demand at any point exercises an important influence upon the dimensions of and situations assigned to the pipes laid for present requirements in its vicinity. The rate at which the demand for water appears likely to increase, must determine to what extent it is prudent to anticipate the future, by burying pipes of larger size and greater cost than those absolutely required at the present time; and how far the future may be left to provide for its own needs. (Compare § 321.)

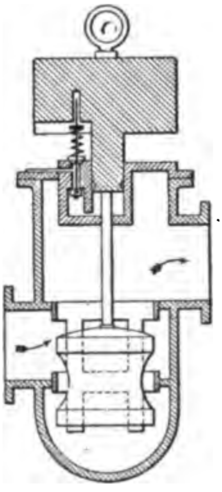
Although it is customary to speak of the average daily supply as a definite quantity of water, which is a highly important figure in respect of the annual provision from the source of supply; it is necessary, in designing a distribution-system, to consider the variation to which the consumption of water is subject, with a view to provide for the maximum demand whenever it may occur. Such variation naturally depends upon local circumstances, such as those of climate, custom and trade. In the first place, the daily demand during the hottest part of the summer differs, in this country, between 15 and 40 per cent. from the average daily supply, and owing to burst pipes in winter it is often still more. And, in the second place, the draught upon the service-pipes may be twice as great during the middle portion of the day as the average over 24 hours. These differences are greater, the less the waste of water from leakage and other preventible causes, and the less the constant trade supply. Further, the fractures of water-pipes and fittings that occur during severe frost, and the exigencies of conflagrations, make it desirable to provide an ample margin of capacity in the service-mains, especially those of manufacturing and of densely-populated districts.

It appears, therefore, that the distribution-system should be planned to be capable of supplying water at a rate equal to about three times that of the average daily supply of the whole year. The subject of the estimation of the individual demand for water is alluded to in § 392, hereafter. In this country it is not infrequently assumed to be about 25 gallons per head per day (average) for manufacturing districts, and somewhat less for other places; but it is well known that a considerable portion of such a supply as this cannot be used to minister to the personal needs of the consumers.

362. Having determined the maximum rate at which the supply is to be delivered at every point in a given district, the second step is to so adjust the sizes of all the distributing-mains, that this delivery may take place without undue loss of head by friction in the pipes, and other disadvantages contingent upon excessive velocity of the flow through them.

Many towns are situated in localities of such configuration that the head of water necessary to supply their most elevated parts would cause an unnecessary and, in some respects, disadvantageous pressure in districts at lower levels. In such cases, the plan usually adopted is to separate the whole area of supply into zones lying at successively lower levels, carrying independent systems of distributing-pipes branching off the main through each of the zones thus laid out. By this arrangement, the pipes in each zone of supply would experience a higher hydrostatic pressure than those of a superior zone, and little benefit would result from the arrangement, were not means taken to reduce the pressure in the service-main at every step from a higher to a lower zone.

Fig. 108.



Scale $\frac{1}{10}$.

The apparatus employed for this purpose is the "reducing-valve," which is introduced upon the main immediately above the system of distributing-pipes which it is intended to relieve from excessive pressure.

Fig. 108 illustrates diagrammatically a form of the apparatus employed on the Liverpool waterworks for mains of moderate size. It consists essentially of an equilibrium-valve opening downwards, through which the water flows at a rate determined by the opening of the valve and the difference of pressure between its inlet and outlet sides. The valve-spindle passes through a small cylinder and is provided with a piston fitting the latter closely, communication being established between it and the outlet side of the equilibrium-valve by a small hole in top of the valve-case which forms the bottom of the cylinder. The spindle is carried still higher and is loaded with a weight W such that

$$W = Ap;$$

where A is the area of the small piston, and p is the pressure per unit area which it is desired to maintain on the outlet-side of the reducing-valve. If this pressure increases above the assigned value, the piston, and with it the spindle and weight, is raised and the main valve is throttled—the pressure consequently tends to regain its normal condition. If, on the other hand, the pressure diminishes, the piston falls and the valve opens—permitting water to pass more freely and with less frictional diminution of the head or pressure on the inlet-side. In order to throw the valve out of action altogether in the event of fire occurring, when reduction of pressure in the service-main might be a serious drawback or, at any rate, might well be dispensed with, a second hole leading from the underside of the small piston is closed by a valve, the spindle of which is struck by the weight of the main valve if the latter descends abnormally.

The position of the spindle of this secondary valve having been adjusted properly, if a fire-hydrant is opened on the outlet side of the main valve the extraordinary depression thus produced in the latter causes the weight to strike and open the secondary valve—putting the underside of the small piston into direct communication with the atmosphere, when the unsupported valve drops and opens to its fullest extent. This device is due to Mr. G. F. Deacon.

Instead of making the main supplying the highest zone of sufficient size to supply the lower zone as well, at the time of maximum draught on the mains, it may be made of a size sufficient to supply the upper zone at the time of maximum draught, and to fill service-reservoirs provided for each of the lower zones, during the remaining part of the day and night. The supply for the lower zones would be drawn from these reservoirs, and reducing valves would generally not be required.

363. The question of the sizes and strength of pipes has been dealt with in Chapter VI.; and it is only necessary here to point out that a considerable margin of strength must be allowed in the case of pipes into which water is delivered directly from pumps—especially those of the Cornish type (§ 162).

In calculating the loss of head in distributing- and service-pipes, the following investigation based upon an assumption of regular and uniform abstraction of the water by consumers throughout the entire length of a given pipe, has been employed by us, and may be found useful: Suppose that in a certain length of clean pipe, L, water is drawn off uniformly throughout that length, through a large number of service-pipes. If Q is the quantity of water which enters the length L per second, and P is the quantity which flows out at the end of that length, then q, the quantity passing any point, distant l from the beginning, in one second, is

$$Q - (Q - P)\frac{l}{L};$$

now

$$\frac{dh}{dl} = \frac{q^2}{1850\, d^5} \qquad (\S\ 72),$$

therefore

$$\int_{h_1}^{h_2} dh = \int_0^L \frac{q^2}{1850\, d^5}\, dl$$

$$= \int_0^L \frac{dl}{1850\, d^5}\left(Q^2 - 2\, Q\,(Q - P)\frac{l}{L} + (Q - P)^2\frac{l^2}{L^2}\right).$$

Hence, the loss of head, h, throughout the entire length of the pipe, is

$$\frac{L}{1850\,d^5}\left(Q^2 - Q\,(Q - P) + \frac{(Q - P)^2}{3}\right)$$

$$= \frac{L}{5550\,d^5}\,(Q^2 + P\,Q + P^2).$$

If no water flows out of the end of the pipe, $P = o$, and the loss of head is

$$\frac{L\,Q^2}{5550\,d^5}.$$

A similar investigation applies to rusted pipes, (iv.) § 72.

364. It is often advantageous to lay the primary mains from the service-reservoir or pumps, as the case may be, in duplicate, by which plan the supply is not interrupted during cleansing or repairs of the pipes. The branch (distributing) pipes are then connected with both mains.

Sometimes a duplicate or "rider" main is laid to convey water from the service-reservoir to a distant point, without the loss of pressure which is inseparable from the use of any but very large service-pipes during the busy hours of the day, or a service-reservoir may be built to supply such distant parts. This would fill when the draught on the pipes is below the average. In extensive districts, duplication of the mains, which might be otherwise desirable, is avoided by the provision of subsidiary service-tanks, situated in elevated positions or upon towers, at suitable points. The main pipes deliver into these tanks, whence the district pipes draw their water according to the demands upon them. The principles that regulate the sizes of service-reservoirs are discussed in § 192. The relative cost will generally determine the particular arrangement to be adopted. Isolated houses situated at high levels, and at the extremities of the distribution-system, have often to rely upon such supply as they can obtain from the service-pipes during the night time, when the draught is generally slight and the pressure consequently high. Where circumstances warrant it, an auxiliary pumping-engine is sometimes erected to raise water to houses so situated from the nearest point to which the service-reservoir delivers it by gravitation in sufficient quantity. By this arrangement the evils of a precarious and intermittent supply of water may be mitigated.

365. The pipes ordinarily used for the distribution of domestic supply in this country, are cast-iron, of either the lead-jointed or the turned-and-bored type (§ 326). The latter possess the advantage of being readily and cheaply laid; but should have interspersed among them at regular intervals, not less than 10 per cent. of pipes with lead joints, to allow for movement of the mains due to temperature and to settlement of the ground. They are, in this country, usually laid at least 2 feet 6 inches below the surface of the ground; and their position is determined according to some definite rule—so that they may be easily found at any time, without the necessity for extensive exploration of the streets or roads under which they pass.

Branch distributing-pipes leading directly off the main, or even secondary pipes when the latter are of large size, are provided with stop-valves at the junctions, in order that when repairs or extensions are necessary, the area from which the water is shut off may be as restricted as possible. In arranging the ramification of service-pipes, it is important, whilst providing means for isolating each of the groups of pipes into which the entire system of distribution is subdivided, to connect one with another in such a manner as to secure free circulation of the water everywhere under normal working-conditions. This is desirable in order to prevent stagnation and consequent deterioration of the water at any point; as well as to provide a copious supply under the highest possible pressure in the event of fires occurring at a considerable distance from any of the main pipes. If it is inconvenient to connect the tail end of the distributing pipes back to the main, the same result can be attained by building a service-reservoir, which is filled when the draught on the pipes slackens, so that during the period of greatest demand the supply comes from both ends of the pipes.

Where the waste-water-meter system (§ 390) is used the sub-divisions of the distribution-system may be arranged to contain 2000 to 3000 consumers. At the place where the distributing-main for such a district branches off the primary main, a stop-valve is furnished on the former pipe, situated a few yards distant from the branch. A by-pass pipe is conveniently laid to connect branches from the distributing-main on either side of this stop-valve; and in the circuit of this by-pass the meter is introduced—stop-valves being often inserted on either side of it so that it may be examined internally, or removed, without interfering with the supply.

When the valve on the distributing-main is closed, the entire supply to the district is caused to pass through the meter. In addition to the stop-valve commanding each such sub-division on the main pipe, it is well to control the supply to every 500 or 1000 consumers by a subordinate valve; so as to be able to still further localise the inconveniences that arise from cessation of supply during repairs and extensions of the water-service.

366. There are three forms of apparatus by which water is ordinarily drawn from the service-pipes for use: Hydrants, street-fountains, and house-service pipes.

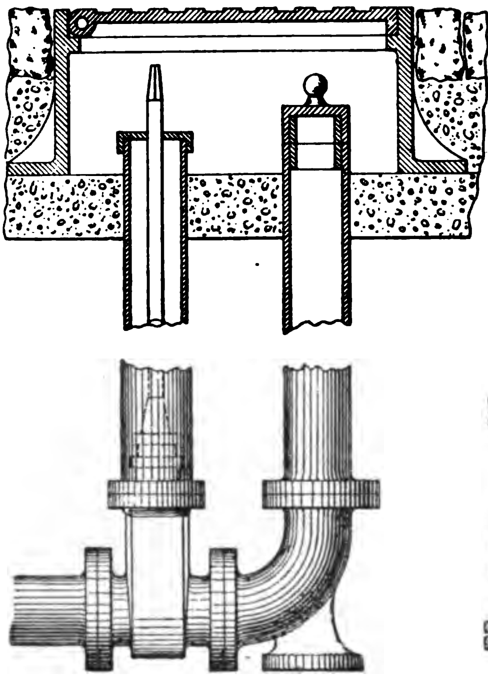
The three principal types of hydrant are (1) stopcock hydrants, (2) screw-down loose-valve hydrants, and (3) ball-hydrants.

(1) The stop-cock hydrant, *Fig 109*, is sufficiently ex-

plained by the diagram. It is a convenient form for use as a scour-hydrant at the dead-end of a service-pipe.

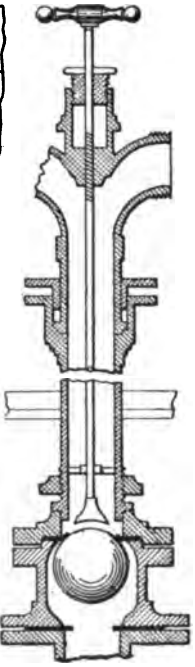
(2) The second type of hydrant generally consists of a valve with a single face which is forced against its seat by the pressure of the water. The valve slides loosely on the nut through which the spindle works so as to allow this.

Fig. 109.



Scale $\frac{1}{12}$.

Fig. 110.



(3) The third class, *Fig. 110*, consists of a vulcanite or indiarubber ball, held up by the pressure of the water in the service-pipe against a leather washer which surrounds an orifice in the top of the pipe. Over this orifice is attached by a bayonet-joint, when it is required to be used, a stand-pipe with connections for fire-hose at its upper end. Down

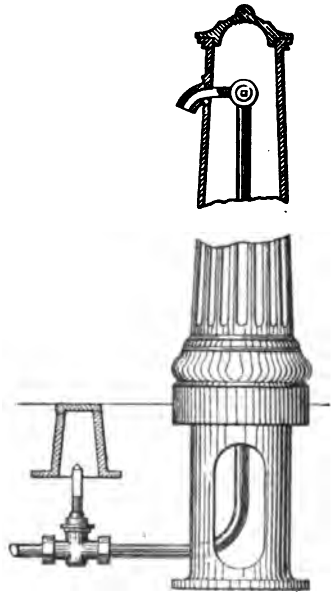
the centre of the stand-pipe passes a rod, screwed through a fixed guide near the bottom, by means of which the ball may be depressed and the water be drawn from the pipe.

This hydrant possesses the advantages of simplicity and cheapness; a drawback to its use is that the balls are liable to be squeezed out of shape, and leakage is apt to occur in consequence.

In all three types, the screwed connections for the fire- or street-watering-hose are protected by caps when not in use.

For filling watering-carts, a high curved pipe termed a "swan-neck" is attached to the hydrant, instead of the ordinary short stand-pipe illustrated in *Fig. 110*; or it may be attached to a special watering-stand-post protected by a cast-iron case. The valves of such stand-posts are best situated below the ground beyond the reach of frost; and a cock should be provided to completely empty the pipe.

Fig. 111.



Scale $\frac{1}{30}$.

For fire-service, hydrants are placed on the mains at intervals between 50 yards and 100 yards apart; but in the neighbourhood of important buildings and docks they may be much closer together, and are often put inside houses on stair-cases or in other convenient and accessible situations.

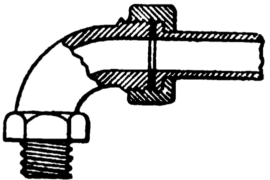
367. Street-fountains for domestic supply, *Fig. 111*, are

provided with self-closing stop-taps. Otherwise they may lead to great waste of water. The closing is effected either by a thick-threaded screw-down valve weighted or forced upon its seat by a spring, or by some similar simple device. Concussion in the pipes leading to the fountain may be prevented by employing a valve with a small orifice ; and, if the pressure is high, adding an air-pipe to that supplying the fountain on the inlet side of the valve, so as to act as an air-vessel in cushioning the ram of the water when the valve is shut.

368. House-service pipes are usually of lead with wiped joints, although wrought-iron pipes are sometimes used for introducing the supply through the outer wall of the house.

The sizes and weights of small lead and iron pipes are given in § 331. They are connected with the service-main by brass ferrules screwed into it, *Fig. 112*. The nozzle of the ferrule is furnished with an ordinary union joint, although sometimes this is discarded in favour of a wiped joint.

Fig. 112.



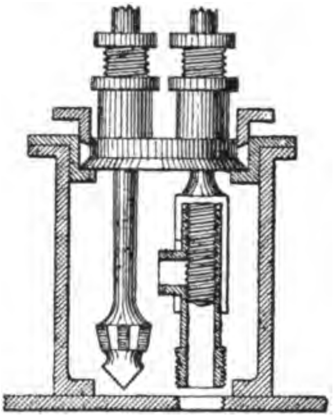
Scale $\frac{1}{2}$.

369. In order to avoid the necessity for cutting off the supply of water in the service-main whilst ferrules are inserted, the operation is frequently conducted under the full pressure of the main.

One machine for this work, *Fig. 113*, consists of a chamber with a horizontal revolving cover, in which are two passages provided with stuffing-boxes equidistant from the centre of revolution. By means of an indiarubber ring, a water-tight joint is made between the lower edge of the chamber and the service-pipe that is being operated upon. A combined drill and tap is introduced through one of the stuffing-boxes in the cover and a ferrule through the other.

A hole is drilled through the barrel of the pipe, and tapped; the cover is then revolved so as to bring the ferrule over the hole thus made, into which it is screwed.

Fig. 113.



Scale $\frac{1}{12}$.

The chamber and the rest of the apparatus can then be removed. The ferrule employed for this purpose, has, in addition to the ordinary right-angled branch, a vertical hole throughout its length, into which, before the ferrule is inserted, a plug is screwed from the top so far down as to close the branch. When the house-connection has been completed, this plug is withdrawn as far as is necessary to permit free passage of the water through the ferrule.

Another method of effecting this operation, due to Mr. Oswald Brown, consists in first drilling and tapping a hole nearly through the service-pipe, and screwing in a ferrule of similar form to that last-described except that the branch instead of the top is plugged. A drill is inserted through a temporary stuffing-box on the ferrule, the hole in the pipe-barrel is completed, the drill is withdrawn nearly to the top, and the side-plug is screwed up. The drill may then be re-placed by a long screw plug, the plug in the branch being taken out and the house-connection completed as in the method previously described. Instead of using the ferrule itself, a chamber fitting on to a saddle is sometimes employed, with a stuffing-box at the top for the insertion of the drill and ferrule, and a valve shutting near the bottom to separate the lower part of the chamber from the upper part after the hole has been drilled, whilst the drill is being changed for the ferrule.

370. When a service-pipe of too great size to admit the employment of a ferrule, or a branch-pipe, has to be connected with a main of such dimensions that it is practicable to cut a large enough hole into it without injury, a saddle-branch, *Fig. 114*, is fixed upon the main.

This consists of a short segment of pipe with a flanged or socketed branch of the required size and shape. The hole is cut in the position required. A flat indiarubber or gutta-percha ring is placed between the saddle and the main pipe, and the former is fixed either by studs through the saddle tapped into the pipe, or by two wrought-iron straps terminating in screws, which pass round the pipe and through holes in flanges formed upon the lower edges of the saddle, *Fig. 114.*

Fig. 114.

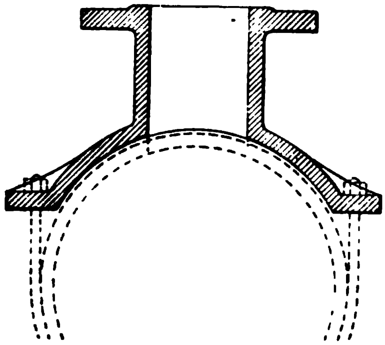
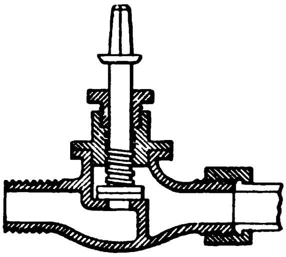


Fig. 115.



Scale $\frac{1}{12}$.

371. At every junction of a house- or trade-service-pipe with the main, a stop-cock, *Fig. 115*, is fixed; and its position with respect to some permanent object such as a painted mark upon a neighbouring wall is carefully measured and recorded. This precaution should be observed, too, in the case of every hydrant and valve in the distribu-

tion system. An indication of the positions occupied is frequently given by a painted figure at each point, and is most useful.

Cast-iron surface-boxes with hinged and locked lids are used to cover, whilst rendering accessible, hydrants, valves and stop-cocks. They are supported quite independently of the apparatus they cover, in order that the latter may not be affected by any superincumbent weight. They are made as small as is consistent with facility for putting the key on a valve or attaching the stand-pipe to a hydrant. Their shape is such as to accommodate the packing of road-metal, of whatever kind may be in use around them.

372. For domestic supply, a pipe $\frac{3}{8}$ inch to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in diameter is sufficient, except for houses of the largest class. The pipe is led into the house and up to a cistern, covered to exclude light and dust and placed in an accessible and cool place protected from frost. A cistern for use under constant supply, by which is meant that the supply is always available, at full pressure, to the consumers, is situated above the level of the hot-water and cold-water taps: the latter and any other cistern-supplies are connected with the feed-pipe to the cistern. In intermittent supply (§ 376 *post*) at least one of the taps should be connected with the feed-pipe on its way up, in order that water may be obtained without passing through the cistern, when it is on. The capacity of the latter must be to a certain extent dependent upon the character of the water-supply; but in no case ought it to be necessary to store more than 24 hours' supply in any dwelling house supplied from a public source.

The cisterns are often made of wood lined with sheet-lead weighing 5 lbs. per square foot; but iron or slate cisterns are far superior. Each one should be provided with a ball-tap not submerged when it has completely shut off the water. The level of the water in the cistern should then be 3 inches below the overflow-level. The overflow-pipe should be brought to a conspicuous place outside the building, to act as a warning pipe; but it must not discharge over any ashpit or near any other source of pollution.

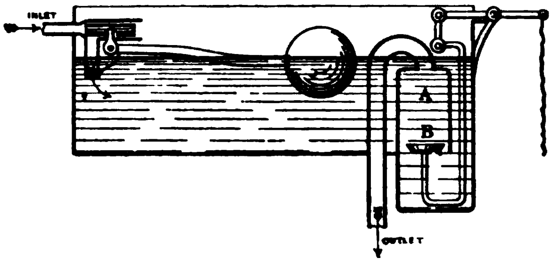
For hot-water supply, a pipe is taken from the bottom of a cold-water cistern, provided sometimes with a check-valve to prevent hot water from rising into the latter.

In intermittent supply, cold-water taps and flush-cisterns may be connected to this pipe. It is introduced into the hot-water cistern at the bottom; this should be a tall vertical cylinder fixed so that its base is at a rather higher level than the boiler. The hot-water pipe is taken out of the top of the hot-water cistern, and supplies all hot-water pipes on its way upwards. Its open end is bent over the top of the auxiliary cold-water cistern, so that it is impossible for a greater pressure to obtain in the hot-water pipes than that due to their height of water, and damage from overflow is prevented. The size of the hot-water cistern depends upon the quantity required at one time. To heat the water in ordinary houses, a small wrought-iron or copper boiler is generally fixed at the back of the kitchen range. A pipe from the top of this boiler enters the hot-water cistern near the top, and a pipe from the bottom of the latter enters the boiler near the bottom. A constant circulation of water is maintained between the two when the boiler is heated.

373. A flushing-cistern for a water-closet, or urinal, should be fixed at least 4 feet 6 inches above the latter with a 1¼-inch down-pipe. The cistern should be capable of giving a flush of 2 gallons in 4 seconds through the down-pipe into the basin. It may be of either the double-valve or the siphon type.

The former consists of two chambers connected together at the bottom by a passage which is closed in one chamber by a weighted valve with an india-rubber or leather washer; in the other chamber the weighted valve closes the outlet to the down-pipe. The water flows into the first chamber through a ball-cock and fills the second chamber, the supply being shut off by the ball-cock when both are full of water. The spindles from the valves are furnished with slots, in which work pins projecting from arms attached to the same axis. These are so arranged that it is impossible for both valves to be either on or off their seats simultaneously. When not in use, the valve in the first chamber is off its seat, whilst that in the second chamber closes the flush-pipe. In action, the valve in the first chamber is depressed so as to cover the opening connecting the two chambers, whilst the valve in the second chamber is simultaneously lifted off the opening to the flush-pipe and that chamber discharges its contents. The reverse action of the valves is then automatically effected by a counter-poise, the water runs from the first into the second chamber, and the ball-cock opens and again fills both of them.

Fig. 116.



Scale $\frac{1}{12}$.

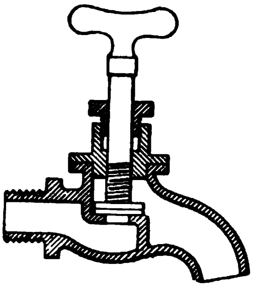
The siphon-cistern, *Fig. 116*, consists of a single chamber, in which the water-level is regulated by a ball-cock. It should be capable of holding 2 to 3 gallons of water. The down-pipe through which the flush is delivered is bent into the cistern below the water-line, and then widens out to form a cylindrical chamber, in diameter about four times that of the pipe. This chamber, at the foot of which is a piston capable of moving upwards, reaches to the bottom of the cistern. When the piston is in its lowest position, water can enter the chamber. When it is lifted, the upper bend of the down-pipe is filled by water from the chamber and the cistern is siphoned empty. Of course, as soon as the water-level begins to fall, the ball-cock that supplies the cistern opens; but the quantity of water which enters the latter during the 4 seconds occupied in emptying it is very small.

A ball-valve generally consists of a nozzle at the end of a supply-pipe, closed by an india-rubber or leather washer mounted in a metallic plug, which slides backwards and forwards in a cylindrical guide projecting from the nozzle. The plug is actuated by a lever from a copper ball-float, which forces the plug against the nozzle as it is borne up by the rising water, and stops the flow at 3 inches below the overflow-level. Ball-valves for household-supply are ¼ inch to ½ inch in diameter, according to the pressure, and are made of hard brass.

374. When the supply is taken from a house-cistern, plug-cocks may be used; but whenever water is drawn direct from the service-pipes, screw-down bib-cocks, made of brass or gun-metal with gun-metal spindles, must be used (*Fig. 117*). The valve is sometimes attached to a small spindle which works loosely in a socket in the screw, so that the water-pressure holds the valve up when the cock is open. When the screw is turned to shut the valve, the leather washer is pressed home, but is not rotated after

reaching its seat. The valves of cocks buried in the ground work loosely on the spindles, but cannot become detached from them; so that when the upper portion of the cock is lifted out for repairs, the valve does not fall away. Instead of leather, rotating metal washers are employed with good results, as in the tap invented by Lord Kelvin.

Fig. 117.



Scale $\frac{1}{4}$.

375. Hitherto, we have tacitly assumed the existence of two main conditions of supply — the maintenance of constant pressure in the service-pipes with unrestricted access by the consumers to the water therein, and free use of the water for all domestic purposes, without the restriction indirectly exercised by a system of payment according to the quantity used.

In some towns in America, the Colonies, and on the Continent, water is supplied to the consumers entirely by measure.

Paris, Vienna and Berlin are examples of cities thus supplied. In the last mentioned the whole supply is delivered through the Siemens' meters (§ 109). In Berlin and Vienna the houses are built in flats, and average 67 persons per house, each supplied by a separate service-pipe and meter. There is an absence of house-cisterns in Berlin, and the city is otherwise peculiarly adapted to receive a meter-supply.

It is to the general advantage of the whole body of water-consumers in any given district, that the service be efficient in every portion of it. Waste of water, and the concussion caused in the pipes by the rapid closing of taps, are not only adverse to the interests of the individuals at fault and to the Water Authority, but affect also in some degree all the consumers of the district in which such mischief occurs. Hence an important duty of a Water Authority is to exercise due supervision over all the apparatus and fittings used in connection with a public domestic water-supply. None should be allowed to be employed except such as are structurally efficient and have been found capable of sustaining proper proof-tests.

With regard to the soundness of the plumbing, and other work, in connection with the water-service, a great deal may be done by the registration of all plumbers who agree to conform to the waterworks regulations, in return for the privilege of having their names advertised on the printed forms of regulations, and in some of the official notifications to householders. Such regulations stipulate that all new fittings shall before use be tested and stamped by an official testing-officer, and that new work, before being covered up, must be examined by an authorised representative of the Water Authority.

376. When no efficient steps are taken to prevent waste from defective fittings and pipes, an "intermittent" system of supply is sometimes adopted—the water being shut off the houses during a large portion of the day. This prevents the loss from leakage during that time, though at the expense of rendering the water unavailable for legitimate use, and in case of fire. Now that methods of detecting and preventing waste are so well understood, this plan of reducing it should never be resorted to. In fact no cause other than unavoidable deficiency in the supply, is a sufficient reason for adopting it.

The intermittent system of supply necessitates the introduction of large cisterns (§ 267) which are seldom kept properly clean; and in the poorer class of houses they cannot often be so placed as to be easily accessible and kept cool, whilst they are often subject to the influences of an impure atmosphere. In the poorest districts, where the water is obtained from fountains, it has to be drawn and left standing for many hours in crowded rooms. These sources of pollution, together with the increased temperature, however unimpeachable the quality of the water in the distributing mains, cause its quality to be in many cases much deteriorated before it is used. When the water is turned off, under such conditions, the pipes partially empty through leaks and fractures at the lower levels; whilst sewer-gases or objectionable liquids are often sucked in at other parts of the system—causing the water, when the pipes are re-charged, to be tainted.

377. It is, in sea-coast towns, often found convenient and economical to provide a low-pressure supplementary supply of sea-water for road-watering, sewer-flushing, bathing and other purposes. If circumstances admit of it, an effective and cheap fire-service may also be thus furnished. In districts situated near to great rivers, the waters of which are deemed to be unwholesome for dietetic use, and so far removed from sources of pure supply as to render the cost of the latter considerable, the question of duplicate supply becomes important. It is well known that the personal consumption of water for culinary and drinking purposes, is a small fraction of the total demand; and it would frequently appear to be an economical course to procure merely the needful supply of the purest water for this service, and to furnish a secondary supply of cheaper water for washing, and some trade and public purposes. Apart, however, from the difficulty and intricacy necessarily involved in such a dual system of water-supply, the question must always arise in such a case—will the classes who are most benefited by an excellent supply of water, use the necessary discretion and care in discriminating between the proper and the improper employment of the two supplies?

Where it is available, the most satisfactory system is, undoubtedly, to supply only water of unexceptionable quality, and to economise by the avoidance of its misuse and waste.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE MAINTENANCE OF WATERWORKS.

378. EVERY scheme of water-supply, whether for industrial purposes or to meet domestic wants, involves, at the moment of its completion, the question—how is the supply procured to be satisfactorily maintained? Although this subject is, as a matter of convenience, treated after that of the construction of the works; it forms, in effect, a vital element of the initial consideration bestowed upon every such undertaking. The capitalised cost of the outlay incurred in maintaining the efficient operation of the system of supply which is to be adopted, and in the necessary repairs to the works, must be duly considered at the outset; and, in a comparison of several rival schemes, the prime cost of construction of the works must be regarded as only one of the factors that are to determine their relative merits. Experience of both the actual construction and the maintenance of waterworks, can alone afford the data necessary to the formation of a sound judgment hereupon, or warrant an engineer in exercising preference in favour of any particular project.

379. No matter how excellently waterworks may have been originally built, the unceasing operations of atmospheric agents, and the wear and tear of machinery, demand continual renovation of the works. The more continuous such repairs are, the slighter is their character, Allusion in detail to the subject of renewals and repairs

could scarcely amount to more than a recapitulation of the methods of construction already described, and an essay upon numerous items of mechanical arts that are outside the scope of this treatise.

All appliances such as sluices, valves, hydrants, air-cocks, street-fountains, meters, &c., must be subject to constant inspection by qualified mechanics, and any derangement in them repaired as soon as discovered; otherwise the mechanism, exposed to the unfavourable conditions that obtain in ordinary waterworks practice, will not long continue to perform the duties assigned to it. All valves should be occasionally worked through a portion of their stroke, in order to prevent them from sticking fast.

The care and attention demanded by pumping-machinery of all kinds does not need enforcement here.

Exposed metal-work must be scraped and painted regularly. It is of importance that a sufficient stock of both ordinary and special pipes and of other apparatus be kept at convenient places along the line of a supply-main as well as in the districts supplied; in order that there may be as little loss of time as possible in effecting repairs when breakages occur. On all long lines of aqueduct, it is usual to provide for the daily inspection of the pipe-line by "walks-men," whose business it is to perambulate the several sections of the route assigned to them, to attend to the valves, and to give immediate notice to the engineer of failure in or accident to the portion of the works under their charge. Fractured pipes when found are cut out (§ 330), or their joints, if of lead, are melted out by fire—a method that is, however, not easily applicable to large mains. New pipes, when inserted, are linked in with the old work by collar-joints (§ 341)

The periodical cleansing of reservoirs, tanks and cisterns and the frequent flushing of pipes by scour-valves and hydrants, are operations that need no special commendation to those who appreciate the highest possible standard of purity in water-supply.

380. There is one cleansing-process applied to water-mains which calls for special notice. The corrosion of iron pipes and the measures taken to prevent, or rather to delay the commencement of, this action, have been already alluded to (§ 328). Such corrosion arises from the action of water upon the metal; and, as might be expected, is found to proceed more rapidly in pipes in which there is a continuous and rapid flow than in those wherein the water is comparatively stagnant. In pipes that are not protected by a proper preservative coating, corrosion begins at once to affect the entire surface, and attacks the metal vigorously ; but in well-protected pipes, the action may be long deferred—the most minute bare places, however, affording situations for the development of nodules of rust, which, if numerous, gradually burst off the intermediate coating and coalesce. The rust thus formed consists principally of ferric oxide associated with considerable amounts of organic and of siliceous matter—the ferric oxide being produced by the formation of ferrous carbonate and its subsequent solution in carbonic acid. Hence it is, that soft water which naturally carries much free carbonic acid derived from the atmosphere, is peculiarly destructive to pipes and other apparatus made of iron.

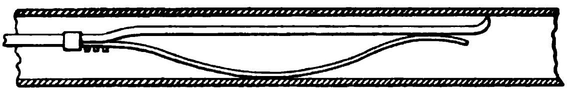
This internal corrosion is always a source of some trouble, and if not anticipated at the outset and properly provided against, leads to "furring" of the pipes, with the concomitant inconveniences of reduced supply of water and diminished pressure in the mains, and sometimes to the expense of early renewing this portion of the works.

381. Rust may be detached from the metal by the application of heat; but, in practice, the course generally

adopted for the cleansing of corroded mains is one of the following:—

(1) The pipe is severed at intervals, and the rust is cut out of it by a tool of the shape shown in *Fig. 118.*

Fig. 118.



Scale $\frac{1}{20}$.

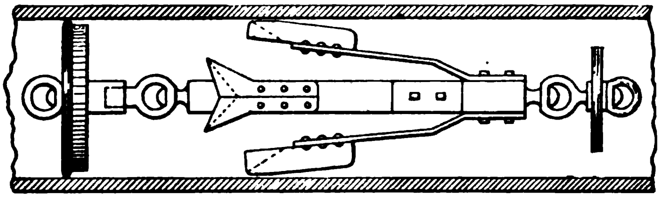
This consists of a steel bar 3 feet or 4 feet in length with a cutting point at the turned-up end, which is forced against the pipe-barrel by a spring riveted to it at one end and bearing against the opposite side of the barrel. The handle is formed of sections of tube of convenient length, screwed or otherwise strongly coupled together.

This cutter is worked forwards and backwards by hand, being gradually turned so as to traverse the whole internal surface of the pipe. A flush of water is employed to wash the detached rust and scale down to the end of the length of pipe operated upon; and it is then raised out of the pipe-trench by a chain- or a bucket-pump (§ 156). The cleansing of bends by this method presents much difficulty; and it is only applicable to small pipes.

(2) By another process, the detachment of the rust is effected automatically by a tool driven along the main by water-pressure. A common form of the apparatus employed for the purpose is illustrated in *Fig. 119.* It consists of four or more barbed steel cutters, carried by stiff springs which are bolted to an iron bar about 3 feet or 4 feet in length. One end of the bar is attached by a universal joint to a piston or disk of diameter somewhat less than that of the pipe to be operated upon. The other end is attached to a ring. The piston is faced with a

leather or india-rubber washer to make a joint with the pipe-barrel. Rings for the attachment of cords or chains, to assist or control the motion of the machine, as is frequently found necessary in dealing with foul pipes of less diameter than 9 inches, or to effect its withdrawal, are provided at each end.

Fig. 119.



Scale $\frac{1}{20}$.

When used, it is introduced into any given section of the pipe through a man-hole or hatch-way, and the cover is bolted on. The stop-valve at the distant end of the section in question is shut, the main is charged, and one of the lower intermediate scour-valves is opened. The pressure upon the piston of the machine moves it along, the cutters scaling off the rust, which is washed down the pipe and discharged through the scour-valve. The rate of motion is governed by the manipulation of the latter. It is generally advisable to pass the tool twice through each section of the main which is treated. Other useful forms of this apparatus are often employed, in some of which a helical motion of the cutters is obtained with a view to accomplish the cleansing as uniformly as possible and by a single operation. Sharp bends naturally introduce difficulties in the application of this process, and attempts to pass round them are liable to result in jamming the tool fast, and the consequent trouble of cutting it out of the main.

An interesting account of some work with these machines, by Mr. H. P. Boulnois, M. Inst. C.E., may be referred to.*

If the main is large enough for men to work inside, scraping by hand labour is often most effectual. It must, however, be borne in mind that although its incrustation diminishes the discharge of the pipe, by reducing its size and increasing the frictional resistance, it acts as a preservative, and its removal shortens the life of the pipe by exposing a fresh surface to the action of the water.

If water containing in solution acids derived from vegetable matter, and containing iron in solution, is admitted into channels or pipes a ferruginous slime is found to deposit on the inner surfaces. This may be prevented either by neutralising the acidity of the water by an alkali or by removing the organic matter from the water by one of the methods previously described. When present, these slimy deposits can be removed by the revolving whalebone brush invented by Mr. G. F. Deacon, M. Inst. C.E.†

382. So far, we have alluded only to the comparatively simple operations of repairing and maintaining in good condition the apparatus comprised in a waterworks system. But, in the management of every such undertaking, by far the most difficult task that falls to the lot of the engineer is that of detecting existing imperfections in works either hidden underground or otherwise not easily accessible to inspection, and of preventing their continuance. The history of many waterworks undertakings may be summarised thus: Ample provision for the needs of the consumers at the outset, without limitation of the quantity used by any individual; gradually increased consumption due to the more lavish use of water, the growth of population and the expansion of trade, and the development of

---

* Report on Cleansing the Rising-mains of Exeter—Exeter, 1882.

† Proceedings Institution Mechanical Engineers, 1899, p. 502.

unseen leakage from the mains and service-pipes ; restriction, by the Authority, of the hours of supply—at first exercised as a means of husbanding its resources, but subsequently used as the only alternative to immediate famine ; inconvenience to trade, and injury to the health of the consumers ; finally, rigorous suppression of the waste and misuse of water, and the inception of new works to augment the supply to meet the necessities of the case.

383. When the consumption of water outgrows the available supply, there can be little question as to the propriety and prudence, as there certainly is no doubt about the effectiveness, of economising water by simply reducing the number of hours during which it is supplied. This plan, however, involves in the first place the somewhat illogical course of treating alike the legitimate use misuse and leakage of water; and whilst suppressing somewhat the evidence of the evil, it does nothing to remedy it. Beyond this, it has an objectionable result that has been already alluded to (§ 376), but is so important as to warrant some reiteration.

384. During the hours when the water is cut off, the distributing-mains may be emptied by the consumers and by leakage ; and the partial vacuum thus caused in them cannot fail to suck in through fractures and imperfect joints a daily charge of subsoil impurities, which, at any rate, have little chance of entering the most leaky water-pipe if it is under constant high pressure.

Moreover, it must be borne in mind that the poorer classes of consumers have seldom proper utensils available for storing water drawn from the mains during the hours of intermittent supply, to be used for their domestic needs during the remainder of the 24 hours ; and all classes suffer in various degrees from the use of water stored in dwelling-houses at high temperatures. The hardships and insanitary conditions which result from intermittent domestic water-service have been so often pointed out, that we will not labour to re-prove them here; but will premise that constant service is only to be departed from when circumstances compel the adoption of such a course.

385. In order, then, to control the proper use of water and to prevent leakage from pipes, taps and cisterns, the engineer must adopt and pursue some definite method of enquiry, to ascertain where waste of water exists. And, having localised such waste, he must, if it occurs upon private premises, be provided with special powers for dealing with the matter in a somewhat more expeditious manner than he would by ordinary law be warranted in.

Parliamentary powers are almost invariably bestowed upon Waterworks Authorities, to authorise them to take proper measures for the prevention and the suppression of misuse and waste of water, and penalties may generally be exacted from persons who offend in this respect. By far the simplest and most expeditious process employed by Water Authorities for enforcing the observance of their regulations upon recalcitrant consumers, is, however, to cut off the supply of water from such persons; and the legality of this course is generally recognised.*

386. As a matter of public policy, it is, nevertheless, a questionable proceeding. The persons whose neglect or lawlessness leads to open rupture of their relations with the Water Authority are generally precisely those whose indifference to the use of water, as well as to all other sanitary observances, constitutes a standing menace to the health of the community in which they reside. It is surely undesirable to restrict the ability of such persons to use water for legitimate purposes, as a consequence of the means taken to prevent them from using it improperly.

---

* Waterworks Clauses Consolidation Acts, 1847 and 1863.

387. Defective house-fittings and carelessness on the part of the consumers are by no means the only causes of waste of water. Sometimes considerable leaks, generally indicated by local reduction of pressure, occur in the service-pipes. If the latter are laid in gravel, the water may readily escape through it unnoticed, and find its way into some of the deeper sewers. If the pipes are laid in clay, any escape of water generally rises directly to the surface, that being the line of least resistance; but, in the case of pipes under streets, covered by strong impervious pavement, this increased resistance is apt to cause the water to find a passage into the basements of adjacent buildings or into the sewers. In order to ascertain the position of such leaks, holes may be bored in the ground with an auger, and the relative levels at which the water stands in the holes noted. The hole in which the water rises highest is nearest to the leak. By boring more holes in the direction indicated, the position of the leak may be approximately determined.

388. The most direct method of ascertaining the existence of domestic waste of water is to inspect frequently the consumers' pipes and fittings. This proceeding is, however, not only very costly and highly objectionable to the majority of householders, but its efficiency depends upon the zeal, honesty and other personal qualifications of the inspector. Beyond this, however, it affords little or no indication of the waste resulting from underground or other hidden leaks in the distributing-mains and service-pipes.

389. A better plan, which early commended itself to those who paid attention to this subject, is to ascertain by an integrating water-meter, the total quantities of water consumed in some prescribed period by several divisions of a district under supply. Thence, by comparison of the figures with respect to the population of the several divisions, the location of centres of waste may be inferred.

By such a method applied at Glasgow in 1872, imperfections of pipes and fittings were disclosed, the repair of which, when effected, reduced the consumption of water in three experimental districts, from 60 gallons, 45 gallons, and 77 gallons per head per day, to 38 gallons, 20 gallons, and 50 gallons per head per day, respectively.*

390. The further development of this plan, and the invention of a meter that furnishes a continuous record of the rate at which water passes through it, have resulted in a most elegant system of detecting waste, which has not failed, when properly applied, to conduce to the efficient and economical maintenance of waterworks in every part of the world.

The originator of what is known as the waste-water-meter system is Mr. G. F. Deacon, who first introduced it at Liverpool in 1873–75. The meter has been already described (§ 111), and we are now only concerned with its application for the detection of waste.

It is assumed that the reticulation of the mains and service-pipes belonging to a given waterworks, and the disposition of the stop-valves, are in general accordance with the outline of a good distribution system, as sketched in § 365. Any desired district then may be so far isolated from all others around it, by suitably manipulating the valves that command it, that the supply of water to its service-pipes is derived entirely from one main. The supply is caused at that place to pass through a waste-water meter fixed on a by-pass pipe in the manner explained in § 365.

If, under these circumstances, the meter-diagrams indicate, during some portion of the night or the small hours of the morning, that a considerable steady consumption of water appears to be taking place in a district where there is no apparent reason for it at such a time—suspicion is at once aroused. It may be reasonably conjectured that such apparent consumption of water in, for example, an ordinary residential district, must be largely due to leakage from distributing- or service-pipes or to waste from fittings such as taps and cisterns.

---

* Minutes of Proceedings Inst. C.E., vol. lxvi. p. 344.

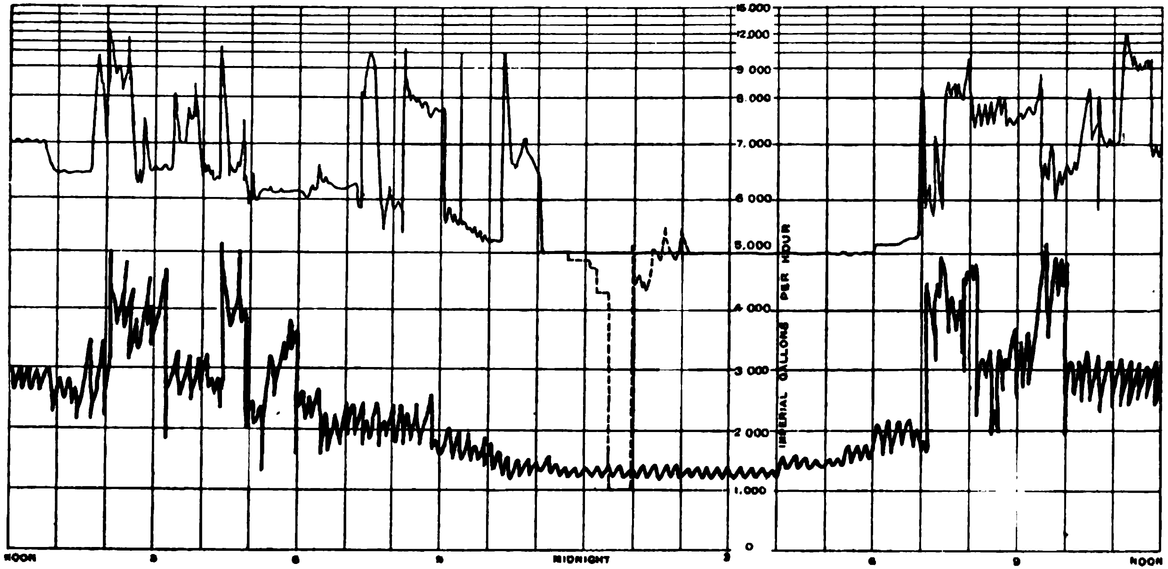
The diagram illustrating such a condition of things is of the type shown by the fine line in *Fig. 120*,* which indicates the consumption (at the rate of 54 gallons per head per day) of water during 24 hours in a small Midland town of 2800 inhabitants on a first application of the method of waste-detection described. The waste-inspectors are thereupon instructed to examine the district for waste. The examination takes place at night. The inspectors first sound in turn the outside stop-cocks of all the premises supplied through the meter, using the valve-keys as stethoscopes. Every stop-cock through which water is heard to pass, is shut down and marked, and the time is noted. If, after closing the stop-cocks, the sound continues to be heard, it may be inferred that leakage is taking place in the distributing-mains, and the ground is carefully sounded along the line of these pipes until a place is found where the noise attains a maximum. An exploration of the pipes at that place on the following day will probably disclose the existence of a leak arising from a fractured pipe or ferrule. The main stop-valve commanding the entire district is next closed for a few minutes only, the zero line of the diagram being thereby verified and the condition of the distributing-mains between the house-service stop-cocks and the meter being shown. Finally, all the previously-closed stop-cocks are re-opened, to restore the service throughout the district.

On the following day, the chief waste-inspector examines by comparison with the indications of the meter-diagram before him, the extent and accuracy of the work that has been done, as recorded in the night inspectors'

---

* Furnished by the courtesy of Mr. William Hope, of Liverpool.

Fig. 120.



DEACON WASTE-WATER-METER. DIAGRAM, ONE-FOURTH SIZE, ILLUSTRATING WASTE OF WATER, APPLICATION OF THE TEST, AND REDUCED CONSUMPTION AFTER REPAIRS TO DISTRIBUTING-PIPES.

report-books. Thence he is able to ascertain the locality of the several leaks that may have been found to exist, and to form an idea of their extent. Instructions are then issued for the visitation of those premises only upon which waste has been proved, and for the necessary repairs to be made to pipes and fittings. By such means "the work of many days' inefficient house-to-house inspection is efficiently performed in one."* For purposes of comparison, a normal meter-diagram from the same district as that to which the fine line, *Fig. 120*, refers, taken some time after the application of the system and consequent repairs, is superposed upon the diagram, and is shown by the heavy line in the same *Fig.*

This latter line may serve the further instructive purpose of showing the normal diurnal variation in the rate of consumption of water in such districts as that referred to. The supply in this case works out to 18 gallons per head per day.

391. Among methods of reducing waste otherwise than by limiting the hours of water-supply, that of regulating the pressure in each district by means of the reducing-valve (§ 362) may be noticed. This is, of course, far inferior to the plan described in the foregoing section; because it merely mitigates the action of the evil, without attacking its origin.

392. The subject of the use and misuse of water, apart from that of waste arising from defective pipes, cisterns and taps, is intimately connected with the climatic conditions and geological formation of any given locality, and with the habits of the residents. Hence, on this account, analogies between the requirements of widely separated districts are frequently imperfect, and each one must be studied on its peculiar merits. The demands of trade and

---

* Journal of the Society of Arts, 19th May, 1882.

of shipping are variable but highly important factors in fixing the proper amount of water-supply; whilst, owing to the difficulty of assessing with accuracy the population of a given district at any stated time, and to the want of uniformity in the method adopted to measure the water supplied by the various waterworks, such statistics as are available can only be regarded as approximately correct, and cannot be made a basis for exact calculation.

393. Whilst, however, discountenancing hasty generalisation from mere statistical data, as to the requisite amount of water to be provided in any given case; we think it may be instructive to present here a summary of the particulars of the water-supply of a few towns in Great Britain—presenting a considerable range in point of size and industrial and commercial character.

STATEMENT OF WATER-SUPPLY OF CERTAIN TOWNS IN GREAT BRITAIN.*

Town.	Estimated Population supplied.	Supply in Imperial gallons per head per day.	Nature of the Source of Supply.
London	5,953,530	35	Rivers, springs and wells.
Manchester	1,100,000	29	Catchment.
Glasgow	1,000,000	54	"
Liverpool	818,660	31	Catchment and wells.
Birmingham	742,460	24	Catchment, rivers and wells.
Bradford	436,260	26	Catchment.
Edinburgh and Leith	435,500	40	"
Nottingham	272,780	20	Wells.
Brighton	165,000	35	"
St. Helen's	85,000	41	"
Bath	68,500	22	Springs.
Exeter	60,000	30	River.
Torquay	51,000	33	Springs.
Chester	50,000	36	River.
Scarborough	40,000	31	Springs and wells.
Leamington	28,000	20	Wells.

---

* Report of Roy. Commission (1900–1901) on the Water-supply of the Metropolis, Appendices, p. 56 and pp. 84–86. Address of James Mansergh, President, Min. Proc. Inst. C.E., vol. cxliii. p. 81. Waterworks Directory and Statistics, 1903—London, 1903.

394. For the sake of contrasting with the foregoing supplies, those of other waterworks systems differing considerably from them, we append similar information with regard to a few principal towns in the United States, and some towns of less size situated in the State of Massachusetts. The latter are selected because they are well authenticated, show a considerable range in size, and belong to a State that has exhibited a notable solicitude for sanitary progress.

STATEMENT OF WATER-SUPPLY OF CERTAIN TOWNS IN THE UNITED STATES.*

Town.	Estimated Population supplied.	Supply in Imperial gallons per head per day.†	Nature of the Source of Supply.
New York	2,050,600	107	Rivers.
Chicago	1,800,000	139	Lake.
Philadelphia	1,230,000	187	Rivers.
Boston	920,600	100	Lake.
St. Louis	451,770	101	River.
Washington	281,900	148	"
Worcester, Mass.	126,280	54	Catchment.
Fall River "	111,130	32	Lake.
Lowell "	99,210	48	River.
Cambridge "	95,980	70	Lake and river.
Lynn "	76,300	51	Catchment.
Lawrence "	66,720	43	River.
Salem "	36,550	70	Lake and river.
Gloucester "	25,280	34	River and pond.

395. A question that affects in an important degree the

---

* 'Address of James Mansergh, President,' Min. Proc. Inst. C.E., vol. cxliii. p. 81. 'Report of the State Board of Health, Massachusetts, for 1903' —Boston, 1903, pp. 169, 170. 'Report on the Purification of the Washington Water Supply'—Washington, 1901, p. 156.

† It must be borne in mind that the U.S. gallon, which is the unit employed in American statistics, is equivalent to 0 83 Imperial gallon.

maintenance and management of waterworks, is that of the sale of the water to the consumers.

For irrigation, power and other industrial purposes, it appears to be generally conceded that a sale of water by measure is the most just and convenient way of gathering the revenue from the consumers. But in the case of domestic supply in this country, it is otherwise.

Even where waterworks are not in the hands of companies seeking to make profits upon money invested in the undertakings, it is considered indispensable that the revenue derived from the consumers for their use of the water should meet the daily working-expenses, the interest upon the capital outlay, and the requirements of a depreciation or redemption fund.

Apart from questions as to the absolute propriety of various kinds of assessment—which not unnaturally accord with the views of individuals, in proportion to the relief they appear capable of affording to individual rating—there is the debatable point, whether the revenue should be derived by a method of taxation at all, or should be obtained from a sale of the water by measure. The legislature of this country has shown itself consistently opposed to the latter method, in so far as it affects the domestic consumption of water.

On the one hand, it is probably impossible to contrive any system of taxation whatever, no matter how ingenious it be, the incidence of which shall affect all consumers with perfect equity. On the other hand, the difficulties inseparable from attempts to measure domestic water-supplies with extreme accuracy have not been entirely overcome. Further, if the approximation to the truth given by some water-meters were deemed satisfactory, the cost of introducing such a system into towns in this country would be often prohibitive.

396. Assuming the staff-charges in a town supplied by water-meters to be no heavier than those in a rated town of equal size—a supposition that probably errs in favour of the former system—consider the cost of the introduction and maintenance of the apparatus employed: A reliable water-meter suitable for an ordinary house can hardly be procured and fixed for less than 3*l.*; and the cost of keeping it in good order, or the charge for depreciation, may be taken at 4*s.* per annum—which, capitalised at 4 per cent. per annum is 5*l.* In order, therefore, to apply the system of supply by measure, the capital expenditure on any given waterworks would have to be burdened with a charge of 8*l.* per house, in respect of the mere collection of the revenue.

Beyond this, there is a strong feeling in this country in favour of encouraging the unstinted use of pure water by all classes of the community; and that practice would probably suffer a considerable check, if water for domestic use were sold by measure.

397. Like that of many other undertakings, the successful management of waterworks depends largely upon the personal qualifications of the administrative officers. But, although good administration of laws that are not perfect, may result satisfactorily; there can be no doubt that the intelligent application of a well-devised code may, in such special and artificial circumstances as we are now concerned with, result more favourably still. One of the last duties of the executive engineer is generally to frame regulations for the future maintenance of the works he has constructed.

This may, therefore, be deemed an appropriate place to introduce an outline of the general provisions of waterworks regulations that have been tested by prolonged practice and are found to answer well:

(1) Every house or tenement supplied shall be provided with a separate service-pipe laid at a depth not less than 2½ feet below the surface of the ground.

(2) Each service-pipe shall be, unless otherwise especially agreed upon, made of lead (of the weights stated, in an appendix to the regulations, to be appropriate to its size and the pressure that it will be subject to). It shall be attached to the service-main in the street by a brass ferrule screwed into the iron pipe and fixed by the Water Authority. The service-pipe shall be furnished with a stopcock set in a cast-iron box situated outside the premises supplied.

(3) The joints of the lead service-pipe shall be of the kind known as "wiped" joints.

(4) A cistern of a capacity of not less than 25 gallons must be provided for every domestic supply. Such cisterns should be of iron or slate, although wood lined with sheet-lead weighing not less than 5 lbs. per square foot is sometimes permitted.

(5) Each cistern shall be provided with a ball-tap that has been duly tested and proved water-tight under a pressure of 300 lbs. per square inch; with an overflow discharging through the wall of the house in such a position as to be easily observed without; and with a ground-brass valve at the bottom, discharging in a similar conspicuous position.

(6) Boilers, water-closets and urinals shall be in every case supplied from separate cisterns. Cisterns attached to water-closets and urinals shall be capable of discharging 2 gallons of water in each complete flushing-operation in 4 seconds.

Experience has shown that a most fruitful source of the misuse of water lies in defective flushing-apparatus.

It is essential that flushing-tanks or -cisterns be constructed of the dimensions appropriate to the objects they are to serve; and that they be so arranged as to ensure the rapid discharge of their entire contents without further draught upon the source that supplies them, until that operation has been completed. Flushing-apparatus of this kind is described in § 373.

(7) Every bath shall be furnished with a water-tight ground outlet-plug, firmly attached to it by a chain.

(8) Every street-fountain or stand-post shall be provided with self-closing apparatus incapable of being shut suddenly.

(9) All taps shall be of the screw-down type, incapable of being closed suddenly.

(10) Air-vessels of approved dimensions shall be provided in connection with any water-engines that may be actuated by the direct pressure from the mains.

(11) In cases where a supply is given by meter, the measuring-apparatus shall be provided and fixed by the Water Authority.

(12) All pipes, taps and other fittings used in connection with a supply of water to any premises shall be similar to samples to be submitted to, tested and approved by, the Water Authority, whose stamp shall be thereupon impressed upon such articles.

398. The foregoing regulations are not to be regarded as either complete in themselves, or as in any sense exhaustive of the numerous conditions which must, in practice be imposed upon systems of water-supply. They are intended to be merely suggestive of the main lines to be followed in drawing up such a code of rules ; with special reference to a few important practical details, attention to which is absolutely essential to the maintenance of an

efficient domestic water-service. General rules are strictly applicable to circumstances between which a close analogy is found to subsist. The complete statement of the best conditions of supply in any given case, can only be arrived at after due consideration of all the features peculiar to it.

APPENDIX.

PLATE I.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. James Mansergh, F.R.S., *Past-President Inst. C.E.*)

As introductory to the series of illustrations, a perspective view of the Abbeystead Dam and Overflow is presented in Plate I. This work is situated 7 miles south-east of Lancaster, and possesses no little interest as being the first stone dam of considerable size built in Great Britain. It was constructed for the purpose of supplying compensation water to the River Wyre, in connection with the Lancaster water-supply. Before this dam was built, the reservoir contained 76½ million gallons, retained by a series of walls of concrete, rubble, puddle and dry filling. In 1876 Mr. James Mansergh was called upon to increase the capacity to 185 million gallons. It was considered imprudent to raise the old walls for this purpose; and it was decided to erect a new dam on the down-stream side of the old structure, and to build the overflow and by-wash shown on the right, and the fish-pass on the left of the illustration. The inner face of the new wall was curved to a radius of 80 feet, the ends abutting against the solid rock of the sides of the valley. The reservoir so formed has a maximum depth of 34 feet, the greatest height of the dam being 64 feet above the foundations. The dam was built of concrete in 6-inch layers, consolidated by beating; the down-stream face being of coursed rubble, carried up with the concrete and set in cement.

The original 3-feet discharge pipes were retained, valve-towers being carried up over the old valves inside the reservoir, and approached by light wrought-iron bridges. The gauge-house, containing the apparatus for measuring the water delivered into the gauge-pond, appears on the lower side of the dam.

PLATE II.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. HENRY DAVEY, *M. Inst. C.E.*)

The Davey Engine illustrated in Plate II. was erected at the Walthamstow Pumping-Station, East London Waterworks, and affords a good example of a modern economical triple-expansion waterworks engine. The engine pumps from a well 200 feet deep, and delivers at the surface, whence the water is conveyed to a reservoir; and at its normal speed of a little over 12 strokes per minute, is capable of pumping 4 million gallons per twenty-four hours.

The cylinders are arranged tandem fashion, the high-pressure cylinder being 28 inches, the intermediate cylinder 40 inches, and the low-pressure cylinder 57 inches in diameter; the stroke is 5 feet; all the steam cylinders are steam-jacketed, and are provided with drain and indicator-cocks. The piston rods are of mild steel—that connecting the high-pressure and intermediate pistons being 6¼ inches in diameter; and that between the intermediate and low-pressure pistons and crosshead, 5 inches in diameter. The engine actuates a pair of bucket-pumps, each 26 inches in diameter and of 5 feet stroke, through two rocking-disks, which are bolted together and carried on girders spanning the well. To these disks are attached the engine and the pump connecting-rods respectively.

The advantage of making the engine and pump connection in this manner is, that by its means the steam-piston obtains a mechanical advantage over the pump-piston during the latter part of the stroke. Whilst the engine is making its stroke, the pump-piston or bucket is varying in velocity relatively to that of the engine-piston; the ratio of this variation being determined by the relative positions of the point of attachment on the disks of the engine- and the pump-pins respectively. This mechanism is the peculiar feature in, and is now well known to form an integral part of, the Davey engine, securing a special element of economy in its working.

The steam-valves are of the slide type, each cylinder having an expansion-valve working on the back of the main valve. By this means the cut-off may be varied, the valves being adjustable by hand whilst the engine is in motion. The main slide-valves are actuated from the subsidiary cylinder of the differential gear (shown to an enlarged scale on the Plate), through the levers and rods indicated. The expansion or cut-off valves are worked from the rocking-disks. Cushioning valves are provided on the high-pressure cylinder for determining the stroke, and for compressing the steam in the clearance spaces during the latter part of the stroke, and are actuated by the engine; they close towards the end of the stroke. (See page 160.)

The engine is surface-condensing, the condenser being placed in a sump by the side of the engine-bed. It is provided with 263 gunmetal tubes of 19 B.W.G., which are expanded into brass tube-plates.

The whole of the water pumped is delivered through the sump in which the condenser stands, the total cooling surface provided in the tubes being 412 square feet. The air-pump is worked from an arm keyed on the disk-shaft and is provided with indiarubber foot- and delivery-valves working on gunmetal removable grids.

PLATE III.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Messrs. JAMES SIMPSON & Co., Limited.)

In Plate III. is presented a recent example of a Worthington Engine and Pump, erected at the Windsor Castle Waterworks by Messrs. James Simpson & Co., Limited. The engine is capable of pumping 700,000 gallons per twenty-four hours against a head of 300 feet, working at the rate of 45 strokes per minute.

The cylinders are arranged vertically, tandem fashion, the high-pressure cylinder being 8 inches, the intermediate cylinder 11 inches, and the low-pressure cylinder 19 inches in diameter and the common stroke is 15 inches.

The cylinders are steam-jacketed, the condensed water from the jackets draining into the small cylinder shown at a lower level than the steam-cylinders.

The pump plungers are 8 inches in diameter, the stroke being the same as that of the engine.

The working of the Worthington Engine and Pump is fully described on pages 162 to 164; but the engine illustrated, being of small size, has no power-equalising cylinders.

The engine is surface-condensing, all the water pumped passing round the condenser. The air-pump is worked from a lever actuated by the piston rods.

PLATE IV.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. JAMES MANSERGH, F.R.S.,
Past-President Inst. C.E.)

Plate IV. shows the Embankments and Outlet Works of the Hury and Blackton Reservoirs, designed and carried out by Mr. James Mansergh, for the Stockton and

Middlesbrough Water Board. These works illustrate some of the most recent practice in this class of construction; and it is noticeable that in both cases the puddle wall is used only in the embankment, a concrete tongue being carried down below it to the underlying impervious bed.

The two reservoirs impound the water from a watershed of 10,100 acres, about four-fifths of which drains directly into the Blackton Reservoir, the water passing thence into the Hury Reservoir, the top-water level of which is 65 feet below that of the former.

The embankment of the Hury Reservoir is 1100 feet long. It retains 900 million gallons of water, with a maximum depth of 90 feet and an area of 150 acres.

The central puddle-wall rests on a concrete shoe, below which a concrete tongue is carried down to the impervious strata underlying the site, at a maximum depth of 70 feet at the middle of the embankment. The outlet culvert is of brickwork within massive concrete. It passes underneath the embankment, and is constructed through the solid ground below the base of the latter. The valve-tower is situated over the outlet culvert about midway of the inner slope of the embankment, a stop being inserted in the culvert immediately in front of the tower.

The Blackton Embankment is about 725 feet long, and retains when full 460 million gallons of water; the depth at the embankment being 61 feet, and the water area 75 acres.

The outlet is tunnelled through the solid ground at the north end of the embankment; and, as shown in the drawing, receives the overflow from a circular waste-weir as well as the water from the draw-off pipes. The overflow-basin and waste-pit form a somewhat unique feature in the design of this work. A considerable length of the outlet tunnel, part of which was used as a by-wash during the construction of the embankment, is lined with cast-iron segmental plates, the remainder being of concrete and brickwork. The valve-tower is situated 40 yards from the inlet of the culvert. The flaps on the ends of the draw-off pipes are worked by rods passing down the tower side of the flap-well, arranged similarly to those in the Hury Valve-Tower (Plate V.). The vertical sides of the flap-well are supported by brickwork struts, shown in section in the drawing. The embankment contains a central puddle-wall, resting on a concrete shoe which is founded upon the impervious shale that underlies the reservoir—except towards the northern end of the embankment, where a tongue of concrete 6 feet wide is carried down to the shale, which there lies at some distance below the surface.

PLATE V.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. Mansergh.)

Plate V. illustrates the Valve-Tower of the Hury Reservoir referred to above. It will be seen that the five draw-off pipes are provided with flaps on their outer ends, and are commanded by valves inside the tower. The rods by means of which the flaps are actuated, as well as the valve-rods, are carried up into a chamber at the top of the tower, where the gear by which they are manipulated is placed. The position and arrangement of the screens will be understood from the drawing. The tower is built of brick faced with stone in the upper part, and massive concrete below. The stop is of concrete keyed into the brick lining of the culvert. Near the base of the tower, a slip-joint is provided between it and the culvert. The entire structure exhibits the strength and solidity requisite in works where a head of water so great as 90 feet has to be encountered.

PLATE VI.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. MANSERGH.)

As an example of Waste-Weir and By-Wash, part of that of the Hury Reservoir is illustrated in Plate VI. The waste-weir and upper part of the by-wash is spoon-shaped, the end protruding into the reservoir. The weir is formed of heavy masonry resting on a concrete curtain wall. The by-wash, which is 810 feet long, is built of stone ribs or curbs enclosing blocks of concrete 15 feet square. The average slope is 1 in 5·2. Near the upper end it is spanned by a bridge, shown in the drawing, which carries over it the road that runs along the top of the embankment.

The Fish-Pass, also illustrated in this Plate, is 860 feet long, the normal rise from step to step of the ladder being 15 inches. It is connected with the reservoir at a little distance from the waste-weir, but runs contiguous to the by-wash, as shown in the cross-section, for the greater part of its course.

PLATE VII.

(*Reproduced from an original drawing.*)

Plate VII. exhibits a section of the Chartrain Dam designed by M. Nicou, Ingénieur en chef des Ponts et Chaussées, of which it has been authoritatively stated, "It may be considered as actually representing the final word, with regard to the researches made in France, on the subject of the construction of works of this kind." *

It is situated on the River Tâche, an effluent of the River Renaison, which falls into the River Loire at Roanne, and the reservoir formed by it supplies the town of Roanne with water, containing when full 880 million gallons.

---

* Fifth International Congress on Inland Navigation, Report on "Reservoirs in the South of France," by H. Marius Bouvier, p. 19.

The dam was begun in 1888, and was finished in 1892; it is built to a radius of 1300 feet, and is 720 feet long at the top. The foundation is on granite, and the dam is built of the same material, undressed, and with mortar made with Ardèche lime.

The inner face is rendered with cement mortar about 1 inch in thickness for 125 feet from the bottom, above which level it is simply jointed with cement mortar. A roadway, 13 feet wide, the down-stream half of which is carried on arches of 20 feet span, runs along the top. The specific gravity of the masonry is 2·4, the maximum pressure is 9·1 tons on the square foot, and the resultant pressure in the cases of the reservoir being either empty or full falls within the middle third. It may be noticed that the profiles of this dam approximate closely to those calculated on pages 230 to 236, the slightly reduced width in the latter being due to the limiting pressure assumed being 10 tons instead of 9·1 tons per square foot.

PLATE VIII.

(*Reproduced by permission of* MR. M. W. HERVEY, *M. Inst. C.E.*)

Plate VIII. gives a plan and sections of the Willesden Service Reservoir, built by Mr. M. W. Hervey for the West Middlesex Waterworks Company. The walls are of brickwork backed with concrete, and the floor is of concrete. The reservoir is covered. Transverse arches of 16 feet span springing from piers, carry the horizontal skewbacks for the roof arches, which are 18 feet in span. It is 200 feet by 130 feet in plan, by 16 feet in depth to the top-water level. The roof arches are 1 foot 3 inches thick, and are covered by an equal thickness of soil.

PLATE IX.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. J. T. Wood, *M. Inst. C.E.*, and Mr. J. A. Brodie, *M. Inst. C.E.*)

Plate IX. presents a good example of a small Pumping-Plant and Water-Tower. The population supplied numbers 8000, and the district is scattered. The wells are 6 feet in diameter, rendered watertight down to the red sandstone rock, 14 feet beneath the surface; below this level there are two boreholes, 10 inches in diameter, 250 feet and 150 feet deep respectively, which have not required lining.

Two pumps of the bucket and plunger type are fixed in the well, the suction-pipes being taken down into the boreholes 98 feet below the ground level. The pumps are worked by two 7 nominal-horse-power Crossley gas-engines, and are each capable of raising 6000 gallons per hour to the higher tank on the water-tower, which is 440 yards distant. The larger tank, for the supply of the greater portion of the district, is 33 feet square and 13 feet deep, its top water-level being 57 feet above the ground level; and the smaller tank, 15 feet square and of the same depth, for the supply of the higher portions of the district, has its top water-level 40 feet higher. In case of fire, the water from the higher tank can be turned into the low-pressure mains. The pumps are capable of delivering into either tank; the upper tank can overflow either into the lower one, or, if a valve on the overflow pipe near the ground level be opened, directly into a drain, into which the lower tank also overflows. The engines are stopped automatically when the tanks are full. The water-tower is faced with red sandstone, and the interior is of brick. The tanks are of cast-iron plates ranging from ⅝ inch to ⅞ inch thickness, with flanges ranging from ¾ inch to one inch; the plates are stiffened by diagonal ribs ¾ inch thick. The opposite sides of the tanks are braced together by 1⅛-inch tie-rods.

The flanged joints are planed, and have a space left on the inside for caulking with iron-rust cement. The drawings show how the tanks are carried on the tower, as well as the arrangement of the rising-main, the supply- and overflow-pipes.

PLATE X.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. M. W. Hervey, *M. Inst. C.E.*)

Plate X. illustrates one of the Filter Beds of the West Middlesex Waterworks, at Barnes. It is an acre in area, and is 8 feet 9 inches in depth. The walls are of concrete faced with brickwork, being battered on the inner face and vertical at the back. The floor consists of 18 inches of concrete, which is carried underneath the collecting-drain, 2 feet 3 inches square, traversing the middle of the filter. The inlet bell-mouth pipe, controlled by a valve, delivers the unfiltered water into a basin, continued half-way across the filter, in the form of a watertight channel, semicircular in section, over the collecting-drain.

The filtering material consists of 5 inches of large stones, 5 inches of medium stones, 5 inches of small stones, 12 inches of coarse sand, and 1 foot 6 inches of fine sand; and there is normally 3 feet 6 inches of water over the latter, and 1 foot 6 inches of free-board above the water.

The filtered water collects in the stone, and passes into the collecting-drain through apertures left in its sides. A cast-iron pipe, controlled by a valve, conveys the filtered water from the collecting-drain into a well, whence it is led to the filtered-water pipe. The filtration is performed at a rate varying between 2 inches and 5 inches vertically per hour, i.e. between 1·1 and 2·75 million gallons per twenty-four hours for each filter.

PLATES XI., XII. AND XIII.

(*Reproduced by permission of* Mr. D. M. F. GASKIN, *M. Inst. C.E.*)

A very compact plant for softening water by a lime process (Atkins-Clark system) is illustrated in these Plates. It was designed and executed by Mr. Gaskin, for the St. Helens Waterworks, and was brought into use in April 1893. The general arrangement of the works is clearly shown by Plates XI. and XII.

The plant illustrated is designed to treat from 2½ to 3 million gallons per twenty-four hours. The three different waters treated register an average of 20 degrees of total hardness (Clark's scale). Part of the water treated contains iron, and this treatment removes from the water all the free carbonic acid and the substances held in solution by it; and in the result reduces the total hardness to between 8 and 10 degrees, as well as removing the iron. The process is as follows:—

The lime is received in the lime store-house, and is thrown into the mill, where it is thoroughly slaked. The lime flows from this apparatus as a milky fluid into the cream-of-lime tank, situated in the lime-cylinder house, where the process of agitation is continued. From this tank it is pumped, at the rate of 40 gallons per minute, into the three large lime-cylinders. Above these cylinders are placed small cisterns supplied with softened water, and by means of these a gentle agitation is kept up in the cylinders. The clear solution of lime is afterwards decanted from the top of the cylinders by open-ended pipes, and carried into the "mixer," where it comes in contact with the hard water supplied from the wells. Here it flows over and under baffle-plates to the distributing trough, where it is thoroughly mixed, and falls then into the softened-water reservoir, which contains about one hour's supply to the whole town. This reservoir is so constructed as to ensure the continuance of the motion of the water, to effect thorough diffusion of the lime and liberation of the carbonic acid. At the side of the reservoir is a weir, over which the water falls into a trough that supplies the filter-presses. Sixteen large filters secure the complete purification of the water; after which it flows into the large distributing-reservoir, which contains about 2 million gallons of water —half-a-day's supply to the town. Between each filter is a series of pipes for supplying high-pressure water for cleansing the cloths of the filters. The waste water used for this and for other purposes is discharged into the sewers.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to Sections only.

- ABSORPTION, loss by, 18, 56
- Aëration, effect of, on water, 23
    - of cement, 257
    - removal of iron from water by, 304
- Air-pipes in filter-basins, 280
- Air-pump, loss of heat by, 178
- Air-valve, description of, 350
    - function of, 350
- Air-vessel, function of, 145
    - size of, 146–148
- Albuminoid ammonia in water, 7
- *Algæ*, 7
- Alum, action as a precipitant, 269, 306
- Ammonia in water, 7
- Anchors for inclined mains, 348
- Anderson's revolving purifier, 300
- Aneroid barometer, correction of, for temperature, 32
    - variation of the, 32
- Ansted, D. T., experiments on absorption of water by chalk, 131
- Aqueduct, ancient type of, 310
    - capacity of, greatest, 312
    - conditions of flow in, 313
    - constant velocity in, 314
    - design of, 316, 317, 318
    - fall of, 318
    - flow of water in, 312
    - head lost at entrance of, 318
    - modern types of, 311
    - Roquefavour, 334
    - sections of, 316
    - sluices and waste-weirs for, 319
- Arched dams (*see* Dam)
- Archimedean-screw pump, 155
- Artesian well, 25
- Atmosphere, saturation of, 37
    - homogeneous, 32
- Atmospheric moisture, 37
- BACTERIA, 23, 302, 303
- Balancing-tank, 357
- Barometer (*see* Aneroid)
- Bateman, J. F. L., separating-shoot, 121
- Beam-engine, Cornish, 162
    - rotative, 165
    - serviceable features of, 166
- Bend-pipe, thrust in, 346
- Bernoulli's theorem, 65
- Bib-cocks, 374
- Bidone, hydraulic experiments, 75
- Binnie, A. R., experiments on impact in pipes, 347
    - Upper Barden Reservoir, 206
- Bischof's spongy iron, 299
- Blackwell, hydraulic experiments, 75
- Boileau, hydraulic experiments, 75
- Bore-hole, Bootle, 137
    - Bushey, 137
    - Lackenby, 137
    - lining of, 138
    - Northampton, 136
    - Schladebach, 143
    - Wheeling, 140
    - yield of, 128
- Boring, choice of site for, 128
    - Continental practice, 135
    - method of, at Otterbourne, 134
        - at Windsor, 134
    - situation of, 26
    - untrustworthy results of, 199
- Boring-apparatus, percussive, 134
- Boulnois, H. P., pipe-scrapers, 381
- Bourne, 20
- Brown, O., tapping mains, 369
- Bucket-and-plunger pump, 142
- Bucket-pump, 142
- Bucket-wheel, 156
- Bull pumping-engine, 163
- By-pass pipe, 365
- By-wash, 207

CANAL-CROSSINGS of aqueducts, 358
Carbon, organic, in water, 7
  filter, 296
Cast-iron, tests applied to, 328
Castel, hydraulic experiments, 75
Catch-water drains, 120
Catchment-area, balance of yield and supply, 190
Caulking-set, 339
Chalk, water-supply from, 131
Channel (*see* Aqueduct)
Circulation of water in distributing-pipes, 365
Cisterns, flushing-, 373, 397
  house-, 372
  house-, capacity of, 192
Clarification (*see* Settlement)
  of water at Frankfort, 275
  of water at Yokohama, 275
Clark's softening process, 306
Clay, constitution of, 196
Clear-water-tank, 283
Clepsydra, shape of, 80
Collar-joints, use of, 341
Compensation of streams, 34
  Longendale, 34
  Rivington, 34
  Thirlmere, 34
  Vyrnwy, 34
Compensation - water, measurement of, 87
Compound engines, types of, 164
Concrete, manufacture of, 257
  strength of, 258
Concussion in mains, 347
Condensation in steam-jackets, 178
Condensers for pumping engines, 171
Conduit, design of, 316, 317, 318
  sections, 316
Constant and intermittent supply, 376, 383-386
Consumption of water, daily, 361
Cornish pumping-engine, 162
Corrosion of iron pipes, 380
Crenic acid, removed by iron, 298
Crenothrix, developed in presence of iron, 269
Cunningham, A., hydraulic experiments, 95, 99
Current-meters, 90, 91, 92
  Deacon current-meter, 91, 93
  Harlacher current-meter, 92
  Moore current-meter, 90
  reduction of observations by, 94
  Revy current-meter, 90
  Woltmann current-meter, 90
Curves, laying pipes round, 345
Cut-off valve, automatic, for reservoirs, 355

DAM, Abbeystead, 252
  advantages of, over earthen embankment, 259
  Almanza dam, stress in, 258
  arched, advantages of, 249
    examples of, 246
    formula for breadth of, 247
    investigation of, 247
    stress in, 248
  Bear valley, 246
  composite, 250
  condition of economy in a, 225
  conditions of strength and stability, 224
  construction of, 256, 257
  elastic yielding of, 245
  examples of "gravity," 251, 252, 253, 254
  form aimed at, 221
  foundations of, 221
  Furens, stress in, 251
  Gileppe, section of, 251
  graphical investigation of, 244
  "high" formula for breadth of, 234
    definition of, 231
    general investigation of, 233
    section of, 242
    special features of, 232
  investigation, of, necessity for, 223
  limiting height of "low," 229
  "low," section of, 241
  masonry or concrete, 221, 257
  materials of construction, 194
  Molesworth's formula for, 255
  Periyar dam, 254
  profiles of, corrected, 237, 238
  settlement of, 256
  Stony Creek, 251
  strain in, 256
  stresses in, 245
  Sweetwater, 246
  Tansa, 251
  tensile and compressive stresses in, 223
Dam, top-breadth of, 236
  Tytam, 253
  Vyrnwy, 251
  wind-pressure against, 239, 240
  Zola, 246
Darcy, formula for flow in pipes, 72
Davey pumping-engine, 169

Deacon water-meter, 111, 390
Decanting-pipe, 307
Dew, deposition of, 37
Dew-point, 37
Diamond-drill, 136
Discharge of catchment-areas, 58
Distillation of sea-water, 270
Distortion of iron pipes, 349
Distributing-mains, duplication of, 364
Distribution of water, conditions of, 360
    variation of, 192
Divining-rod, 15
Drains, catch-water, 120
Draw-off pipe for reservoir, 209
Du Buat, hydraulic experiments, 75
Dublin, storage of water at, 188
Duncan water-meter, 102

EDINBURGH, hardness of water at, 28
    storage of water at, 188
Efficiency of steam-engines, 173
Embankment, earthen, 196, 204
    construction of, 202
    height of, 206
    impervious cores of, 196, 203
    position for, favourable, 193
    preparation of foundations, 197
    protection of slopes, 205
    slopes of, 204
    top breadth of, 204
    Upper Barden, 206
Euler, hydrodynamic theory of, 64
Evaporation, estimation of, 57
    loss by, 18, 56
    observations on, 57
Eytelwein, hydraulic experiments, 75

FEED-WATER, measurement of, 176
Ferrule, 368
Fetch of waves, 237
Filling-in pipe-trench, 344
Filter, household, 301
Filter-basin, air-pipes in, 280
    covered, advantage of, 294
    dimensions of drains, 285, 286
    economical size of, 285, 290
    floor of, 280
    form of, 279
    inlet, 280
    outlet, 282
    overflow, 280
    walls of, 279
Filter-basin, Yokohama, 282
Filter-bed, charging the, 291
    cleansing the, 291, 292
    formation of, 280
Filter-drains, arrangement of, 286
    dimensions of, 285, 286
    forms of, 288
    loss of head in, 287
Filter-gallery, 24
    situation of, 277
Filter-press, 307
    reserve area of, 293
    sand, 280
Filtering-head, regulation of, 282
Filtration, advisability of, 278
    economy in works of, 278
    effects of, 302
    mechanical, 298
    natural, 277
    rate of, 289
    uniformity of, 284, 285, 286, 287
    upward, 295
Fish-pass, 220
Flange-joints, 326
Flange-pipes, joints of, 343
Floats, measurement of velocity by, 95
Flood-discharge, 46
    Liverpool waterworks, 45
    Manchester waterworks, 45
Flow of water, Chezy formula for, 66
    Darcy and Bazin's coefficients, 67
        experiments, 67
    discharge by orifice, 80
        from tanks, 80
        rectangular notch, 75
        rectangular notch with low head, 76
        V-notch, 78
    effect of temperature on, 82
    float-measurements, 95
    formula for drowned notch, 77
        submerged orifice, 81
        velocity of approach, 77
    fundamental expression for delivery, 66
    Ganguillet and Kutter's coefficients, 68
    in channels—
        Chezy formula, 66
        Darcy and Bazin's coefficients, 67
        Ganguillet and Kutter's coefficients, 68

Flow of water, in pipes—
  Darcy's formula, 72
  Lampe's formula, 71
  Poiseuille's experiments, 70
  Reynolds' formula, 70
 maximum and mean velocity of stream, 98, 99
 mean velocity in a vertical, 99
 measurement by pump-displacement, 88
 measurement of flow in streams, 91
 Perrodil hydrodynameter, 97
 Pitot tube, 96
 steady, 64
 unsteady, 64
Fluidity of solids, 1
Flume on Platte canal, 319
Flushing-cisterns, 373, 397
Fore-bay of outlet-culvert, 210
Foundations of impounding works, 193
 preliminary trials of, 198
Fountain, street-, 367
Frager water-meter, 106
Francis, formula for rectangular notch, 75
 hydraulic experiments, 75
Frost water-meter, 104
Fteley and Stearns, hydraulic experiments, 75
Fungi, 7

GANGUILLET and Kutter's coefficients of flow of water, 68
Gauge, float-, 79
 hook-, 83
 rectangular-notch, 74
 V-notch, 78
Glasgow, hardness of water at, 28
Grel valve for pulsometer, 158
Gypsey-race, 20

HARDNESS of water, Clark's scale, 305
 permanent, 306
 temporary, 306
Harlacher current-meter, 92
Hatch-box, 356
Head on filters, 282
Heat rejected by steam-engine, 176
Hirn, G. A., method of engine-testing, 173
Horizontal engine, 168
Hot-water supply, 372
House-cisterns, construction of, 267
 size of, 267
House-filter, 301
Humidity, absolute, 38
 determination of, 39
 diurnal variation of, 40
 relative, 38
Hydrants, 366
Hydraulic inclination or gradient, 18
 mean depth, 66
 ram, 159
 surface, 18
Hydraulic-power, generation of, 325
 pipes for transmission of, 324
 -pressure-pumps, 160
Hydrodynamics, Bernoulli's theorem, 65
 theories of Euler and Lagrange, 64
Hydrology, laws of, 61
 relation of, to yield of water, 60

IMMERSION-PLATE, in settling-pond, 275
Impounding-reservoir, basis of design, 187
 computation of storage, 190
 contouring site of, 195
 formula for storage, 188
 foundations of, 193
 maximum capacity of, 191
 sites for, 193
 storage-capacity of, 189
India, high rainfall in, 43
Indicator-diagrams, cords and springs, 175
Inlet of filter-basin, 280
Intake-works, 118
Intermittent water-supply, evils of, 384, 386
 origin of, 383
 v. constant supply, 376, 383–386
Iron, action of, in purification, 298, 300
 as an impurity in water, 21
 effects of, on water, 302
 removal of, from water, 269, 304
Irrigation, ancient modules for, 84
 artesian wells for, in California, 122
 Milanese module, 85
 Ribera module, 86

JOINT, COLLAR-, 329, 341
  flange-, 326
  flexible, 345
  lead, 338
  quality of lead used in, 338
  quantity of lead used in, 340
  turned-and-bored, 342
Joint-holes, 336

KENNEDY water-meter, 103
Kent water-meter, 108
Koch's microbe culture, 303
Königsberg, water-purification at, 269

LAGRANGE, hydrodynamic theory of, 64
Lampe, C. J. H., formula for flow in pipes, 71
Lawes, J., experiments on evaporation, 57
Lead joints of cast-iron pipes, 326
Leslie, J., experiments on evaporation, 57
  experiments on flow in pipes, 72
Lindley, W. H., settling-ponds at Frankfort, 275
Liverpool, average daily supply of, 393
  hardness of water at, 28
  storage of water at, 188
London, average daily supply of, 393
  hardness of water in, 28
Longendale, compensation at, 34

MAINTENANCE of waterworks, 379
  regulations for, 397
Mair-Rumley, J. G., independent engine-tests, 172
  hydraulic experiments, 82
Manchester, average daily supply to, 392
  hardness of water at, 28
  storage of water at, 188
Manhole-pipe, 356
Mansergh, J., Abbeystead dam, 252
  Lancaster water-supply from springs, 123
Mather and Platt's boring-gear, 137
Mersey, crossing of Vyrnwy aqueduct, 358
Meter (*see also* Current-meter, Water-meter)
  payment for water by, in Berlin and Vienna, 375
Meter, waste-water, Deacon's system, 390
Meter-system, cost of, 396
Microbe culture, Koch's method, 303
Molesworth, Sir G. L., empirical formula for dams, 255

NITROGEN, organic, in water, 7
Noria, 156
Notch-gauge, drowned, formula for, 77
  rectangular, 74
  V, 78
  velocity of approach, 77

OOLITIC rocks, water-supply from, 131
Orifice-gauge, automatic registration of head for, 81
  coefficients for, 80
  formula for free, 80
  formula for submerged, 81
Outlet filter-basin, 282
  size of, 207
  thickness of, 207
  tunnelled, 207
Outlet-culvert, construction of, 200
Outlet-pipe, 214
Outlet-siphon, 215

PARKINSON water-meter, 107
Percolation, 17
  loss by, 18
  observations on, 57
Perrodil hydrodynameter, 97
Persian wheel, 156
Pipe-aqueduct, advantages of, 320
Pipe-bend, thrust in, 346
Pipe-laying, 336, 337
  round curves, 345
Pipe-trench, filling-in, 344
Pipes, cast-iron, fractures in, 320
   joints of, 326
   manufacture of, 327
   preservative coating for, 328
   testing metal of, 328
  classification of, 323
  cutting, 330
  diameter of, 322
  distortion of, by pressure, 349
  economical size of main, 321
  flange-, joints of, 343
  flexible joints for, 345
  flow in (*see* Flow)

- Pipes, formulæ for thickness of, 323
  - fouling of iron, 380
  - impact in, 347
  - inclination of, 322
  - inspection of, 330
  - lead joints of, 332
  - on inclines, anchors for, 348
  - proving, under pressure, 328
  - scraping, 381
  - service-, weights of, 331
  - single or multiple main, 321
  - steel, preservative coating for, 329
  - stoneware, 333
    - joints of, 333
  - strength of, 323
  - transport of heavy, 335
  - turned-and-bored, 342
  - water-ram in, 347
  - wooden stave, 330
  - wrought-iron or steel, 329
- Pitching embankment slopes, 205
- Pitot tube, 96
- Plunger-pump, 142
- Poiseuille, experiments on flow in pipes, 70
- Poncelet and Lebros, hydraulic experiments, 75
- Pont-Cysylltau aqueduct, 319
- Pressure of earth, 211, 212
  - of water, 228
  - of wind, 239, 240
  - in bend-pipes, 346
  - in distributing-pipes, zones of, 362
  - tapping mains under, 369
- Puddle, preparation of, 201
- Puddle-plate, 214
- Puddle-trench, excavation of, 200
- Puddle-wall, construction of, 201
- Pulsometer pump, 158
- Pump, 141, 142
  - Archimedean-screw, 155
  - centrifugal, efficiency of, 153
    - vortex chamber, 154
  - chain-, 156
  - delivery of, 145
  - hydraulic ram, 159
  - hydraulic-pressure, 160
  - Persian wheel, 156
  - pulsometer, 158
- Pump, reciprocating-, efficiency of, 151
  - scoop-wheel, 156
  - spiral wheel, 157
  - tympanum-wheel, 156
- Pump-valves, 143
  - design of, 144
- Pumping-engines, duty of, 180
  - efficiency of, 173, 180
  - effort of, 161
  - heat supplied to, 179
  - testing, 172–179
  - types of, 161
  - work done by, 179
- Purification, by distillation, 270
  - by filtration (*see* Filter)
  - by iron, 299, 300
  - by settlement, 272, 274, 275
  - by straining, 273
  - definition of, 268
  - maintenance of purity, 309
  - processes of, 271

- QUEENSLAND, high rainfall in, 43

- RADIATION from cylinders, 178
- Railway-crossings of aqueducts, 358
- Rain-gauge, Beckley recording-, 51
  - construction of, 49
  - disposition of, 48
  - Stutter differentiating, 51
- Rain-water, collection of, 115
- Rainfall affected by elevation, 52
  - affected by wind, 44
  - available, 55
  - estimation of, 48
  - extremes of, 43
  - factors of, 43
  - Great Britain, 45
  - Greenwich, 54
  - India, 43
  - maximum British, 47
  - mean, 46
  - monthly
    - Greenwich, 54
    - Pennine chain, 54
    - Pentland Hills, 54
    - Snowdon range, 54
  - Queensland, 43
  - ratios, 53
  - Seathwaite, 43
- Ram, hydraulic, 159
- Rate of filtration, 289
- Rates, payment for water by, 395
- Rawlinson, R., Tytam dam, 253
- Reducing-valve, 362
- Reflux-valve, 355
- Regnault hygrometer, 39
  - vapour-tension, table of, 39
- Relief-valve, equilibrium, 354
- Relieving-reservoir, 357
- Reservoir (*see* Impounding-reservoir, Service-reservoir)

Reservoir, catch-pits for, 258
  protection of banks of, 260
Retaining-wall, surcharged, 212
  earth-pressure against, 211
Reynolds, O., formula for flow in pipes, 70
River, origin of, or stream, 18, 22
  self-purification of, 23
  Thames, discharge of, 59
  Lee, gaugings of, 58
River-crossings of aqueducts, 358
River-water, quality of, 22
Rivington, compensation at, 34
Rocks, porous, 25
Rod-floats, 95

SADDLE, PIPE-, 370
Salmon-ladder, 220
Sand-washer, position of, 290
Sand-washing apparatus, 297
Schönheyder water-meter, 105
Scoop-wheel, 156
Scour-pipe of reservoir, 201
Scour-valve, 351
Scraping pipes, apparatus for, 381
Sea-water, distillation of, 270
Seathwaite, high rainfall at, 43
Separating-shoot, 121
Service-pipes, 372
  defective, 387
  ferrules, for, 368
  loss of head in, 363
Service-reservoir, advantage of covering, 261
  asphalt in, 263
  capacity of, 192
  construction of, 263
  cut-off valve for, 262
  materials of construction for, 194
  purpose of, 185
  reflux-valve for, 262
  type of, 262
Settlement, continuous-flow system, 275
  intermittent, 274
  time occupied in, 275
Settling-ponds, design of, 276
  Frankfort, 275
Sewer, section of, 315
Siemens water-meter, 109
Siphon-outlet of reservoir, 215
Slip-joint, 208
Sludge-valve, position of, 276
Smith, A., coating for cast-iron pipes, 328
Smith, H., hydraulic experiments, 75
Snifting-valve for air-vessel, 149
Sodium chloride in water, 7
Softening-processes, effects of, 308
  water, 304
Solids, fluidity of, 1
  hypothesis of stress in, 222
  theorem as to stress in, 233
Spencer's carbide, 299
Sporton water-meter, 110
Spring-water, quality of, 21
Springs, formation of, 20
  yield of, 21
Stand-pipe, 150
  United States practice, 150
Statics of dams, importance of, 223
Steam-engines, efficiency of, 173
Steam-jackets, condensation in, 178
Stoneware pipes, 333
Stop-cocks, 371
Stop-valve, automatic, 353
  screw-down, 352
Storage, conditions of, 184
  number of days' supply required, 62
  of water in house-cisterns, 267
Storage-reservoir (*see* Impounding-reservoir)
Strainers, construction of, 273
  Dublin, 273
  Glasgow, 273
  Liverpool, 273
Streams, compensation of, 34
  origin of, 18, 19
Stress in arched dams, 248
Sunderland, hardness of water at, 28
Surface of saturation, 17
Surface-box, 370
Surface-water, 18
Swallow-hole, 20

TAIL-BAY of outlet-culvert, 210
Tank, compression-ring of spherical, 265
  floor-joint, of iron, 264
  iron or steel, 264
  Lynn, spherical, at, 265
  Norton, spherical, at, 265
  spherical-bottom, 265
  United States practice, 266
Tapping mains under pressure, 369
Temperature of well-water, 140
Testing pumping-engines, 172–179
Thirlmere, advantageous site of, 193
  compensation at, 34
Thomson, J., formula for V-notch, 78
Top-breadth of dam, how determined, 236
  notions affecting, 252

Trias, water-supply from, 132
Tube-well, 139
Turned-and-bored joints of cast-iron, pipes, 326
  pipes, 342
Tylor bascule water-meter, 107
  inferential water-meter, 110
Tympanum-wheel, 156

UNION joint, 332
Unwin, W. C., hydraulic experiments, 82
Up-lift of dams, prevention of, 225

VALVE, AIR-, 350
  cut-off, for reservoirs, 355
  pump-, 143, 144
  reducing-, 362
  reflux-, 555
  relief-, 351
  scour-, 351
  stop-, automatic, 353
    screw-down, 352
Valve-tower, 213
Venturi water-meter, 112
Vertical direct-acting engine, 167
Vyrnwy, advantageous site of lake, 193
  aqueduct, River Mersey crossed by, 358
  compensation at, 34
  dam, strength of concrete in, 258

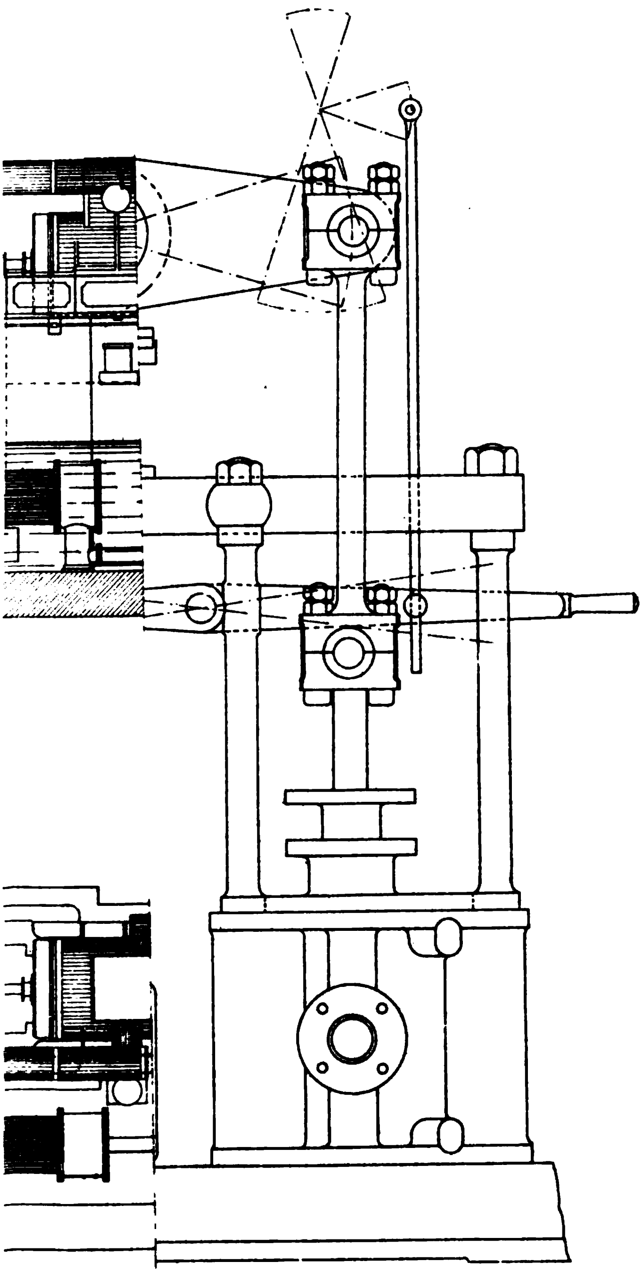
WASTE of water, causes of, 382, 387
  prevention of, by Deacon's method, 390
    by district-inspection, 389
    by house-to-house inspection, 388
    by reduction of pressure, 391
Waste-water-course, 217
Waste-weir, 207
  construction of, 217
  dimensions of, 216
  formula for, 216
Water, action as a solvent, 3
  atmospheric impurities in, 4
  bacillus of typhoid in, 11
  bacteria in, 11
  biological examination of, 10
  carbonic acid removed from, 268
  circulation of, 14
  clarified by precipitation, 269
  colour of, 8
  direct collection of, 115
Water, dissolved impurities in, 269
  dry-weather flow of, 74
  examination of, 5
  floating impurities in, 269
  fluidity of, 1
  hardness of, 28
  iron removed from, 269, 304
  light and heat, influence of, 11
  measurement of (*see* Compensation, Current-meter, Flow of Water, Irrigation)
  modes of gauging, 35
  odour of, 8
  organic impurities in, 7
  payment for, by measure, 375
    by rate, 395
  percolation of, 17
  properties of, 2
  rain-, 16
  sampling, 9
  solids in, 8
  spirillum of cholera in, 11
  standard of purity for, 13
  suspended impurities in, 269
  temperature of, in wells, 140
  waste of, 382–392
Water-bearing formations, 130
Water-meter, differentiating balanced, 111
    inferential rotary, 109, 110
    positive and inferential, 100
    positive reciprocating, 102–107
    positive rotary, 108
Water-parting, 18
Water-power for pumping, 181, 182
Water-ram in pipes, 347
Water-supply, British towns, 393
  constant and intermittent, 376, 383–386
  deep wells, 127
  duplicate system of, 377
  elements of, 29, 30
  filter-galleries, 125
  Flanders, 126
  Holland, 126
  intercepting-tunnels, 124
  Oxford, 117
  Lancaster, 123
  London, 28, 117, 393
  Lowell, 125
  Lyons, 117
  methods of, 119
  Naples, 124
  Seville, 124
  shallow-wells, 122
  springs, 123
  Toulouse, 125

Water-supply, United States towns, 394
Watering-posts, 366
Watershed, 18
Waterworks, gravitational, 31
    pumping, 31
    regulations, 397
Waves, formula for height of, 237
Weir, most effective form of, 219
Weisbach, hydraulic experiments, 75
Well (*see also* Bore-hole)
    artesian, 25
        at Bourne, 128
        at Grenelle, 128
        at Passy, 128
        at Wilsthorpe, 128
    deep, 25
        cone of depression in, 27
        Dudlow Lane, 27
        Otterbourne, 134
    shallow, quality of water, 24
        yield of, 24, 129
Well-sinking, 133 (*see* Boring)
Well-water, pollution of, 27
Weston, E. B., experiments on impact in pipes, 347
Whims, pipe-, 335
Wind, effect of, on rainfall, 44
Wind-power for pumping, 183
Wind-pressure against dams, 239, 240
Wing-walls of outlet-culvert, 210
Wiped joint, 332
Worthington pumping-engine, 170

YARNING-IRON, 338
Yield and supply of catchment-area, 190
    maximum, of catchment-area, 191
Yokohama, clarification of water at, 75
    filters at, 282

LONDON: PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W., AND DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E.

PLATE II.

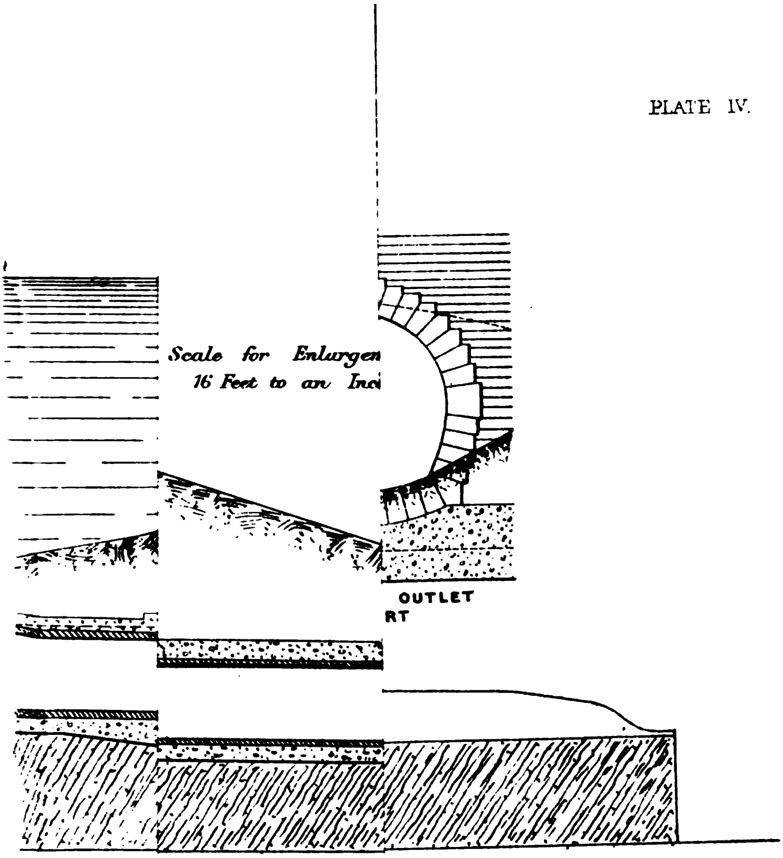


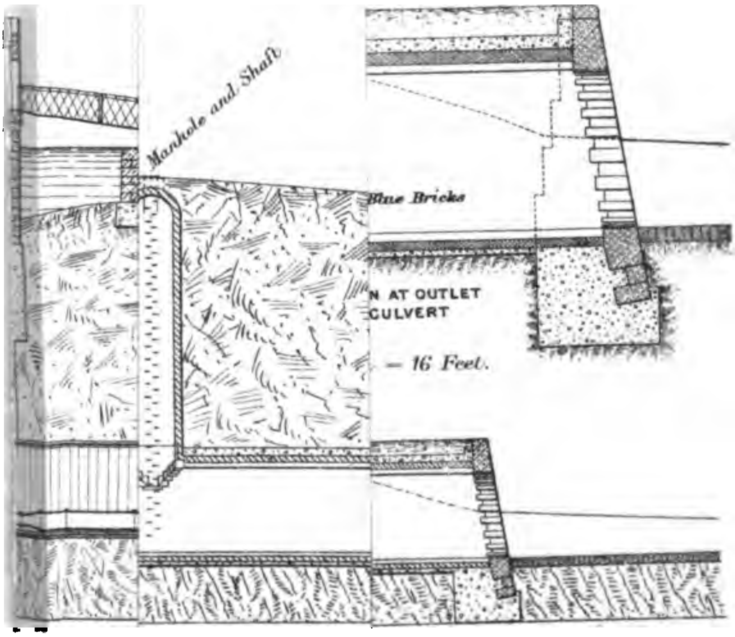
G E — G E A R.

— 1 Foot. 1 Foot.

THOS KELL & SON. LITH. 40, KING St COVENT GARDEN.

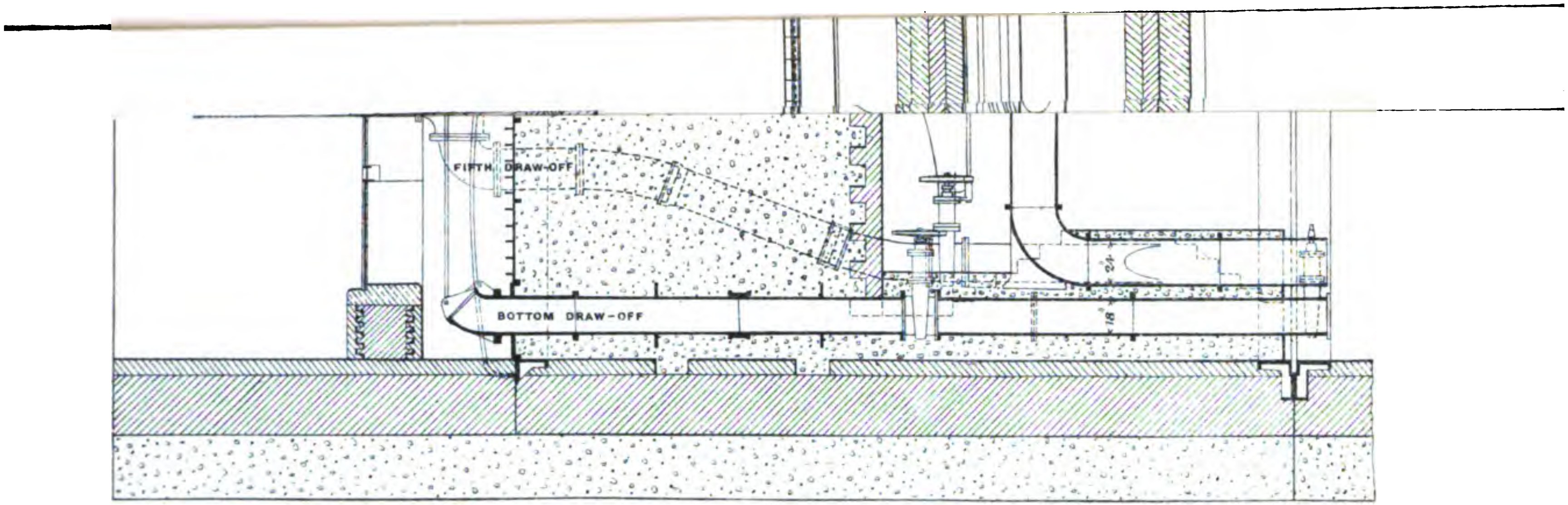
PLATE IV.





, & SON, LITH. 40, KING ST COVENT GARDEN.

PLATE V.



Jas. Mansergh, Engineer.

SECTION OF VALVE-TOWER AND SCREEN-WALL.

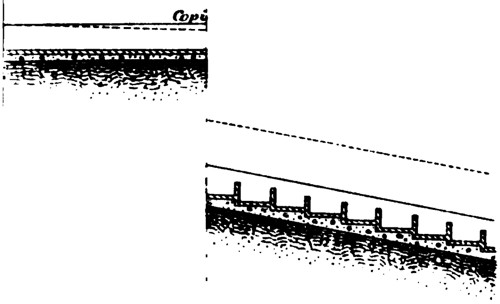
Scale, 1 Inch — 8 Feet.

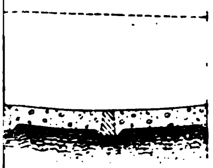
The Principles of Waterworks Engineering — Appendix 1897

Thoˢ Kell & Son, Lith

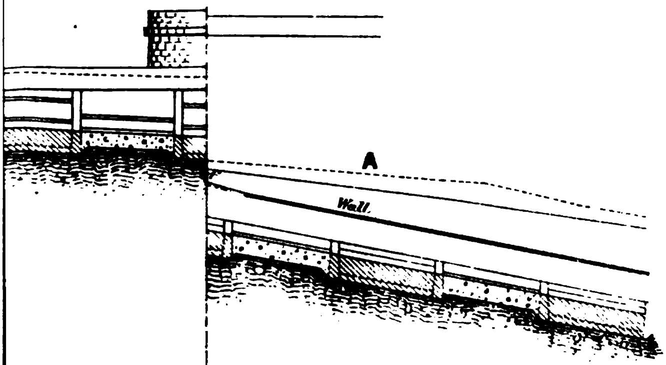
STOCKTO

PLATE VI.





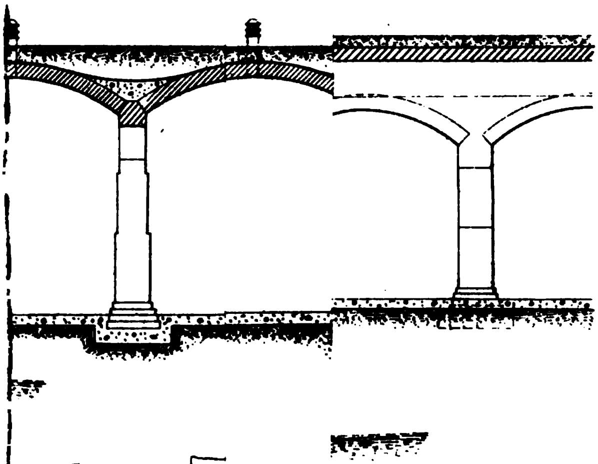
OF BY —



Th

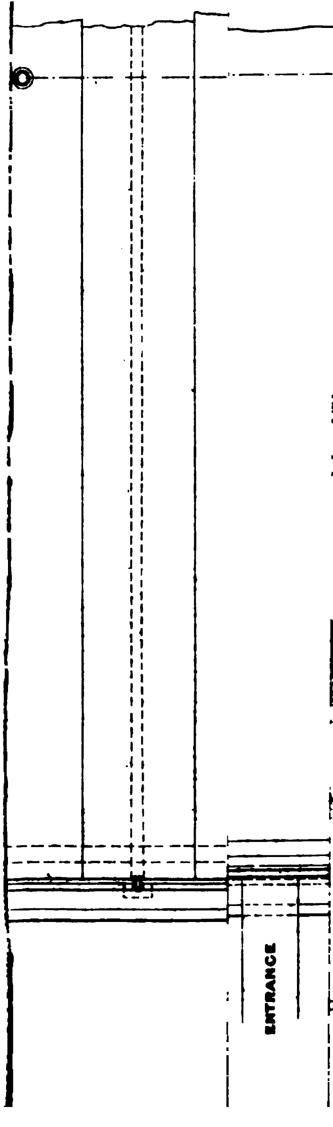
THOS KELL & SON, LITH. 40, KING ST COVENT GARDEN

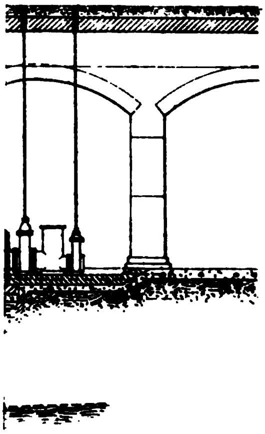
PLATE VIII



ENTRANCES.

— 16 Feet.



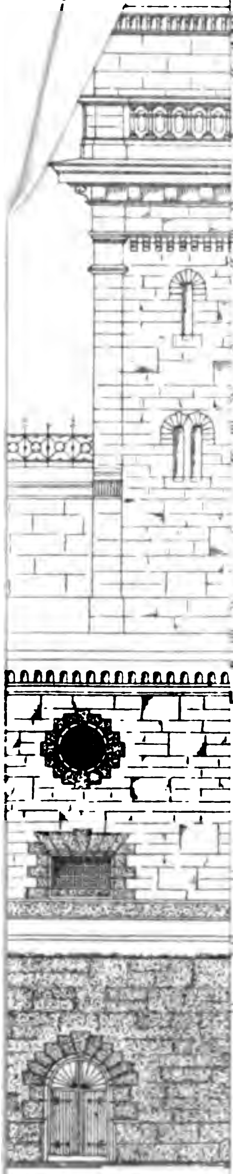


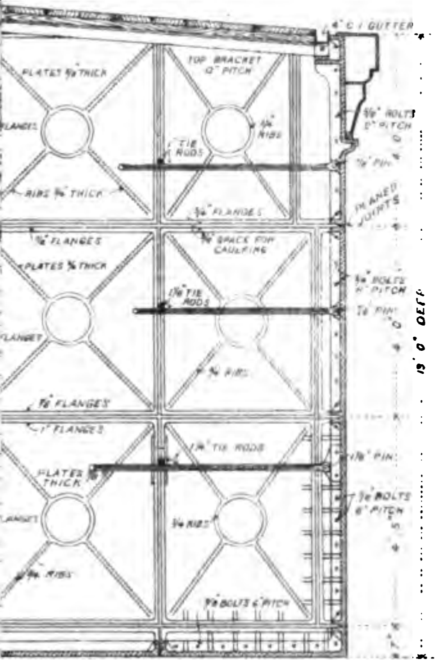
T AND OUTLET.

De KELL & SON, LITH. 40, KING St COVENT GARDEN.

PLATE IX.

ATH

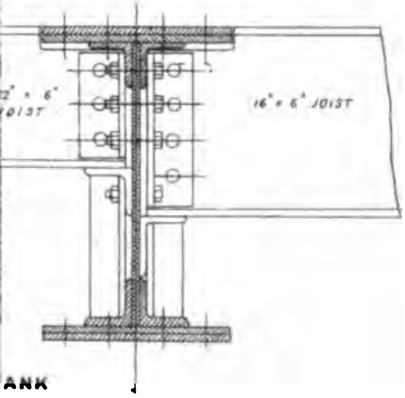




L TANK.

PART SECTION.

— 1 *Foot*.



ANK

N OF WATER–TOW

SECTION OF 18'.6" GIRDER.

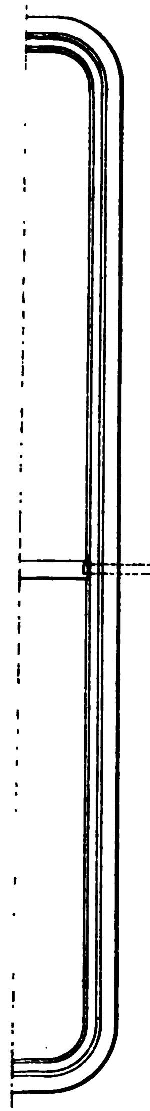
1 *Foot*.

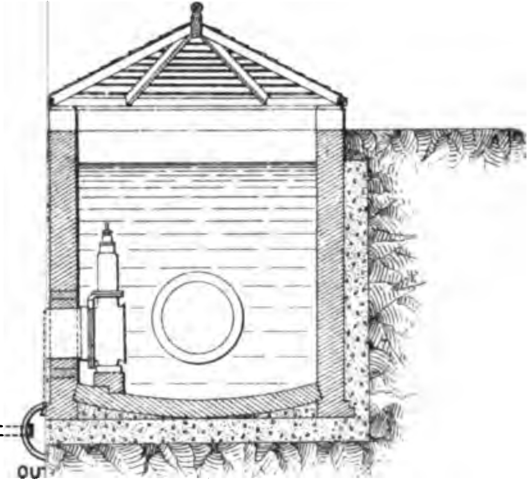
Th

THO^s KELL & SON, LITH. 40, KING S^T COVENT GARDEN.

W

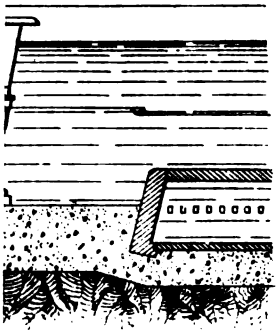
PLATE X





OUTLET.

Inch = 1 Foot.



INLET.

The

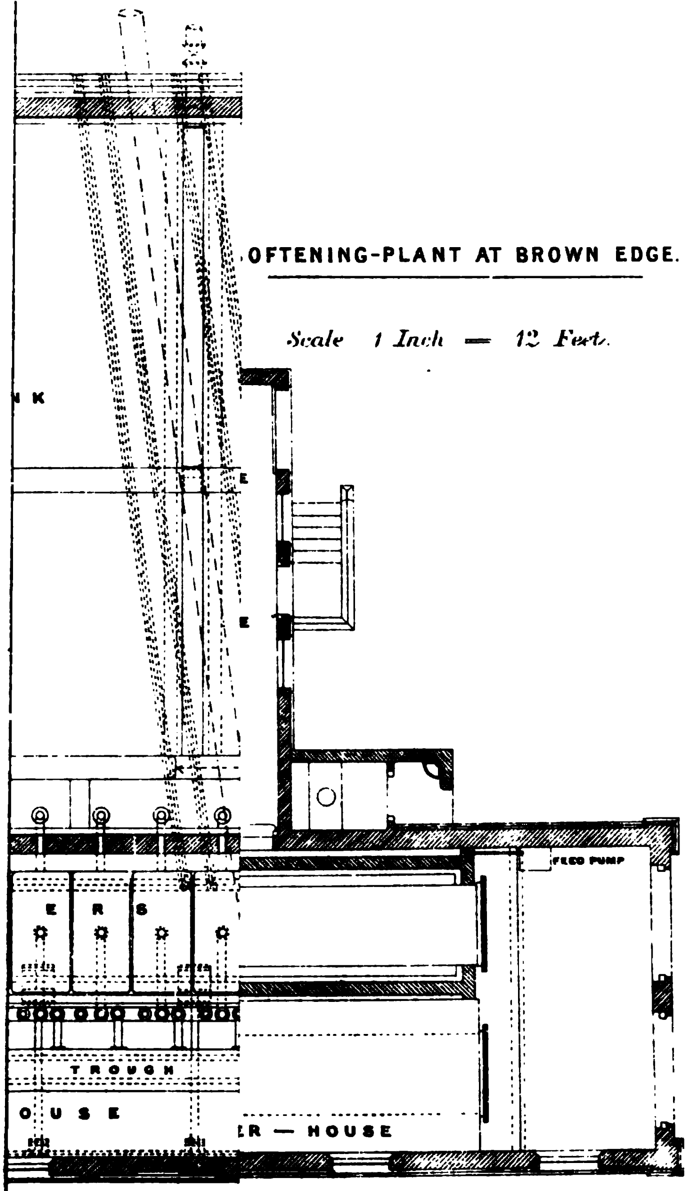
THOS KELL & SON, LITH 40, KING ST COVENT GARDEN

S^{T} HE

PLATE XI.

OFTENING-PLANT AT BROWN EDGE.

Scale 1 Inch = 12 Feet.



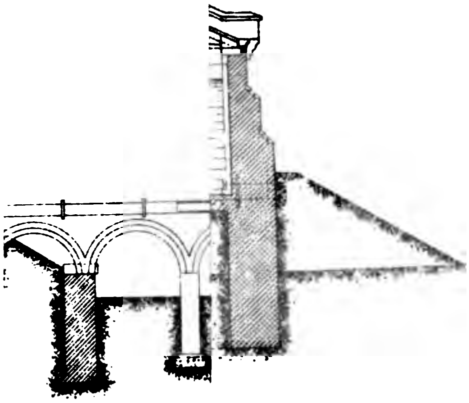
G E N E

inciples of Waterw

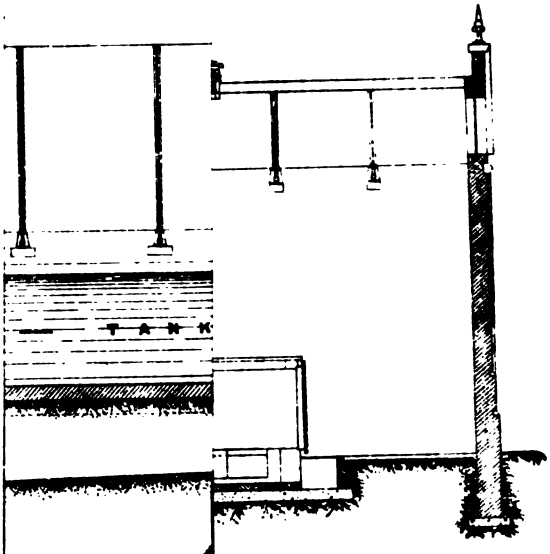
Thos Kell & Son Lith

PLATE XII.

S.



CROSS SEC



OUSE

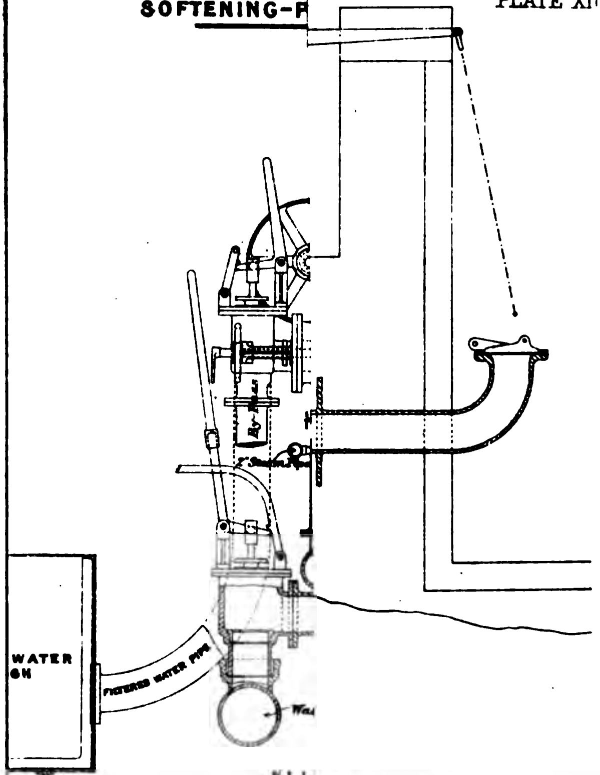
LONGITUDINAL

The Pri

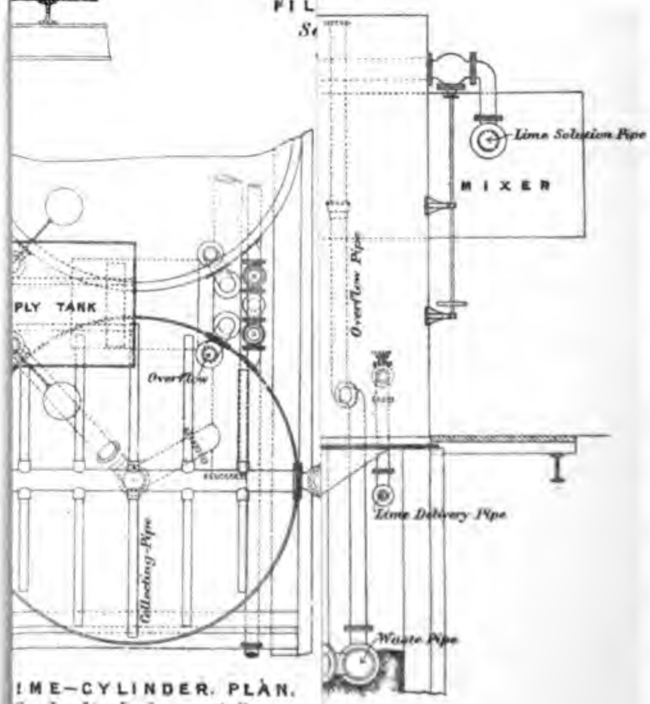
Thos Kell & Son, Lith

St HELEN
SOFTENING-P

PLATE XIII



FIL
Se



IME-CYLINDER. PLAN.
Scale 3/16 Inch = 1 Foot.

ELEVATION.
1 Foot.

e Principles of Waterwor

Thos Kell & Son, Lith.

89081536179

b89081536179a

[illegible] be kept